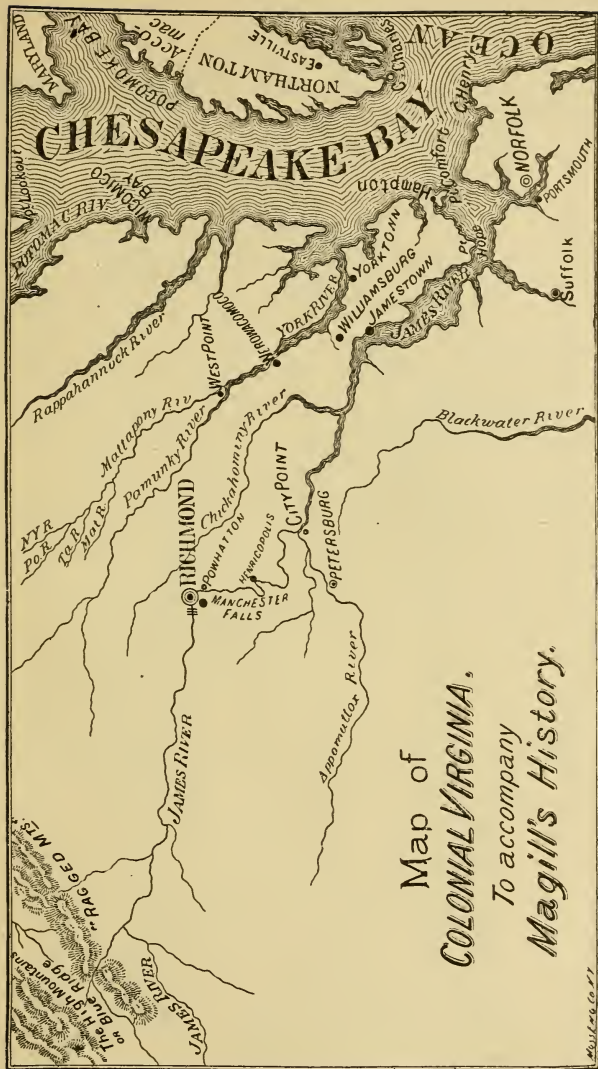


Class F 226

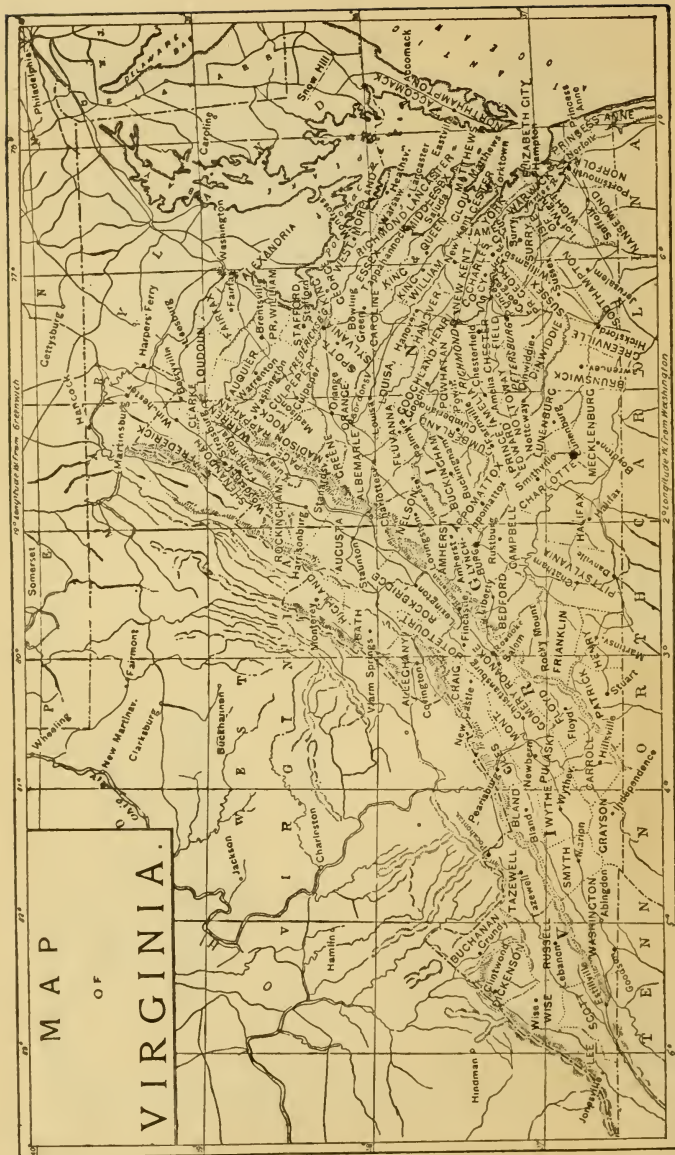
Book M 1905







MAP  
OF  
VIRGINIA







FALLING SPRINGS, NEAR HOT SPRINGS, VA.

(NEW EDITION)

# HISTORY OF VIRGINIA

FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS



BY

MARY TUCKER MAGILL

J. P. BELL COMPANY, INC., PUBLISHERS  
LYNCHBURG AND RICHMOND  
VIRGINIA



## INTRODUCTION.

---

IN the preparation of this volume for the use of schools, I have been actuated by an earnest desire to place before her youth a faithful record of the past history of the old "Mother of States and Statesmen,"—a record so full of honor that her children may well be proud of it. I have attempted no dry details, no political dissertations, but have adopted the familiar style of a "story-teller," drawing from the stores of incident, in which the past of Virginia is so rich, such narrations as would be most apt to stamp upon the youthful mind the graver facts of history, interspersing such explanations as were absolutely necessary with a simplicity and clearness which will, I hope, render them easy of comprehension even to the youngest student of these pages.

In deference to the prejudices and tastes of some teachers, I have affixed questions to the different chapters, though my own experience leads me to the conviction that the best mode of teaching history is not by questions, which make the lesson a task, instead of a recreation established in the midst of dryer and more abstruse studies. Let the class read the lesson and the teacher ask full questions upon it: thus a habit of attentive reading is formed, and the history of a single country does not employ, as is often the case, an entire session.

In preparing the book I have freely made use of the labors of others, to whom only a general acknowledgment can be made.

The volume is earnestly recommended to the young student, with the hope that he may strive to imitate the many worthy examples held up before him in its pages, and that he may remember that the prosperity and honor of his State in the future, as they did in the past, rest upon the shoulders of her sons.

# CONTENTS.

---

CHAPTER I.—1492-1585.		PAGE
Discovery of America—Early Settlements in America . . . . .		13
CHAPTER II.—1606.		
Virginia the Mother of States—The London Company sends Captain Smith to America—His Early Life—Landing and Settlement at Jamestown—Wingfield appointed President . . . . .		20
CHAPTER III.—1606 ( <i>Continued</i> ).		
Colony reduced to Want—Captain Smith commands an Expedition in search of Food—Adventures with the Indians—Manners and Customs of the Indians . . . . .		27
CHAPTER IV.—1607.		
The Wicked Conduct of Wingfield—Smith goes in search of the Pacific Ocean—Is taken Prisoner—Is condemned to Death and is rescued by Pocahontas . . . . .		34
CHAPTER V.—1607 ( <i>Continued</i> ).		
Newport arrives from England—Trading with the Indians—Powhatan .		41
CHAPTER VI.—1608.		
Smith's Expedition up the Chesapeake Bay—Quells a Mutiny—New Discoveries and Adventures . . . . .		47
CHAPTER VII.—1608 ( <i>Continued</i> ).		
What Newport brought from England—Coronation of Powhatan—Pocahontas again saves Captain Smith . . . . .		53
CHAPTER VIII.—1609.		
The Treacherous Dutchmen—Opechankanough—Smith, by his Wisdom and Bravery, saves his Crew—Arrivals from England—Smith's Accident and return to England . . . . .		60
CHAPTER IX.—1609-1614.		
Arrival of Sir Thomas Gates—Jamestown abandoned—The meeting with Lord Delaware—The return—Capture of Pocahontas, and her Marriage and Death . . . . .		67
CHAPTER X.—1614-1622.		
Death of Powhatan—The Price of a Wife—Indian Massacre—English History as connected with Virginia—Governor Yeardley—Harvey sent to England—Berkeley appointed Governor . . . . .		77

	PAGE
CHAPTER XI.—1644.	
Opechankanough makes War and is taken Prisoner—His Death—War in England—Lord Baltimore settles Maryland—Charles I. beheaded—How Virginia got the Title “Old Dominion” . . . . .	87
CHAPTER XII.—1675.	
Indian Troubles—Bacon’s Rebellion . . . . .	95
CHAPTER XIII.—1675 ( <i>Continued</i> ).	
Bacon’s Rebellion ( <i>Continued</i> ) . . . . .	104
CHAPTER XIV.—1676.	
The End of Bacon’s Rebellion—Lord Culpeper—The Tobacco Rebellion .	113
CHAPTER XV.—1684-1723.	
Treaty with the Five Nations—William and Mary College established—Parson Blair and Governor Spotswood—The Knights of the Horseshoe.	122
CHAPTER XVI.—1723 ( <i>Continued</i> ).	
Difficulties between the Colonies—Colonel William Byrd lays the Foundation of Richmond and of Petersburg—Settlements in the Valley of Virginia—Early Customs . . . . .	133
CHAPTER XVII.—1732-1755.	
Birth of George Washington—Incidents of his Early Life—Unsuccessful Mission to the French—War with the French begun . . . . .	140
CHAPTER XVIII.—1755 ( <i>Continued</i> ).	
Battle of Fort Duquesne—Braddock’s Defeat and Death . . . . .	149
CHAPTER XIX.—1756-1763.	
Indian Atrocities—Fall of Fort Duquesne—Washington retires to Mount Vernon . . . . .	158
CHAPTER XX.—1765-1770.	
Patrick Henry—Richard Henry Lee—Richard Bland and Edmund Pendleton—The Stamp Act resisted—Thomas Jefferson . . . . .	162
CHAPTER XXI.—1774.	
Lord Botetourt made Governor of Virginia—He dies and Lord Dunmore succeeds him—His Difficulties with the Assembly—Indian Troubles—Battle of Point Pleasant—Logan—Meeting of the Virginia Convention in St. John’s Church, Richmond . . . . .	172
CHAPTER XXII.—1775.	
Governor Dunmore’s Treachery—The Powder at Williamsburg—The Revolution begun—Battle of Hampton—Attack on Jamestown—The Tories . . . . .	181
CHAPTER XXIII.—1775 ( <i>Continued</i> ).	
Dunmore incites the Indians to the Massacre of the Whites—Battle of Great Bridge—Norfolk burned—Gwynn’s Island . . . . .	190

CHAPTER XXIV.—1776.

PAGE

The General Convention meets at Williamsburg—Declaration of Rights— Declaration of Independence—Patrick Henry chosen Governor—The Seal of Virginia—Religious Freedom declared—The Law of Primo- geniture . . . . .	201
---	-----

CHAPTER XXV.—1776-1781.

Troubles in the State—Fears of a Dictator—La Fayette and De Kalb ar- rive—Thomas Jefferson appointed Governor—British Troops enter Hampton Roads—Defeat of General Gates in North Carolina—Con- vention Troops in Albemarle . . . . .	210
--	-----

CHAPTER XXVI.—1781 (*Continued*).

Revolutionary War transferred to Virginia—Richmond abandoned—The Traitor Arnold—Baron Steuben and George Rogers Clarke—Death of De Kalb—Cornwallis marches towards Petersburg—Colonel Tarleton's Raid . . . . .	217
--	-----

CHAPTER XXVII.—1781 (*Continued*).

Legislature at Charlottesville escapes from Tarleton—Monticello—Out- rages of the British Army—Cornwallis retreats to Chesapeake Bay—He fortifies Yorktown—Siege of Yorktown—Surrender of Cornwallis— Virginia Heroes . . . . .	226
--	-----

CHAPTER XXVIII.—1781-1800.

"Crazy Rumsey"—Washington at Mount Vernon—Convention at Phila- delphia—Virginia Convention meets to discuss the New Constitution— Virginia joins the Federal Union—Washington elected President— Kentucky admitted into the Union—Federalists and Republicans— Alien and Sedition Laws—"Resolutions of '98"—Patrick Henry's Last Speech—John Randolph of Roanoke—Deaths of Patrick Henry and Washington . . . . .	237
---	-----

CHAPTER XXIX.—1800-1813.

Callender's "Prospect before us"—Insurrection of Slaves—Burning of the Richmond Theatre—War of 1812 . . . . .	251
--	-----

CHAPTER XXX.—1818-1859.

Virginia the "Mother of Presidents"—University of Virginia—Death of Thomas Jefferson—The Virginia Constitution and the Men who made it—Troubles between the States—John Brown's Raid . . . . .	259
INTRODUCTORY LETTER . . . . .	269

CHAPTER XXXI.—1861.

Destruction of Government Property in Virginia—Richmond made the Capital of the Confederacy—Lee appointed Commander-in-Chief of the Troops in Virginia—"Stonewall Jackson"—Plan for the Invasion of Virginia—Counter-plans—Johnston—Beauregard—"Jeb Stuart" . . . . .	275
--	-----

CHAPTER XXXII.—1861 ( <i>Continued</i> ).		PAGE
Manœuvres of Johnston and Patterson—Johnston changes his Base—Line of Battle—Battle of Manassas—Flight of the Federal Army—Changes in the Army—Jackson's Farewell to his Brigade—Battles of Leesburg and the Alleghany . . . . .		284
CHAPTER XXXIII.—1862.		
Situation of Confederate Forces—Expedition to Romney—Jackson resigns—"On to Richmond"—Battle of Kernstown—Change of Base from Manassas to Richmond—Jackson in the Valley . . . . .		291
CHAPTER XXXIV.—1862 ( <i>Continued</i> ).		
The Campaign of the Shenandoah Valley . . . . .		298
CHAPTER XXXV.—1862 ( <i>Continued</i> ).		
McClellan at Yorktown—The "Virginia"—Yorktown evacuated—Battle of Williamsburg—The White House—Battle of Hanover Court-House—Battle of Seven Pines . . . . .		306
CHAPTER XXXVI.—1862 ( <i>Continued</i> ).		
Battles before Richmond—McClellan's change of Base—Pope's Campaign . . . . .		314
CHAPTER XXXVII.—1862 ( <i>Continued</i> ).		
The First Maryland Campaign—Battle of Fredericksburg . . . . .		322
CHAPTER XXXVIII.—1863.		
Hooker supersedes Burnside—Battles of Chancellorsville and the Wilderness—Jackson's Fall—Advance into Maryland and Pennsylvania—Meade supersedes Hooker—Battle of Gettysburg—Retreat of the Confederates to the Rappahannock . . . . .		330
CHAPTER XXXIX.—1864.		
Condition of the Confederate Army—Policy of the United States Government—Grant appointed Commander-in-Chief—His Plan for taking Richmond—Breckenridge and Sigel in the Valley—The Lexington Boys—Campaigns of Hunter, Crook, and Averill—Second Battle of the Wilderness—Battle of Spottsylvania—Fight at Yellow Tavern—Death of J. E. B. Stuart . . . . .		338
CHAPTER XL.—1864-1865.		
Battle of North Anna—Siege of Richmond—Early's Expedition—Armies at Petersburg—Retreat of Confederates—The Surrender—Division of the State—Emancipation . . . . .		353
CHAPTER XLI.—1865-1890.		
The Reconstruction Period—Military Government—Virginia Delegates admitted to Congress—Disasters in the State—Death of Lee—The State Debt—West Virginia . . . . .		364

# HISTORY OF VIRGINIA.

---

## CHAPTER I.

1492-1585.

### DISCOVERY OF AMERICA—EARLY SETTLEMENTS IN AMERICA.

**Columbus.**—The glory of having discovered America is justly due to Columbus. He, by his genius, conceived the idea of undiscovered countries beyond the seas. By his perseverance he succeeded in inducing King Ferdinand, of Spain, to fit out ships and place them under his command. By these he reached the West India Islands. Still, history is full of traditions which induce the belief that it had been visited by Europeans at least three hundred years before the voyage of Columbus.

**Traditions.**—We read of Madoc, a Welsh prince, who, disgusted at hearing his two brothers disputing which should reign king upon the death of their father, fitted out a ship and set sail in search of adventures. After a considerable absence, he returned, and narrated that, sailing west, he had reached a great and fertile country, abounding in beautiful forests, navigable streams, lofty mountains, and clear lakes, and he convinced his people how worse than foolish it was for them to be quarrelling with and murdering one another for the possession of barren hills, when this fruitful country lay across the waters, within their reach and without inhabitants; he

was eagerly listened to, and, fitting out ships, induced numbers of his countrymen to accompany him in this his second voyage. They were never more heard of; but it is not impossible that they reached America, founded their colony, and lost here all trace of civilization.

**Several other traditions** lead to the belief that America was visited by adventurers of other nations; but if any trace of them remained, it was only found by the first discoverers of America in the savage tribes who roamed through her forests and paddled their canoes upon her streams. Columbus first called them Indians because he believed that the land he discovered was a part of India.

**The Cabots.**—The success of Christopher Columbus in his western voyage fired the ambition of all the nations of Europe. Henry VII., King of England, was one of the first of European sovereigns to follow in the track of the great discoverer; he granted letters-patent\* to John Cabot and his three sons “to set sail, discover countries, and take possession” for the Crown of England. They discovered the coast of Labrador, and thus, although Columbus opened the path to the New World, he only discovered the West India Islands; and this English expedition had taken possession of the mainland one year before the great pioneer, in his third voyage across the ocean, placed his foot upon it (1498).

**Raleigh’s Expedition.**—Nearly one hundred years were suffered to pass away before the English took advantage of their new possessions. In 1585, Sir Walter Raleigh, an accomplished nobleman, high in the favor of Elizabeth, Queen of England, after obtaining permission from her, fitted out two ships, which he placed under the command of Captains Amadas and Barlow. These, fol-

---

\* Letters-patent are papers from king or governor granting power to others.

following the course of Columbus, reached the West India Islands, where they remained for a few days, when they re-embarked and proceeded on their journey. Directing their course northward, they were soon attracted by the delicious perfume of fruits and flowers which a kindly breeze wafted to them from the fragrant shore.



THE ENGLISH RECEIVING INDIANS.

**They landed** upon the coast of North Carolina not far from Cape Hatteras, where they took possession in the name of her Sovereign Majesty Queen Elizabeth. Charmed with the first appearance of the country, with its tall trees, green fields, and abundant grape-vines, they clambered to the top of the high cedars, in order to obtain a more extended view; and, as they gazed with rapture over the exquisite landscape spread before them, thought that the world itself could scarce furnish a greater variety and abundance.

**Discharging their muskets** to awaken the echoes, they were startled by the wild cries of frightened birds, which darkened the air with their numbers, while at the same time herds of deer bounded from the woods. Several days elapsed before they discovered any sign of inhabitants; this magnificent country seemed to be given up to the birds of the air and the beasts of the forest. This was not true, however, as on the third day a small canoe, in which were three men dressed in the skins of wild animals, put out from the neighboring shore. They approached and boarded the ship without any sign of fear, and one of them, who seemed to be the leader, acted as spokesman for the rest; but here a serious difficulty arose; for the speech, which was full of impressive gestures, and doubtless of eloquent language, was yet in a tongue of which not one word could be understood. The English, in this emergency, adopted a mode of communication which could not be misunderstood, and which, at the same time, served to convey to the natives a sense of their friendly relations towards them: they presented them with shirts and hats, wine and meat, and, after a visit of some length, the strange guests departed as they had come, but soon returned with the boat loaded with fish and game, which they presented to the Englishmen.

**Visit from the Natives.**—The next day came divers boats with forty or fifty men, and among them Granganameo, the brother of Winginia, king of this great country, which they called Wingandacoa. Leaving the boats at some distance, they came towards the Englishmen, and spreading a mat, Granganameo sat down, while his men stood around him. He showed no signs of fear, but seemed by his gestures to wish to tell them how friendly was his disposition towards them. The Englishmen presented him with many toys, such as beads and pieces of tin, which he received with delight. His men seemed

to regard him with great respect, none of them speaking a word, except four who seemed of higher rank than the rest, and to whom alone he gave presents of the treasures which were bestowed upon him; these they received humbly, making signs that all things belonged to him. They made the Englishmen to understand that their great king Winginia had been wounded in a conflict with his mortal enemy, and was lying at his chief town, six days' journey from that place.

**Granganameo** paid them many visits after this, bringing presents of deerskins and other things; and after a few days he brought his wife and children. The former was of small stature, very pretty and bashful. She was dressed in a long coat of leather, with a band of white coral about her forehead, while strings of pearls as large as peas hung from her ears and reached nearly to her waist; she wore her long black hair hanging down on both sides, and the men wore theirs long on one side and shaven close on the other.

**The English** remained some time in this place, trading with the natives, and obtaining from them, in return for the useless toys with which they presented them, many articles of value, such as pearls, dyes, and game of various kinds. They learned, too, a great deal about the soil of the country, which they found to be more prolific than any they had ever known, producing three crops of corn in one year.

**Roanoke Island.**—One day Captain Barlow and seven of his men paid a visit to Granganameo, their new friend, who had his home on Roanoke Island. As they approached the place, they saw before them a little village of nine or ten Indian houses, built of cedar, and fortified, after their manner, by sharp stakes or palisades driven into the ground. Seeing her visitors approaching, the wife of Granganameo, like a true hospitable Virginian matron, ran down to the

shore, and received them with every sign of joy. She told them that her husband was away, and commanding her people to draw the boats to shore, made them carry the guests on their backs to the houses, where she entertained them with great honor, setting meat and fruit before them, having their clothes washed, and in her simple natural way doing all she could to testify her delight at seeing them. In one of the houses she showed them her idol, about which she told wonderful things. Some of her men coming in with their bows and arrows, the Englishmen took their arms in their hands, fearing treachery, which their hostess perceiving, she caused the bows and arrows to be broken in pieces, and the owners of them beaten out of the house. The Englishmen returned to their encampment next day, much pleased with their visit, and during the whole of their stay in Wingandacoa continued on the most friendly terms with their Indian neighbors; while upon their return to England they gave such glowing accounts of the country that Queen Elizabeth called it Virginia, in honor of herself, the virgin Queen of England.

**Settlement.**—The same year Sir Richard Grenville with a party of men made a settlement on Roanoke Island, upon which Granganameo lived. They made several expeditions into the country, found new tribes of Indians, and met with many curious adventures. At one time they were nearly starved to death, but were saved by boiling two mastiff dogs with sassafras leaves, which they ate with great appetite.

**Some interesting facts** were ascertained about the religion of the savages. They believed that there were a great many gods, but *one* greater than all the rest, who had existed from eternity, and who made all things. They worshipped the sun, moon, and stars as gods. They believed that the soul would live forever in happiness or in misery. The English tried to teach them about the true God and

the Bible. The simple creatures listened to them with interest, and taking the Holy Bible in their hands, kissed it reverently, held it to their breasts, and stroked their bodies over with it. Once, King Winginia being very sick, refused help from his own friends, and sent for the English to come and pray for him, that if he died he might live with their God in heaven. Soon after this a circumstance occurred which increased their fear and reverence for the God of the English. Great sickness prevailed in many of their settlements, the nature of which we are not told; but it so happened that the disease was most fatal in those places which were inclined to be unfriendly to the English, from which the simple creatures inferred that the God of the English was espousing their cause, and that they were actually destroying their enemies by their prayers to this great Being; and thus all the surrounding tribes hastened to claim the friendship of this powerful people of an all-powerful God.

**The Colony destroyed.**—But this desirable state of feeling was not always to continue between the two nations. In one of their expeditions an Indian stole a silver cup from the English, which offence was punished by the burning of one of the Indian towns; and this broke up the friendship between the two parties, and was the cause of the final destruction of the colony, which happened thus:

**Sir Richard Grenville** having returned to England for supplies, the colony fell into confusion. Discouraged by their difficulties, and fearing that they had been deserted by their commander, they determined to return home. This they did with the exception of fifty of their number, who decided to wait for Sir Richard Grenville, who, arriving soon after, found no trace of these men; they had been destroyed by the Indians, whose enmity they had excited.

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. What period is embraced in this chapter?
  2. To whom is the glory due of having discovered America?
  3. Give the tradition of Madoc.
  4. Other traditions of voyagers to America.
  5. What effect did the success of Columbus have upon other nations of Europe?
  6. What nation first took possession of the continent?
  7. Give some account of the expedition of 1585.
  8. Where did they land?
  9. Give some account of what they saw when they landed.
  10. Tell of the first interview with the natives.
  11. The second visit of Granganameo.
  12. His third visit with his wife.
  13. How did the English employ themselves?
  14. Relate the story of Captain Barlow's visit to Roanoke Island.
  15. Why was the country named Virginia?
  16. Who commanded the second party to Virginia, and where did they settle?
  17. Give an account of the expedition into the country.
  18. Give some account of the religion of the savages.
  19. How did they receive the teachings of the English?
  20. What circumstance increased their reverence for the God of the English?
  21. What circumstance broke up the friendly feeling between the two parties?
  22. What occurred after Sir Richard Grenville's return to England?
- 

## CHAPTER II.

1606-1607.

VIRGINIA THE MOTHER OF STATES—THE LONDON COMPANY SENDS CAPTAIN SMITH TO AMERICA—HIS EARLY LIFE—LANDING AND SETTLEMENT AT JAMESTOWN—WINGFIELD APPOINTED PRESIDENT.

**Extent of Virginia.**—I have now given you an account of the earliest settlements in that part of America which Queen Elizabeth named Virginia, and which extended from the southern part of North Carolina to Canada in

length and from the Atlantic to the Pacific Oceans in breadth. This was a great country, and the reason you often hear Virginia spoken of as the "Mother of States" is because she gave from herself the territory out of which were formed many of the States of the Union. The only distinction in those early days was, that all the country to the north of Chesapeake Bay was called North Virginia, and that to the south was called South Virginia.

**The first settlements** carved out of North Virginia were the New England States, which were settled by the Puritans. The next slice taken out was New York, which was seized by the Dutch, the first discoverers; but it was afterwards given to the Duke of York, after whom it was named. Next came the divisions of New Jersey and Delaware, and the last we shall mention was Pennsylvania, which was settled by the Quakers under their wise leader William Penn, in whose honor the State was named. Although it would be very interesting to be able to trace out the history of the whole of this country, yet the space allowed us will not permit it, and we must confine ourselves to that portion which through all these changes still retained the name of Virginia, and which was colonized by Captain John Smith and his companions in the year 1607.

**Captain Smith**, one of the bravest men that ever lived, has written a book in which he gives an account of his wonderful adventures. An Englishman by birth, he had, when quite young, a great desire to go to sea, and even sold his satchel, books, and all he had, intending secretly to carry out his design, but was prevented by his father's death. He afterwards travelled through most of the countries of Europe. Once while at sea, like a second Jonah, he was thrown overboard by the superstitious sailors, who imagined that he brought ill luck to their vessel; he managed to reach a desert island, whence he was

rescued by a passing ship. He afterwards fought against the Turks, and with his own hand killed three of their officers. He was taken prisoner by them and sold as a slave; a bashaw bought him and sent him as a present to his mistress, who fell in love with him and treated him very kindly, but Smith only thought how he could escape and return to his own country.

**The bashaw**, who had command over the prisoners, was very cruel to them, and one day, when Smith was threshing wheat, this man coming to him, reviled and struck him, upon which Smith turned and beat out the brains of his persecutor with an instrument which he had in his hand, then throwing the body into the house, he locked the door, filled his sack with corn, and mounting the bashaw's horse, rode away, taking the direction towards Russia, thus making his escape. After many more adventures he returned to his own country, where he was made a knight by the king, who also bestowed many other honors upon him; but his restless spirit could not be content with a quiet life, and he determined to seek new adventures in the great country which had been discovered, and about which the whole world seemed to have gone mad.

**The London Company.**—Certain merchants and rich men of London had permission from the king to settle a colony in the country called Virginia, and for this purpose obtained, for fifty miles along the sea-coast, a grant of land, which was to belong to them and their children. The company to whom this permission was given was called the London Company, and another party of men called the Plymouth Company had a similar privilege granted them. The London Company fitted out three small ships, and in them sent Captain John Smith, Bartholomew Gosnold, Edward Maria Wingfield, and many others to find out a suitable place for their settlement, and

to take possession in the name of their king. The conduct of the ships was trusted to Captain Newport, and the Rev. Mr. Hunt went as the chaplain of the company.

**They set sail from England** about the middle of December, but were detained by contrary winds, within sight of the shore, for six weeks, in which time Captain Smith found he had rather an unruly crowd to deal with; each man imagined he could manage better than his fellow, and they quarrelled with Captain Newport because they did not get on faster, with Captain Smith for ever having started the expedition, and with poor Preacher Hunt for not praying hard enough against the winds, which were the cause of their detention. At length, however, Providence favored them, and they reached the West India Islands, where they remained for a few days, soothing their ruffled tempers and refreshing themselves after their tedious voyage with the delicious fruits and other productions of these charming islands. But they were too anxious to reach the end of their journey to be willing to stay even in so delightful a place very long, so, with renewed spirits, they embarked, bending their course northward towards the coast of North Carolina, where former attempts to colonize had been made. But again encountering storms, they found themselves on the trackless ocean, amid dangers they knew not how great, and again the murmurs arose loud and deep.

**Captain Newport**, wearied with the difficulties, determined to turn the ships around and return to England; but God willed it otherwise. A violent storm drove them in towards the shore, and they found themselves at the wide entrance of a great bay, with a cape at each extremity, which they named Cape Henry and Cape Charles, after the two sons of their sovereign. Pursuing their course inward, they touched upon another point of land, at the mouth of what seemed to be a large river leading

up into the country, and giving them the good hope that their wanderings were ended and that here they would find a desired haven. So they named the land Point Comfort, and proceeded on their way.

**About twenty miles farther on** the country spread out before them in all its grandeur and richness, and the most despondent among them exulted at the prospect. The place where they next anchored was named Point Hope, and the river was called James, in honor of their king. Here they encountered some Indians, who seemed kindly disposed to them, told them that the name of the river which they had called James was Powhatan, that the greatest tribe in those parts was the tribe of the Powhatans, and the chief of this tribe was very powerful, had his home about one hundred and fifty miles above, on the same river, and that he too was called Powhatan.

**Jamestown.**—Pursuing their course up the river, the English discovered a beautiful peninsula covered with tall trees, growing out of the luxuriant green sod; here they determined to land, and after much consultation and disputing, here they planted their colony, calling the town James, as they had done the river, in honor of their king.

**Election.**—They now proceeded to elect a president and council to govern them, and Edward Maria Wingfield was chosen. Captain Smith having fallen under the displeasure of the company, was not allowed to take any part in the government, and so in this time of difficulty and danger they lost the advice of the wisest man among them.

**They set to work at once** to build a fort as a protection against the savages. It was a busy scene. Some were cutting down trees, others digging holes in the ground, while the sound of the hammer and axe awakened echoes and startled the inhabitants of these old for-

ests with a new experience. Newport, Smith, and about twenty others were sent to discover the head of the river. Passing many small habitations, in six days they arrived at the dwelling of the great chief Powhatan, which con-



JAMESTOWN.

sisted of twelve houses, pleasantly situated upon a hill; before it were three beautiful islands, and around it the waving fields of corn. The city of Richmond now stands just above the former dwelling of this Indian chief, and the place is still pointed out where his wigwam stood.

**Indian Attack.**—Smith found that his boat could not proceed farther up the river, because of the falls, and he and his party were obliged to return to Jamestown, where they found everything in confusion. The colony had been attacked by the Indians, one boy killed, and seventeen men wounded. They had all been at work without their arms when the attack was made, and the

destruction would have been complete had it not been for the accidental discharge of a cross-bar shot from one of the ships, which broke the bough of a tree, that fell in the midst of the savages and caused them to retire in haste.

**Captain Smith arrested.**—The English at once proceeded to fortify themselves as strongly as they could, so as to prevent further surprises. The Indians, however, were fully on the alert; and in spite of their care, the English were constantly annoyed by their enmity. All this time Captain Smith was in disgrace with the colony. Many among them, envious of his reputation, pretended to think that he wished to murder the president and the council and make himself a king, and these reports gaining ground, President Wingfield seized him and committed him as a prisoner, and accused him to the London Company who had sent him to Virginia. But Smith, strong in his innocence, brought his accusers to shame, and the cause being tried, Wingfield was compelled not only to release him, but to pay him two hundred pounds as a recompense for what he had made him suffer. Smith received the money, but gave it to the general fund for the use of the colony.

**This was but the beginning** of the trials Smith had to encounter, but he bore everything with a patience and dignity which overcame the spite of his enemies. Preacher Hunt also did what he could to establish peace, so a general reconciliation took place. Smith was admitted to the council, all parties received the communion, and the very next day the savages voluntarily desired peace, and Captain Newport returned to England, bearing encouraging reports of the prosperity of the new settlement in Virginia.

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. In what year did these events take place?
2. What was the original extent of Virginia?
3. Why is Virginia called the "Mother of States"?
4. How were North and South Virginia divided?
5. What divisions were afterwards made?
6. With what particular portion of this country has our history to do?
7. Give the story of Captain Smith's early life.
8. How did he make his escape from the Turks?
9. What privileges were granted to the London and Plymouth Companies?
10. Who did the London Company send to Virginia?
11. Give an account of the voyage until they landed at the West Indies.
12. Give an account of the rest of the voyage.
13. What circumstance prevented the return of Newport to England?
14. What names did they bestow upon the four first points of land they reached?
15. What name did they give the river, and what account did the Indians give of the country?
16. Where did they land, and what name did they give to their first settlement?
17. What were the first acts of the new colony?
18. Give an account of Smith's expedition up the river.
19. In what condition did they find the colony upon their return?
20. How was Captain Smith treated by the colony?
21. How did he behave?
22. How did the difficulties end?

---

CHAPTER III.

1607.—CONTINUED.

COLONY REDUCED TO WANT—CAPTAIN SMITH COMMANDS AN EXPEDITION IN SEARCH OF FOOD—ADVENTURES WITH THE INDIANS—MANNERS AND CUSTOMS OF THE INDIANS.

**President Wingfield.**—From the peaceful ending of the last chapter you might suppose that the troubles of our colony were at an end, but this was far from being the case; for not only had they to encounter the natural

difficulties of a new settlement in the midst of treacherous enèemies, but their jealousy of Smith led them to select as their president one opposed to him in every particular, and it was not long before they saw their mistake. Wingfield, thinking only of gain, lost no opportunity of stealing from the public stores to enrich himself, and when he had by this conduct made himself hated by all, tried to seize one of the ships and make his escape accompanied by one of his confederates; but his design was discovered and prevented. Thus it happened that most of the responsibility of public affairs fell upon Captain Smith, who by his own example and encouraging words set them to work, some mowing, some planting corn, some building houses, he himself always taking the largest share of the work, and providing all the rest with comfortable dwellings before he built his own. In his intercourse with the savages he also showed his great wisdom, making himself acquainted with their dispositions, their manners, their customs; always securing their friendship if possible, but if this failed, compelling them to fear and respect him by his superiority over them.

**Smith's Adventure.**—Once, when the colony was greatly reduced by sickness, their provisions spent, and starvation staring them in the face, Smith, taking seven men with him, set out to seek help from one of the neighboring tribes. He proceeded down the river about twenty miles until he arrived at one of their towns, and told the Indians by signs when they could not understand his words, of his great need; he was met by derision and contempt. The Indians now saw this much-feared enemy in their power, and exulted in the thought that the colony at Jamestown could no longer trouble them; and in ridicule they offered him a handful of corn and a piece of bread in exchange for the muskets of his men, and even demanded their clothing. Smith, finding gentle measures of no avail,

resolved to compel them to give him what help he needed ; so running his boat into the shore, he and his men fired into the crowd, whereat the Indians fled to the woods. The English made haste to take advantage of the situation, and going from wigwam to wigwam, they saw heaps



CAPTAIN SMITH DEMANDING HELP FROM THE INDIANS.

of corn and other food, which Smith could scarcely restrain his hungry men from taking until he convinced them that the danger was not over, and that their first duty was to prepare for the return of the savages.

**The wisdom of their leader** was revealed as the hideous war-whoop sounded, and they saw about seventy Indians approaching from the woods, dancing and singing, some painted black, some red, and some parti-colored. Their god Okee, who was hung with chains and pieces of copper, was before them. Well armed with bows, arrows, clubs, and shields, they charged down upon the English with great shouting and cries ; but Smith and his men were fully prepared for them, and fired their well-loaded

muskets into the midst of them. Down fell their Okee, and numbers of the Indians also lay sprawling on the ground; the rest of them fled to the woods, and soon one of their chiefs approached to beg for peace and to redeem their Okee.

**Smith told them** that if six of their number would come unarmed and help him to load his boats with such provisions as he needed, that he would not only be their friend, but would restore their Okee, and give them beads, copper, and hatchets besides. They were very well content with this, and brought Smith venison, turkeys, bread, and whatever else they had, singing and dancing, and making signs of friendship until they departed. The party returned to Jamestown in fine spirits at their success, and at sight of the abundant supplies of provisions with which they were laden the spirits of the colonists revived. Captain Smith made many other expeditions to procure food for the following winter, but what he provided with so much care the rest recklessly wasted.

I will now try to give you some idea of the manners, customs, and religion of the North American Indians when the country was first settled by the English.

**The Indian Tribes.**—The inhabitants were divided into tribes, which were generally named from the rivers upon which they dwelt. There were the Powhatans, the Chickahominies, the Potomacs, the Susquehannocks, and the Pamunkeys. The men were generally tall, straight, and well-formed, with skins browned more from exposure than nature, as the children were born white. They had straight black hair, which was worn long. The women filled the office of barbers, and with two shells grated the hair off. They were very strong and active, able to endure great exposure, sleeping by a fire in the open air in the most severe weather. Their dress was made of the skins of wild beasts,

with the hair on for winter and without it for summer. Some wore long mantles embroidered with beads, and others had mantles of turkey feathers, which were very beautiful. The women had their limbs tattooed with pictures of beasts and serpents.

**But the most curious fashion** they had was in the matter of ear-ornaments. Both sexes had as many as three holes bored in their ears, in which they hung chains, copper, and other ornaments; and, what was still more surprising, it was no uncommon thing for them to use small snakes and even rats as ear-jewels. Imagine a great Indian with a green and yellow snake crawling and flapping about his neck, and often with dreadful familiarity kissing his lips, or a dead rat tied through the ear by the tail! For head-dresses they wore the wings of birds, and some had even a whole hawk or other large bird stuffed, with its wings outspread, perched upon the top of the head; others wore the hand of an enemy, dried. They painted themselves every variety of color, and he was considered most handsome who was most hideous to behold.

**Their houses** were built of branches of trees tied together, somewhat like a modern arbor, and covered with mats or bark. The women displayed great fondness for their children; and to make them hardy and robust, as soon as they were born they began to wash them in the cold water of the rivers and springs, even in the most severe winter weather. They also used paint and ointments to tan their skins, so that in a year or two no weather could hurt them. The men spent their time in fishing, hunting, and fighting, and such manly exercises; but scorned work, which fell to the share of the women, who planted the crops, prepared the food, made mats, baskets, and cooking utensils. Their boats were made of the long trunks of trees, hollowed out by burning until

they assumed the shape of troughs. They were long enough, sometimes, to hold thirty or forty men.

**Hunting Device.**—I must tell you of a curious device they used in deer-hunting. This animal, you know, is so timid that it is very hard to get near enough to him for a successful shot, so the Indian hunter used to dress himself in the skin of the animal, and thus disguised go into the midst of the herd. Sometimes when he would be hunting out a good fat buck, worthy of his arrow, he would see the deer looking curiously towards him, as if they half suspected him of being a cheat, upon which he would lick himself, and by his cunning imitate the motions of the animal so completely as to deceive them entirely, and thus he would shoot many of them.

**Religion.**—No people have ever yet been discovered without a religion. Some idea of one Supreme Being has descended from our father Adam through all the nations of the earth. The North American Indians worshipped the devil, whom they called Okee, and who was represented by a hideous image dressed up in beads and copper, after a most fantastical fashion. The priests in their turn arrayed themselves as much as possible after the same pattern. I will tell you of their head-dresses. They collected a quantity of snake-, weasel-, and rat-skins, stuffed them into their natural shapes with moss, and they tied their tails together like a great tassel; this was put upon the crown of the head with the skins dangling about the face, and the whole was finished by a great crown of feathers, sticking out of the place where the tails were fastened. Their religious exercises were chanted, the priests leading and the rest following after.

**They had great fear and admiration** for their king; his commands were instantly obeyed, and when he frowned they trembled with apprehension; and no wonder, for he was very cruel in punishing such as offended him. He

would have a man tied hand and foot, and thrown upon burning coals and broiled to death. He would have their heads laid upon stones, whilst his executioners beat out their brains with clubs. And when a notorious enemy or criminal was taken, he was tied to a tree, and the executioner with mussel-shells cut off his joints, one after the other, threw them into a great fire, then sliced the flesh from the bones of his head and face; if life still remained in the quivering carcass, the body was ripped up, and then, with the tree to which it was tied, was burned to ashes.

I could tell you many more things of great interest which Captain Smith found out about this strange people, but it would make my history too long, and so much remains of more importance to relate.

---

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. In what year did the events recorded in this chapter take place?
2. Did peace and good-will long continue in the colony?
3. To what did they owe fresh troubles?
4. How did Smith act when the responsibility of affairs fell upon him?
5. Give an account of his expedition in search of food.
6. How were the crew received on their return to Jamestown?
7. How were the Indians divided and named?
8. Describe their appearance and manners.
9. Their peculiarities of dress, etc.
10. How did the women treat their children?
11. Tell of the curious Indian device in deer-hunting.
12. Give an account of their religion.
13. How did their kings rule them?

## CHAPTER IV.

1607.

THE WICKED CONDUCT OF WINGFIELD—SMITH GOES IN SEARCH OF THE PACIFIC OCEAN—IS TAKEN PRISONER—IS CONDEMNED TO DEATH AND IS RESCUED BY POCAHONTAS.

**Discord in the Colony.**—Much of Captain Smith's time was spent in making expeditions to secure provisions for the colony and to become better acquainted with this new country, at the open door of which they seemed to stand; but it was unfortunate for the welfare of the colony that there was no one at Jamestown who could control the people in his absence. The wretched President Wingfield and his accomplice Kendall always took advantage of the confusion caused by his absence to do all the mischief they could, striving to regain their former position.

**Smith unexpectedly returning** on one occasion, found that they had persuaded the sailors to load the only vessel which remained to the colony with everything of value they could lay their hands on, with the intention of returning to England with such as would join them, leaving the rest of the colony to starvation and the mercy of the savages. Captain Smith succeeded in preventing this, though he had to resort to arms before it could be done, and in the fight Kendall was killed.

**The winter now approaching**, the rivers were covered with swans, geese, ducks, and cranes. Fish, oysters, crabs, and clams were very plentiful, the forests furnished them with the fat flesh of wild animals, and they had good bread and abundant vegetables; consequently a more contented state of feeling took possession of the colonists. Some cause for dissatisfaction, however, they must have, so they began to quarrel again with Captain Smith.

**A Mistaken Fancy.**—So little did they know of the extent of this great country, that they imagined that by following the course of the Chickahominy River they would reach the Pacific Ocean. If you will look at the map of the United States you will understand how great was their mistake, and what thousands of miles over high mountains, great rivers, and trackless forests they would have had to traverse before this goal could be reached.

**Smith's Expedition.**—Captain Smith shared this opinion, and had made many expeditions for the purpose of discovering the source of the Chickahominy, but owing to the great difficulty of navigation he had failed; and now the public voice grew loud against him because of his failure, and, fairly driven away from Jamestown by the clamor, he started in his little boat, with some Englishmen and Indians for his companions, determined not to return until he had succeeded in his undertaking. With much labor, by cutting down trees and clearing the channel, he advanced until his boat could go no farther, and leaving it in an open bay, out of reach of the Indian arrows, he ordered the men not to go on shore, and taking with him two Englishmen and two Indians, pursued his course up the river in a canoe.

**As soon as he left them,** the men in the boat, disobeying his orders, rowed to shore, where they were surprised by the Indians, and it was with difficulty that any of the party made their escape. One of their number, George Cassen, was captured, and put to death with the greatest cruelty. Learning from him where Smith had gone, they followed, and soon came upon the canoe with the two Englishmen sleeping beside it, Smith and the Indians having gone into the woods to get food. After killing the men, they pursued Smith, who soon found himself surrounded by two hundred savages thirsting for his blood.

**In this dreadful situation** his presence of mind did •

not forsake him. Taking one of his Indian guides, he tied him in front of himself with his garters, as a protection, and shot over his shoulder at the savages, killing several of them; he himself was wounded in the thigh. His hope was, by moving backward, to reach the boat, and so make his escape; but having his eyes fixed upon the enemy, he came upon marshy ground, into which he sank up to his armpits, and almost expired with cold. Still the In-



CAPTAIN SMITH TAKEN PRISONER.

dians were afraid to come near him until he threw away his arms; then they drew him out and led him to the fire where his two companions were lying dead. Here they chafed his benumbed limbs. He asked to be taken to their captain, when they led him to Opechankanough, king of Pamaunkee.

**Captain Smith** knew that nothing but his wit now could save his life, so drawing from his pocket an ivory

compass, such as is used on ships, he presented it to the king. The curious savages gathered around, and looked with wonder upon the needle vibrating before them, but which they could not touch on account of the glass which came between. Seeing them interested, his hopes revived, and partly by language and partly by signs, he told them of the roundness of the earth and of the variety of nations which inhabit it. He explained to them in simple language the course of the heavenly bodies, until they were filled with awe and admiration. What a teacher and what a school in this vast wilderness of the New World!

**Notwithstanding his eloquence** and its effects, an hour afterwards Smith was tied to a tree and surrounded by Indians with their arrows pointed at his heart. He gave up all for lost, and, committing his soul to God, prepared to meet death with unflinching courage; but at this crisis Opechankanough held up the compass in his hand, and the Indians laid down their bows and arrows, untied him from the tree, and forming a procession, placed him in the midst, and so led him away.

**The order of their procession** was thus: three men held him fast by each arm, and on each side were six in file, with their arrows pointed towards him. When they arrived at their town, which consisted of thirty or forty houses built of mats, women and children came out to stare at the white man, whereupon the Indians commenced their war-dance, yelling and shrieking with hideous triumph. At length they led Smith to a long house, where thirty tall Indians guarded him, and after a while they brought him bread and venison, as much as would have served for twenty men. At midnight they brought him meat again, and again the next morning, until, remembering the stories he had read about cannibals, he concluded that they were only fattening him to eat him. This idea did not much increase his appetite.

After some days' captivity he was brought before the king, where he was told that they were about to destroy Jamestown, and he was promised his life, liberty, and lands if he would give them his assistance. In return he excited their fears by telling them of the dangers they would encounter from the great guns which belched out fire and smoke, and he offered to prove to them that what he said was true if they would send some of their men to Jamestown to take a mere piece of paper for him. They agreed, and he, tearing a leaf from a blank book he had with him, wrote upon it minute directions to the colonists what they should do to frighten the messengers, and also a list of articles they should send to him by them. He then told them, with all the manner of a prophet, exactly what would occur during their visit, and giving them the mysterious paper, they departed. Of course everything happened as he said, and they returning, told all these things to their wondering people, declaring that either he was a great prophet or the paper could speak.

**The Indian Conjurers.**—They then led him with great ceremonies through all the Indian tribes living upon the rivers in that part of the country, to the king's habitation at Werowocomoco, on York River, where they called their conjurers and priests together to see what was the will of their Okee concerning him. They made a great fire in a long house, with a mat spread on each side of it, on one of which they made him sit down. Presently in there came skipping a great fellow painted black, with a tassel of snakes and weasel-skins, and over it all a crown of feathers upon his head. He began to make a speech in a hideous voice with passionate gestures. Next he walked around the fire and sprinkled a circle of meal. Then in came three more of these monsters dancing and shouting, their eyes painted white; next three more with their eyes painted red. After dancing around him for some time,

and shouting until he was almost maddened, they then led him back to his prison.

**King Powhatan.**—Three days they kept up these ceremonies, after which they brought him before their great king Powhatan. Smith found him seated before a fire, upon a seat like a bedstead; he was covered with a rich



CAPTAIN SMITH. SAVED BY POCAHONTAS.

robe of skins, and on each side of him was a young girl about sixteen years of age. Along the sides of the house were rows of men, and behind them as many women, all with their heads and shoulders painted red, decked with feathers, and chains of white beads about their necks. When they saw him, the king and all the company gave

a great shout; then the Queen of Appamatox brought him water to wash his hands, and another queen brought a large bunch of feathers instead of a towel for him to dry them. Then they made a great feast for him, and after that held a long consultation about him.

**When this was over**, two great stones were brought and placed before the king, and as many as could seized him, dragged him to them, and laid his head upon the stones. Again did he think his last hour had come, and closed his eyes to shut out the sight of the dreadful clubs that were raised above his head ready to beat out his brains; but a shriek aroused him, and opening his eyes, he saw the beautiful Pocahontas, the favorite daughter of King Powhatan, pleading with her father for his life, while the tears rolled down her cheeks. Finding that her father would not relent, she flew to Smith, laid her head upon his, and declared that she would give her life to save him. This conquered the stern old king, and he released the prisoner. Two days afterwards he allowed him to go back to Jamestown, upon condition that he would send him two great guns and a grindstone. So once more Smith's life was miraculously saved.

**On his return** he was received with great joy by a part of the colony. As Wingfield and some others were again making preparations to run away with the vessel to England, Smith, at the hazard of his life, prevented this, and in return Wingfield and his confederates tried to bring him to trial for the death of the two Englishmen who were slain by the Indians; but in this also they failed, and Smith at last succeeded in having them arrested and sent prisoners to England. Once more was quiet restored to the colony.

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. What is the date of the events detailed in this chapter?
  2. How did Smith spend his time, and what difficulties did he encounter?
  3. What curious mistake did the English make about the extent of Virginia?
  4. Tell of Smith's expedition up the Chickahominy.
  5. How were his men captured?
  6. Give an account of Smith's dreadful situation.
  7. How did he act so as to gain the attention of the savages?
  8. What happened next?
  9. How was his life saved?
  10. Tell the manner in which they conducted the prisoner.
  11. What of his trial?
  12. Give an account of the preparations for his execution.
  13. Who saved his life, and how?
  14. How was he received on his return to Jamestown?
- 

## CHAPTER V.

1607.—CONTINUED.

NEWPORT ARRIVES FROM ENGLAND—TRADING WITH THE INDIANS  
—POWHATAN.

**A Visit to Powhatan.**—Soon after the events narrated in the last chapter Captain Newport arrived with new supplies. The colonists were overjoyed, and the sailors at once commenced to trade with the natives, obtaining for a few trinkets quantities of copper and other valuables. Captain Newport sent Powhatan some presents, which so pleased the royal savage that he begged for a visit from the "Great Father," as he called Newport. It was some time before Captain Smith could persuade Captain Newport to trust himself among the savages, but Smith undertook with twenty well-armed men to encounter the worst that could happen to them; so, fitting up a small vessel, they started up the river. Landing

near the dwelling of Powhatan, they were met by two or three hundred savages, who conducted them to the town.

**Here Powhatan received them** with great shouts of joy. They found him sitting upon his bed of mats, with a pillow of leather beside him, embroidered after their manner with pearls and white beads. His royal robe was a great mantle of skins which covered him; at his head and feet sat a handsome young woman, and on each side of his house were twenty more women, their heads and shoulders painted red, and with chains of white beads about their necks. In front of these were the chief men of the tribe, and behind them a guard of about one hundred people; and as the Englishmen passed through this guard, proclamation was made that none, upon pain of death, should do them any harm. Then followed a long interview between Newport and Powhatan, in which each tried to outdo the other in professions of love and friendship. Next followed a great feast, dancing, singing, and all kinds of merriment. They were entertained that night at Powhatan's quarters.

Three or four days passed in this manner, during all of which time Powhatan bore himself so proudly that all were compelled to admire the monarch who, though he had never been beyond the American forests, was yet every inch a king. Very cunning he proved himself, too, in trading with the English, though in this matter Captain Smith proved himself the better man of the two.

**Powhatan's Scheme.**—As if scorning to trade as his subjects did, he said, “Captain Newport, it is not agreeable to my greatness in this peddling manner to trade for trifles, and I esteem you also a great chief, therefore lay me down all your commodities together; what I like I will take, and will pay you what I think is their value.” Captain Smith saw through his design at once, and told Captain Newport that the cunning savage only wanted to

cheat him, and get more for his commodities than they were worth. At first Captain Newport would not believe this; but when he found that Powhatan wanted to get as much for a bushel of corn as he had expected to give for



POWHATAN TRADING FOR BLUE BEADS.

a hogshead, he was very angry, and a quarrel would have ensued between the two if Captain Smith had not interposed by drawing out a string of blue beads, which, attracting the attention of Powhatan, diverted his thoughts in another direction. He at once eagerly bargained for the beads, but the more he wanted them the more unwilling Captain Smith seemed to be to let him have them. He told Powhatan that they were made of a very rare

substance of the color of the sky, and could only be worn by the greatest kings in the world. This of course stimulated the desire of Powhatan for them, and it ended by the Indian king selling three hundred bushels of corn for a pound or two of blue beads; and yet they parted good friends.

**They also made the same kind of a bargain** with Opechankanough, obtaining from him for a few blue beads a quantity of valuable provisions. The party returned to Jamestown delighted with their success, which, however, in the end, did not benefit them much; for as they were storing away these new supplies the town caught fire, and, being built of wood, almost the whole place, with the arms, clothes, bedding, and provisions of the inhabitants, was destroyed. Good Preacher Hunt lost his library and everything but the clothes he had on, yet no one ever heard him complain. And, to increase the affliction of the colony, this accident occurred in the middle of winter, and a great deal of suffering ensued.

**The Gold Fever.**—If Captain Smith had been listened to, all hands would at once have set to work to rebuild the town; but just at this time a fever seized the colony most fatal to its prosperity: it was the fever for gold, and pervaded all classes of men. In the bed of one of the streams near Jamestown, among the clay and sand, a shining substance had been discovered, which was pronounced by some, who pretended to have knowledge in these matters, to be gold. At once the farmer left his plough and the carpenter his tools, and all classes and ages of men hurried to possess themselves of the precious metal; so that nothing was talked of but gold, nothing was hoped for but gold, no work was done but to dig gold, wash gold, refine gold, and load gold. The fields where their true wealth lay were neglected; their houses, the rebuilding of which was so necessary to their comfort,

lay in ruins; their provisions were scarcely enough to support life; and still the mad fever went on. They even loaded a ship with the gilded earth, and putting it under the command of Captain Newport, who was also a victim to this wild delirium, they sent it home to England, where, being examined, it was found, much to their mortification, to be nothing but a worthless mineral.

**This disappointment**, however, was the best thing that could have happened to the colonists, as they at once abandoned their wild search for gold and returned to their proper employments. And Smith, taking advantage of this favorable change, proceeded to rebuild the city and plant the crops; and soon all were busy and cheerful, cutting down trees, preparing the fields, planting corn, and building houses. A vessel from England that had been thought to be lost, arrived with supplies, which relieved their immediate wants; and, taught by the follies of the past, the future looked to them more hopeful.

**Powhatan's Treachery.**—A difficulty with the Powhatans was the next thing which engaged their attention. While Captain Newport was at Jamestown, King Powhatan sent to him a present of twenty turkeys, with a request that he would send him twenty swords, which he, anxious to keep on friendly terms with him, did. After his departure, Powhatan sent Captain Smith twenty turkeys, expecting a like return, but he found he had a different person to deal with. Smith took no notice of the request, and Powhatan, indignant at the ill success of his scheme, ordered his men to beset the colonists and seize their arms wherever they could find them. This produced constant annoyance; the parties at work were continually interrupted; but so much afraid were they of provoking the enmity of the Indians, that these injuries remained unpunished until, emboldened by this fact, they became more annoying than ever.

**Smith's Reprisal.**—It chanced, however, that Captain Smith became the object of some of their outrages, and, as may be imagined, he was not one to take it meekly. He hunted them up and down the country, he terrified them with whipping and imprisonment, and kept in the prison of Jamestown seven savages as hostages for the good behavior of the others; they in return captured two Englishmen, and sent Smith word that they should be put to death at once if the Indians were not released. As an answer to this, Smith marched out against them, and in two hours so punished them for their insolence that they brought him his two men, and without any further conditions begged for peace. He forced them to confess that they had been sent by Powhatan to capture arms, which they were to use against the English themselves. But this the cunning monarch stoutly denied, and even sent his daughter Pocahontas to Jamestown with presents to Captain Smith, and earnest entreaties that he would excuse the rashness of some of his chiefs, who without orders from him had perpetrated these outrages. Captain Smith punished his captives as he thought fit, and delivered them to Pocahontas, for whose sake alone, he said, he spared their lives and gave them their liberty.

The wisdom of Captain Smith in this affair was plainly shown, as it brought the savages to such fear and obedience that his very name was sufficient to control them, and instead of constant alarms and interruptions, all was now peace and quiet.

---

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. What happened next?
2. Tell of the visit to Powhatan.
3. How did Powhatan try to cheat the English?
4. How did Captain Smith prove as cunning as he?
5. Tell of the blue beads transaction.

6. What happened on their return to Jamestown?
  7. What fever seized the colony?
  8. What effect did it have on their prosperity?
  9. How did it end?
  10. What next engaged their attention?
  11. Did Smith submit to the will of Powhatan?
  12. What did Powhatan do?
  13. How did Smith revenge himself?
  14. How did the difficulty end?
  15. What effect did this have on the savages?
- 

## CHAPTER VI.

1608.

SMITH'S EXPEDITION UP THE CHESAPEAKE BAY—QUELLS A MUTINY  
—NEW DISCOVERIES AND ADVENTURES.

**A New Expedition.**—Two years had now elapsed since the first settlement of the colony at Jamestown, and though Captain Smith had made many voyages for the purpose of learning the extent and resources of the country, yet but little had been really accomplished. You remember that I told you some chapters back that this colony was sent from England by the London Company, and they were permitted to take possession of fifty miles along the sea-coast and one hundred miles back from the coast. This was a vast extent of country, but only a small portion of it had yet been explored. So in June of the year 1608, the colony being in a condition of quiet and prosperity, Captain Smith determined to push his discoveries along the sea-coast. For this purpose he fitted out a boat, and taking with him fourteen men, he started down the river towards the ocean. Again they touched at Point Hope and Point Comfort, and re-

called the time when, storm-tossed and weary, they had here welcomed the prospect of rest.

**Touching at Cape Henry,** they crossed the bay to the Eastern Shore, visited Smith's Isles, and then crossed over to Cape Charles. Here two fierce stout savages came to the landing, and holding long poles in their hands, boldly demanded who they were and what they wanted; but finding the English friendly in their answers, they too became very polite, and directed them to Accomack, the habitation of their king. They found him the handsomest and most polite savage whom they had yet encountered. These Indians spoke the language of the Powhatans, and as our colonists had become quite familiar with that, they had no difficulty in conversing with them.

**Smith and his Crew.**—The king was quite eloquent in his description of the bays, isles, and rivers, and excited great expectations in the voyagers, so that they soon left their hospitable host and pursued their voyage. Many were the discoveries they made of islands, rivers, and fertile fields. Sometimes they were kindly received by the natives, at other times they had to fight their way on, and often they were reduced to great straits for want of provisions, when, of course, the crew blamed Captain Smith for bringing them upon the journey; but he bore it all with patient firmness which overcame their ill-temper. Once, when he could scarcely bear their murmurs, he said to them, "Gentlemen, do you not remember the history of Sir Richard Grenville and his men? how when their provisions were nearly exhausted and he thought of returning, his brave men begged him to let them go forward, as they had two dogs, which, boiled with sassafras leaves, would richly feed them? Then what a shame is it for you who still have provisions left you, to wish to force my return when we have not even yet heard of what we came out to seek! You cannot say that I have not shared

with you the worst of what is past; and I am content that in what is to come you give the worst part to myself. As for your fears that I will lose myself in these unknown waters, or be swallowed up in some stormy gust, abandon



CAPTAIN SMITH REBUKING HIS CREW.

such childish apprehensions, regain your old spirits; for return I will not, if God please, until I have found that which I came out to seek."

**In the Chesapeake.**—Sickness, however, attacked them, and Captain Smith was obliged to return to Jamestown, where he dismissed his crew, took an entirely new set of men, and returned to push his discoveries in Chesapeake Bay. Numerous were the adventures of this party, and great the dangers from which they escaped. They pursued their course up to the head of Chesapeake Bay and into the various rivers, and made the acquaintance and

secured the friendship of the numerous tribes of Indians, who promised to plant corn for the settlement, in return for which the English were to give them hatchets, beads, and other things which they much desired.

**The Indians of the Chesapeake.**—The two most powerful tribes with whom they met deserve mention. They were the Massawomeks and the Susquehannas. The first were said to have come from great waters far to the north, which are now supposed to be the lakes of Canada; they were at war with all the other Indian tribes, and none were able to stand against them except the Susquehannas, who had their home upon the river which now bears their name. The latter were a giant people. Captain Smith describes one of their chiefs as very great in size, measuring three-quarters of a yard around the calf of his leg, and the rest of the body in the same proportion. He was dressed in the skins of bears and wolves, with a bear's head upon his breast, its ears for shoulder ornaments, and its paws hanging down from the elbow. He wore a wolf's skin at his back for a quiver, and a wolf's head hanging to a chain for a jewel. But notwithstanding their savage appearance the Susquehannas are described as an honest, simple people, so impressed with the greatness of the English that they could scarce be kept from worshipping them as gods.

**Return to Jamestown.**—These voyages and discoveries occupied Captain Smith from June until September, during which time he travelled three thousand miles in an open boat. When he returned to Jamestown he found the colony much reduced by sickness and the bad management of Captain Ratcliffe, who had occupied all the time of Smith's absence in building himself a palace, instead of attending to the wants of the suffering people.

**Smith elected President.**—And now, in spite of their jealousies, Captain Smith's superiority was acknowledged.

as the Council met two days after his long voyage and elected him president of the colony. He at once commenced the most vigorous measures, stopped the work upon Ratcliffe Palace as useless, repaired the church and storehouses, built a new fort, and placed the whole settlement in better condition than it had ever been before. Soon after Captain Newport arrived with supplies; he told Captain Smith that he had orders not to return until he could bring back a lump of gold and had discovered the passage to the Pacific Ocean, which they still imagined lay only a short distance from them. Captain Smith's travels into the country, however, had convinced him that this was a mistake, and he told Captain Newport that the fine ship he had brought would never take them to the sea until they had carried her across high mountains and forests more extensive than they could guess; and as to the lump of gold, he besought Captain Newport not again to excite the fever which had been so nearly ruinous to the existence of the colony.

**Captain Newport's Instructions.**—Captain Newport insisted that his orders were positive, and he said besides, that he had information upon which he could rely, that the country of the Monnachins, who were the nearest neighbors and great enemies of the Powhatans, would furnish them with an abundance of the precious metal. He told Smith that with the view of obtaining the help of the Powhatans in this matter, he had brought with him many costly presents for Powhatan, among other things a king's crown, a scarlet cloak, bed and bedstead, a basin and ewer, and other furniture; and he thought that if they could get Powhatan to come to Jamestown for the purpose of receiving these presents, they could so flatter him with the grand ceremony of crowning him king that he would be willing to go with them against the Monnachins. Again Captain Smith remonstrated; he said that it was a great

mistake to give all these rich presents to the Indians, that they were now quite as well satisfied with a few strings of blue beads as they would be with all the jewels of England; but if they were taught the use of these additional luxuries, they would learn to value themselves and their commodities at a much higher rate, and so be harder and more expensive to deal with in the future. But his wise counsel was unheeded; Captain Newport would have his own way, and after further consultation Captain Smith agreed to go to Powhatan and invite him to Jamestown.

**The account of this conference** I will reserve for the next chapter, and I will conclude this by telling you of the crew Captain Newport brought with him. There came with him the first English women who had ever visited Jamestown, Mrs. Forest and her maid Anne Buras; he brought also among his crew two brave soldiers, Captains Waldo and Winne, whose cheerful spirits and willing hands greatly aided the colonists in their work.

**Smith and the Swearers.**—Captain Smith tells an amusing incident of the first attempt of some of the gentlemen to go to work in the American forests. He had taken a party of them about five miles below Jamestown to cut down trees, himself as usual doing the hardest work. Right merrily they performed the task with laughter and singing, rejoicing in the thunder of the great trees as they measured their length upon the ground. But soon the tender hands of the new-comers began to blister from the unusual tax upon them, and with about every third blow of the axe a loud oath would come. To stop this, Captain Smith ordered that every oath should be set down, and that when the day's work was over each perpetrator of such sin should have a can of cold water poured down his sleeve, which so washed the wickedness out of them that soon not an oath a week was heard.

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. What is the date of the events narrated in this chapter?
2. What extent of country had been granted to the London Company?
3. For what purpose did Captain Smith start on his voyage, and what of his crew?
4. At what points did they touch, and what Indians did they first encounter?
5. Describe them.
6. What discoveries did they make, and how were they received by the natives?
7. What difficulties did Captain Smith have to encounter?
8. Tell the story of his remonstrance with his crew.
9. Why were they obliged to return to Jamestown?
10. Did Captain Smith make a second start?
11. What powerful tribes did they meet, and from what portion of the country did they come?
12. Describe the giant chief of the Susquehannas, and how did they receive the English?
13. How long did these voyages and discoveries occupy Captain Smith, and how far did he travel?
14. What condition of things did he find at Jamestown on his return?
15. How was his superiority acknowledged?
16. What were his first steps?
17. What was Captain Newport's course upon his arrival?
18. What presents had he brought for Powhatan?
19. What remonstrance did Smith make, and was he listened to?
20. Give some account of the crew Newport brought out with him.
21. How did Smith cure profanity in his laborers?

---

 CHAPTER VII.

1608.—CONTINUED.

WHAT NEWPORT BROUGHT FROM ENGLAND—CORONATION OF POWHATAN—POCAHONTAS AGAIN SAVES CAPTAIN SMITH.

**A Visit to Powhatan.**—According to the agreement between Smith and Newport related in the last chapter, the former, taking with him Waldo and three others of

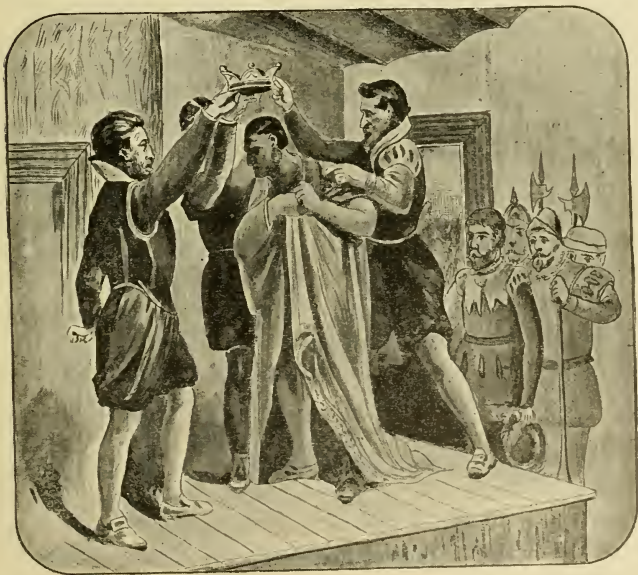
the new-comers, started out for the residence of Powhatan. When they reached there they found that he was thirty miles away, and had to be sent for; and the English waited for him in a green field near by. Here they made a fire and seated themselves on a mat before it. Suddenly they were startled by a hideous sound from a neighboring woods. Seizing their arms, they caught one or two old men who were standing by and held them as hostages, thinking that Powhatan and all his force were coming to surprise them. Then came the beautiful Pocahontas from the woods, and delivering herself into the hands of Captain Smith, told him that he might kill her if any harm happened to their party; that she only intended some entertainment for them until the arrival of her father. Thus reassured, they waited the next event.

**An Indian Entertainment.**—Presently thirty young women, all fantastically painted in different colors, and with bucks' horns on their heads, came singing and dancing out of the woods. One had an otter-skin hanging from her girdle, another a quiver of arrows at her back and a bow and arrow in her hand, another carried a sword, and another a club; each bore a different burden. These rushing from among the trees with most unmusical shouts and cries, formed themselves in a ring around the fire, where they danced and sung for about an hour; they then conducted the Englishmen to a house where a feast was prepared for them, consisting of all the savage dainties that could be obtained, after which, by the light of fire-brands, with singing and dancing, they conducted Smith and his men to their lodgings.

**The next day came Powhatan,** and Smith delivered his message, telling him that his "Father Newport" had arrived, and brought him from his brother, the King of England, rich presents, which he begged he would come to Jamestown to receive, and afterwards the English

would go with him and give him his revenge upon the Monnachins. The proud savage replied, "If your king has sent me presents, I also am a king, and this is my land: eight days I will stay here to receive them; your father is to come to me, not I to him, nor yet to your fort; neither will I bite at such a bait. As for the Monnachins, I can avenge my own injuries. And as for any account you may have from my people of waters beyond these mountains, it is false." He then commenced drawing upon the ground plots of the country as he believed it to be. Smith returned to Jamestown with this answer.

**The Crowning of Powhatan.**—Captain Newport,



CORONATION OF POWHATAN.

ever more ready to obey the savages than to compel their obedience to him, sent the presents to Powhatan,

and the next day was fixed for the coronation. After much trouble they induced Powhatan to put on the fine clothes and the scarlet cloak, but when the time came for him to kneel and put the crown on his head, he positively refused. In vain they told him until they were tired that the crown made him a king. He said he was already a king, and that it was unkingly to bend his knee; at length, however, by leaning hard on his shoulder, they made him stoop a little, and three men, having the crown in their hands, placed it upon his head. Then, at a given signal, came such a volley of shot from the boats that the new-made king in his crown started up with fear, thinking he was about to be attacked. He soon saw his mistake, and to cover his embarrassment turned to Captain Newport, and with the proud manner of a sovereign to a subject, presented him with his old mantle and shoes.

**Return to Jamestown.**—Newport tried hard to persuade him to go with them against the Monnachins, but he refused either to go or to lend them men or guides for the purpose. As a return for the handsome gifts which had been sent him, he then presented Newport with seven or eight bushels of wheat ears, and with these the disappointed party returned to Jamestown, inwardly acknowledging the wisdom of Captain Smith, who had given his advice against the plan. Captain Newport still insisted upon the expedition against the Monnachins, and taking with them a hundred and twenty men, among whom was a refiner of precious metals, they started. They found the Monnachins a quiet and peaceable people, with whom they had no difficulty. They also found some earth which their refiner said contained small quantities of silver, but not enough to reward them for their trouble; nor would the Monnachins trade with them, pretending to believe that there were ships in the bay which would destroy them if they came to Jamestown: and so effectually

had they hidden their corn in the woods that the English could not find it. So the expedition returned to Jamestown sick with the disappointment of their gilded hopes, as Captain Smith had foretold.

**First Marriage.**—This same year Anne Burras, the maid of Mrs. Forest, who had come over in the last vessel under Newport, was married to John Laydon, one of the colonists; this was the first English marriage in Virginia.

**Powhatan's Treachery.**—I will now tell you how the life of Captain Smith was once more saved by the beautiful Pocahontas. It happened in the month of December. Powhatan was then staying at his favorite residence, Werowocomoco, which was situated on the York River, not very far from Jamestown, and was the scene of Captain Smith's former miraculous escape from death through the love of Pocahontas. Powhatan sent a message to Smith, requesting him to send some men to build him a house, and to send him besides a grindstone, fifty swords, some guns, a cock and a hen; and if this request was complied with, he would have his ship loaded with corn. Captain Smith was not deceived by the promises of the Indian chief, but after their late ill-success corn was most important to the colony; so he sent two Dutchmen and three Englishmen to build the house, and himself fitting out three vessels with forty-one men, made his way by water to the dwelling of the wily chief.

**Stopping with some friendly tribes,** he was warned that Powhatan intended his destruction. Thus warned, he proceeded on his journey, and on the 12th of January reached Werowocomoco, where he found the river frozen half a mile from the shore. Captain Smith set the example of breaking the ice, and, wading up to their armpits, they landed, took possession of the first wigwams they, saw and sent to Powhatan for provisions. He com-

plied, and the next day visited them. Then commenced a rare war of wits between Captain Smith and the Indian king, each trying which could be the more cunning. Powhatan first said that he had no corn; whereupon Smith reminded him of the promises made through the messengers he had sent to Jamestown. At this Powhatan laughed, and said he but joked, and asked to see their commodities. They were displayed, and then the wily king proceeded to ask the most exorbitant prices for his corn; but Captain Smith would not allow himself to be cheated, and would make none but fair bargains. Powhatan next tried what great professions of friendship could do; he reminded Smith of his past favors, and reproached him for coming to him with arms in his hands as if he were an enemy, which he said so frightened his men that they would not bring their corn to sell. He proposed that they should send their arms away to the boat and show themselves to the people without them, and then they could trade freely. But Captain Smith was not to be deceived by such talk, and refused to give up their arms or to sell them, letting the savage know that he had no confidence in his professions of friendship, and that he understood that he wanted to catch them without their arms, so that he might destroy them.

**Captain Smith**, wearied with the length of the debate, and seeing that Powhatan only trifled with him, attempted to capture him and so force him to keep his promises, but the chief was too quick for him and made his escape. Presently the house where the English were was beset by savages. Captain Smith with one man rushed out among them, pistol, sword, and target in hand, and such was their fear of him that as soon as they saw him they went tumbling one over the other, only too glad to escape unhurt. Soon afterwards Powhatan sent one of his orators to them, who thus spoke: "Captain Smith, our chief, fearing your guns, has fled; he only sent some of his men to guard his

corn, which might be stolen without your knowledge. Not withstanding your suspicions, Powhatan is your friend, and will ever continue so. As the ice has now melted, he would have you send away your corn; and if you wish his company, send away your guns, which so frighten his people." But Captain Smith, holding on to his arms, got the corn and loaded his ships.

**Pocahontas gives Warning.**—That night Powhatan and the wicked Dutchmen who were building his house laid a plan to take the lives of Captain Smith and his men. But God willed it otherwise. Through the darkness of that night came Pocahontas, ever the guardian angel of the colony, and revealed to Captain Smith the plot. She told him that a great feast would presently be sent him from her father, and while they were engaged in eating it they were to be surrounded and killed. He in gratitude offered to repay her with such things as she valued most, but with the tears running down her sorrowful cheeks she refused them, saying that she dared not be found with any such things, as her father would find out what she had done and would kill her, so weeping bitterly she departed. Presently it happened as she had said; ten stout Indians came laden with venison, turkeys, and other delicacies, and they were followed by more, and still again by more; but the Englishmen remained on their guard with arms in their hands during the whole night, and Powhatan never knew that his plot was betrayed. The next day they set sail for Jamestown, leaving the Dutchmen at work upon the house of Powhatan, the stout stone chimney of which still remains to mark the spot where this grand old Indian chief held his savage court, and where his beautiful daughter Pocahontas more than once endangered her own life to protect that of Captain Smith.

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. What is the date of the events recorded in this chapter?
2. What was Captain Smith's next enterprise?
3. What happened upon their arrival at the residence of Powhatan?
4. Give an account of the entertainment provided by Pocahontas.
5. How did Powhatan receive the news Smith brought him?
6. What did Newport do?
7. Describe the coronation of Powhatan.
8. What success did they meet with in their expedition into the country of the Monnachins?
9. What event occurred this same year?
10. What message did Powhatan send Smith, and what was the name of his residence?
11. Point it out on the map.
12. Did Smith comply with the request of Powhatan?
13. Relate the circumstances of their journey and reception.
14. Relate the interview between Smith and Powhatan.
15. What was Powhatan's object, and how did it succeed?
16. What did his orator say?
17. Did Smith get the corn?
18. What plot was revealed to them?
19. How was its success prevented?
20. Relate Smith's interview with Pocahontas.
21. What happened afterwards?

---

CHAPTER VIII.

1609.

THE TREACHEROUS DUTCHMEN—OPECHANKANOUGH—SMITH, BY HIS WISDOM AND BRAVERY, SAVES HIS CREW—ARRIVALS FROM ENGLAND—SMITH'S ACCIDENT AND RETURN TO ENGLAND.

**The Dutchmen.**—Among the last crew of Captain Newport were a number of Dutchmen, who, being strong, able-bodied men and accustomed to labor, were expected to do a great deal of the hard work of the colony; but instead of this they became a source of serious trouble, and were more dangerous enemies than the savages them-

selves. I told you in the last chapter how some of them, whom Captain Smith sent to Powhatan to build him a house, by plotting with this crafty savage would have destroyed Smith and his party but for the interposition of Pocahontas. After the English had set sail from Werowocomoco, Powhatan quickly despatched two of these Dutchmen across the country to Jamestown.

**These told Captain Winne**, who was acting as president, that all was well with Smith's command, and that having no use for their old arms they had sent them back for new. Captain Winne, believing what they said, furnished the arms. They then excited the avarice of some of their countrymen by telling them the great promises Powhatan had made to them if they would join him in destroying the English. They were eagerly listened to, and being expert thieves, they stole quantities of arms and ammunition, secretly conveying them by night to the woods, where the Indians were in waiting. In the morning they returned to the city without exciting suspicion.

**Opechankanough.**—In the mean time, Smith and his crew, after cruising about the coast notwithstanding their late danger, came to Pamaunkee, where dwelt King Opechankanough, the brother of Powhatan, who had promised them large supplies of corn for the colony. Leaving their boats, Smith, with fifteen of his men, went to the house of the king, who soon joined them with numbers of his men carrying scanty supplies of corn for which he asked exorbitant prices. Smith, in great indignation, said to him, "Opechankanough, the deceitfulness of your professions of love is made plain by your actions. You know our want, and we your plenty. We *must* have supplies. You have promised us corn, and kings should keep their promises. Here are our commodities; take what you want, and I myself will make the bargains with your people." The cunning chief pretended to be perfectly

satisfied, and gave them what they had there at their own price, promising to return the next day with a great deal more. So they parted, the Englishmen returning to their boats.

**Treachery.**—The next day they found four or five men with great baskets of corn waiting for them, and Opechankanough, welcoming them with assumed cheerfulness, proceeded to sell them great bargains in the corn. Presently in came one of Smith's men and told them that they were betrayed, that at least seven hundred savages surrounded the house in which they were. This created great dismay among Smith's party; but he, smiling calmly at their fears, told them he would be well satisfied if he had no enemies he feared more than he did these savages; he said that he was far more afraid of the unruly spirits at Jamestown who sent home false reports of him, bade them remember how often he had escaped from far greater peril than this which now threatened them, and promised them if they would stand by him, and trust to him, that, with the help of God, he would not only bring them out of this trouble, but would force the Indians to give them full supplies of what they needed. His words had the desired effect; their courage returning, they promised him to act as he wished.

**Smith's Boldness.**—Turning to Opechankanough, he told him that he plainly saw through the plot to murder him, and proposed that the two parties should adjourn to the open field and there settle their quarrel by fighting, and whichever conquered should remain masters of the country. The cunning king, however, tried to pacify Captain Smith with soft words, telling him that no harm was intended, but that, on the contrary, he had provided a rich present for him which waited his acceptance at the door. Glancing out, he saw baskets of corn guarded by about two hundred men, with their arrows upon their bent bows,

and knew at once that their design was to get him out of the house, when they would instantly kill him. In a great rage at this deceit, Smith now ordered two of his men to guard the door, and, rushing alone into the midst of the king's guard, before he had time to make any resist-



CAPTURE OF OPECHANKANOUGH.

ance he seized Opechankanough by his long lock of hair, and put a pistol to his breast. The army of savages was instantly quelled; the guards threw down their arms, and the others were terror-stricken at the man who dared thus to deal with their king, whom Smith led into the midst of his people, utterly humbled at his defeat.

**The Indians pressed eagerly forward and laid their baskets of corn at Smith's feet, while the king himself ordered his richest stores to be brought to his conqueror. Smith, still holding him by the hair of his head, thus spoke to them in their own language: "I see the great**

desire you Pamaunkees have to take my life, and you think because I have not punished your treachery before that you are safe from my revenge. The reason I have borne so long with your insolence is, that I made a vow before God to be your friend; this vow, if I keep, God will keep me, and you cannot hurt me; if I break it, he will destroy me. But you have broken our friendship by your actions, and now if you shed one drop of my people's blood, or touch with even so much as a finger these beads and copper which lie here before you, I will destroy every Pamaunkee of your tribe; not one shall escape. You promised to load my ship before I departed, and so you shall, or I will load her with your dead carcasses. But if you will come as friends, and bring your corn, I will then remember how once you saved my life when I was in your power. I will trade with you, and be your friend forever."

**A Second Attack.**—Away went their bows and arrows, and all day long men, women, and children thronged about him, bringing their commodities in as great quantities as he could desire, until at last, worn out with the excitement of the day, Smith appointed two of his men to receive the presents, while some others guarded Opechankanough, and he, throwing himself upon a mat, fell fast asleep. When the Indians saw their great enemy asleep, their fear of him diminished, and about fifty of their chosen warriors, with clubs or English swords in their hands, while hundreds of Indians pressed on behind them, bore swiftly down upon the house. The noise they made in their haste awoke Smith, who instantly seized his sword and stood ready to meet them. When they came to the entrance and saw him awake, and standing thus with his men around him, their courage deserted them, and they fell back one upon the other, until the house was clear of them. Opechankanough endeavored to make excuses for them, which Cap-

tain Smith received; and the Indians loaded the vessels with their commodities, after which the English took their departure.

**Fate of the Dutch Traitors.**—Captain Smith had many other adventures as strange as these which I have related. No wonder the simple Indians looked upon him as a superior being, and at length, through the fear they had of him, concluded a peace with him, and became subject to the English. Before I go farther I must tell what became of the treacherous Dutchmen. One of their number making his escape to England, by his false accounts of gold-mines and great riches to be found in Virginia, induced some noblemen to come hither, who, finding him but an impostor, left him to perish miserably. The others desiring to leave Powhatan and return to the English, that warrior showed the real contempt in which he held them. "You," he said, "who were so ready to betray Captain Smith to me, will as readily betray me to Captain Smith;" so he caused their brains to be beaten out with clubs.

**Smith returns.**—After his success in trading with the Indians, Smith returned to Jamestown with abundant supplies, whereat the delighted colonists prepared to sit down and enjoy in idleness what he had collected at so much risk and toil. But this he would by no means allow. He told them sternly that he who did not work, neither should he eat. He set each man his allotted task, making his own equal to the best of them, and he who did not fulfil this task was to be sent beyond the limits of the colony, and left to shift for himself.

**The London Company.**—This rule had the desired effect, and for a time all went well, and under his wise management would have continued to improve, had it not been for the want of wisdom in the London Company, who, becoming impatient at so small returns in money from the colony in Virginia, induced the King of England

to allow them to fit out nine vessels, in which they sent five hundred men. These had orders to take possession of the colony, and to send back the men who had so long endured all the dangers of the new settlement.

**The confusion that followed** may be imagined. These new arrivals were generally noblemen and gentlemen, unused to work and intent only on their own gain. Seeing this state of things, Captain Smith would willingly have surrendered all and returned to England; but it so happened that the vessel containing the letters of the king appointing the new president had been detained by a storm, and until it arrived he could not desert his post. So with his usual energy and patient firmness, notwithstanding the opposition he met with from those who hated him because of the very qualities which they should have admired, he set to work to plant new colonies, and provide as best he might against the evils with which this new arrival threatened him.

**Smith wounded.**—How he would have succeeded is not known, for one day returning to Jamestown to quell a mutiny which had occurred there, while he was asleep in his boat a bag of powder accidentally exploded, burning his thigh and a portion of his body in a pitiful manner; so great was the agony he endured that he leaped overboard, striving by the one element to subdue the other. With difficulty they rescued him and bore him to Jamestown, but as there was neither medicine nor doctor to cure his hurt, and as the ships were to return to England the next day, he determined to leave with them; and so this colony, in the midst of its disorders and mutinies, lost the only man who was able by his wisdom and discretion to bring order out of the confusion which now reigned.

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. What date heads this chapter?
  2. Relate the plot of the Dutchmen.
  3. Where did Smith next go to obtain other corn?
  4. How was he received?
  5. What did Smith say to Opechankanough?
  6. In what great peril did the English find themselves?
  7. How did Smith restore their courage?
  8. What did he say to the Indian chief?
  9. What deceitful answer did he receive, and how did he act?
  10. What was the effect of Opechankanough's capture?
  11. What did Smith tell them?
  12. What did the Indians do?
  13. How did they again attempt his life?
  14. Did the English succeed in their object, and how did the Indians regard Captain Smith?
  15. What became of the treacherous Dutchmen?
  16. What happened upon Smith's return to Jamestown?
  17. How did the policy of the London Company interfere with the prosperity of the colony?
  18. What was the result?
  19. How did Smith act?
  20. What happened to him?
  21. What was the effect of his departure upon the colony?
- 

## CHAPTER IX.

1609-1614.

ARRIVAL OF SIR THOMAS GATES—JAMESTOWN ABANDONED—THE MEETING WITH LORD DELAWARE—THE RETURN—CAPTURE OF POCAHONTAS, AND HER MARRIAGE AND DEATH.

**Murder of Colonists.**—As may be imagined by my readers, the colony at Jamestown went rapidly to ruin after the departure of Captain Smith. The savages, who had been kept in awe by him, as soon as they learned that he had left revolted, and proceeded to murder all the Eng-

lish they encountered ; and at last so intimidated the colonists that they seldom dared to go beyond the fortifications at Jamestown. On one occasion Powhatan tempted a party of thirty men, under John Ratcliffe, to come to him for provisions ; he slew all of them except one boy, who was saved by Pocahontas, and who lived, protected by her, for many years among the Indians.

**Famine and Sickness.**—Thus, through these disasters, were the unhappy colonists forced to acknowledge the great loss they had sustained in Captain Smith. Shut up within the small boundaries of the unhealthy city, afraid to go beyond either to cultivate their crops or to engage in those other employments which were conducive both to the health and wealth of the colony, subject to the terror of the savages without and to disorders and mismanagement within, it is no wonder that in less than six months after Captain Smith's departure, by sickness, starvation, and the tomahawk of the savage, the numbers of the colony were reduced from five hundred to sixty men, women, and children ; and these poor wretched creatures were preserved for the most part by feeding on herbs, roots, acorns, and berries. One of their number, in writing of this dreadful time, says, "So great was our famine, that a savage we slew and buried, the poorer sort took him up again and ate him ; and so did divers one another boiled and stewed with roots and herbs. One among the rest did kill his wife, powdered her, and had eaten part of her before it was known ; for which he was executed. Now whether she was better boiled or roasted I know not, but of such, a dish as a powdered wife I never heard."

**Rescue.**—And all these evils came from their own course of idleness and mismanagement, as the country was fully able to afford them most ample support, both from the production of the field, game of the forest, and

fish of the rivers. To add to their distress, they believed themselves abandoned by their friends in England, as no vessel had come from there for many months. At length, however, when they were reduced to the greatest extremities, Sir Thomas Gates and Sir George Somers arrived with a hundred and fifty men. You can well imagine how the poor, starving, dying men crawled down to the shore to give them welcome, and how they begged, with the tears streaming over their cheeks, to be taken away from this wretched place, where they had suffered so much misery. It was a sad welcome; and so greatly were the new-comers shocked at the condition of affairs, that they readily yielded to the entreaties of these unfortunate men, and determined to abandon Jamestown and return to England.

**Jamestown abandoned.**—So the next day, after burying the guns and ammunition at the gate of the fort, they all embarked. Some of the people were with difficulty prevented by Sir Thomas Gates from setting fire to the town. They fired a farewell volley, but not a tear was shed at leaving a place where they had endured so much. The boat started down the river, and the men crowded the decks to take a farewell look at the familiar places along its banks; and a feeling of regret must have filled even their bosoms, that this beautiful country, with its great resources, should be given up to the savage; nor did God, who overrules all things, intend that this should be, for before they had been many hours on the journey, they saw, coming up the river towards them, a long-boat with despatches from Lord Delaware, who was not far behind, with three vessels and plenty of provisions to last the whole colony a year. This changed the aspect of affairs, and Sir Thomas Gates, changing the course of his vessel, returned to Jamestown, reaching there the evening of the same day.

**Lord Delaware.**—The third day after these events,

Lord Delaware, Sir Thomas Gates, and Sir George Somers, with all of their men, arrived, and the poor, sick, famished colonists were drawn up to meet him; but when his lordship stepped on shore, before he would submit to their



ARRIVAL OF SIR THOMAS GATES AT JAMESTOWN.

greeting, he fell upon his knees and engaged in silent prayer. It was an impressive scene. Adjourning to the church, they listened to a sermon, in which the providence of God in all these matters was plainly shown to them. After this, Lord Delaware made a speech, which was eagerly listened to by the crowd. He traced the course of their disasters, and pointed out to them plainly how their own idleness and folly had been the cause of their ruin. He entreated them to avoid the errors of the past, or he, as their governor, would be forced to draw the sword of justice and cut off delinquents, however great

the trial might be to himself, as he had rather shed his blood in their defence than punish one of them.

**New Regulations.**—This speech was received with great applause, all seeing that in its stern kindness lay a hope for their future. Those who had been there longest knew the evils of misrule, and were willing to submit themselves to the authority of their new commander. Vigorous measures were adopted. He appointed regular hours for work and recreation. Religious services were held twice on Sunday and once in the week, at which all were required to attend. New treaties were made with the Indians, and Captain Argall was despatched with a vessel to the Bermudas to bring fresh provisions, but being forced back by a storm, Lord Delaware sent him up the Potomac River to trade with the Indians; here he found the young English boy whom Pocahontas had rescued, and through him succeeded in opening trade with the tribes of Indians on that river, who freighted his ship with all that he required.

**The next year** Lord Delaware went up the James River as far as the Falls, near which Richmond now stands. Assaulted by the Indians, four of his men were killed, and soon after this he was taken very sick and forced to return to England, leaving Captain George Percy to act as governor until the arrival of Sir Thomas Dale, who had been appointed governor by the London Company. The new governor reached Jamestown in May, and found the colony fast falling back to their former condition of poverty, having relapsed into their idle habits since Lord Delaware's departure. He at once set them to work again, punishing with great severity those who would not submit to him, for which he was much hated.

**In August of the next year** Sir Thomas Gates arrived, with men and provisions. He built a town upon

James River, and called it Henricopolis; it stood some miles below the present site of Richmond. Thus was the colony of Virginia firmly established, and with vigorous management was increasing in prosperity. Their old enemy Powhatan continued to give them trouble, capturing men and arms wherever he could find them. Since the return of Captain Smith to England, Pocahontas had never visited Jamestown, and seemed to have lost her interest in the colony. But in the winter of the year in which Henricopolis was built, an event occurred which again connects her with the history of Virginia.

**Captain Argall**, while trading with a tribe of Indians upon the Potomac River, heard that Pocahontas was in the neighborhood, with an Indian chief named Japazaws, an old friend of Captain Smith, and determined to take advantage of this circumstance to compel Powhatan to conclude a treaty of peace with the English. He sought out Japazaws, and told him of his desire to obtain possession of Pocahontas, promising that she should be treated with respect, as his only object was to stop the bloodshed which was continually going on between the English and the Powhatans. He also promised Japazaws a copper kettle if he would assist him in his undertaking.

**Capture of Pocahontas.**—Japazaws consented, and Pocahontas, who believed herself unknown to this party of Englishmen, listened to the wife of Japazaws as she told her how anxious she was to see an English ship, and how her husband would take her if Pocahontas would go with her. For some time she refused, and Japazaws' wife went to her husband and told him she could not persuade her, whereupon Japazaws threatened to beat her if she did not succeed in the undertaking. At last Pocahontas was persuaded to accompany them. They found a feast prepared for them in the cabin, during which Japazaws trod hard upon the foot of Captain Argall, to

remind him that he had done his part and the copper kettle must be forthcoming; so when the meal was over, Captain Argall induced Pocahontas to go into the gun-room while he held a conference with Japazaws; then sending for her, he told her she must go along with him, and she should never see Powhatan again until she had made a peace between the English and her tribe. Finding herself thus betrayed, the poor girl burst into bitter tears, and the treacherous old Indian and his wife howled melodiously to convince her that they too were the victims of a stratagem.

**Captain Argall** succeeded at length in reconciling Pocahontas to her situation, by convincing her that her captivity would accomplish what nothing else had ever done,—a peace between the English and Indians. So Japazaws and his wife, receiving their copper kettle and other toys, returned home, and Pocahontas willingly accompanied Captain Argall to Jamestown.

**Argall sent word to Powhatan** that he held his daughter as a hostage, and that he must ransom her with the prisoners he held and the guns and swords he had stolen. Great were the rage and grief of the old Indian chief when he heard this news; for he dearly loved his daughter, and he also loved the property of the English with which he must ransom her. Many were the promises he made and broke in his endeavor to cheat his enemies into surrendering her, but it was in vain. They knew him too well to believe in mere promises; so Pocahontas remained at Jamestown.

**Marriage of Pocahontas.**—Now what could not be brought about by foul means was accomplished by fair; for it happened that after Pocahontas had been two years at Jamestown, Master John Rolfe, an honest gentleman, fell in love with her, and she with him, so they determined in this natural way to unite the English and the Indians

The news of this intended marriage reaching Powhatan, he at once gave his consent, and sent his brother Opachisto, and two of his sons, to witness the marriage and conclude a permanent peace with the English.

**Powhatan's Second Daughter.**—A messenger afterwards went to Powhatan from Sir Thomas Dale, bearing with him two pieces of copper, five wooden combs, some beads and fish-hooks, and a pair of knives, all of which pleased him well. He was then told that Sir Thomas Dale, hearing of the beauty of his second daughter, desired that she might be sent to Jamestown, that she also might marry an Englishman, and so bind the two nations more closely together. The old chief answered with gravity, "I am very much obliged to my brother for his salute of love and peace, and for his pledges thereof, which I will surely keep, though they are not so ample as what he has formerly sent me. But as for my daughter, I have sold her in a few days past to a great Werowance, three days' journey from me, for three bushels of rawrenoke."

**The English** tried to persuade him to send back the rawrenoke and he should have far more than the price of it in beads, copper, and hatchets; but he answered that he loved his daughter better than his life, that though he had many children she was his favorite, and he could not live if she were taken from him; that he did not consider it a brotherly part to desire to take away both of his children at once. He further assured them that he would keep peace with the English without this further pledge. He ended his speech thus: "I am old, and would gladly end my days in peace, if you offer me injury, my country is large enough for me to go from you; this much I hope will satisfy my brother. Now, because you are weary and I am sleepy, we will end this."

Thus the old king refused a further alliance with the

English, making it plain that he had submitted to the marriage of Pocahontas as a matter of necessity.

**Pocahontas in England.**—The after-history of Pocahontas is short, but of touching interest. Her husband, who was truly devoted to her, carefully instructed her in Christianity, and after a while she openly renounced the idolatry of her country and, confessing the faith of Christ, was baptized in the old church at Jamestown, receiving the name of Rebecca. Two years after her marriage she, with her husband, went to England, where she was much admired and sought after at the court of King James, and was particularly spoken of for the admirable dignity of her deportment, well befitting a king's daughter. She learned to speak the English language quite well, and had one child, Thomas Rolfe, who, after he became a man, visited Virginia and his mother's relatives. From him are descended many of the most prominent families of Virginia.

**Her Interview with Captain Smith.**—It was while Pocahontas was at the court of King James that she again met Captain Smith, who gives us the only account we have of the interview. Upon seeing him she covered her face with her hands and did not speak a word. At length she said, "They did tell me always you were dead, and Powhatan did send to find out the truth, because your countrymen will lie much." She then added, "You call Powhatae 'Father,' being in his land and a stranger; and now, for the same reason, I will call you father." Smith remonstrated against this, telling her she was a king's daughter and must preserve her dignity; but she answered indignantly, "You showed no fear to come into my father's country, and to make him and all his people but me afraid, but you fear here in England for me to call you father. I tell you then I will, and you shall call me child, and so I will be for ever and ever your country-

woman." The life of this lovely young woman was a short one; she died at Gravesend, in England, four years after her marriage, leaving to history the most beautiful picture of refinement and natural majesty of character, springing up in a wilderness,—a natural growth upon uncultivated soil, a fair flower blooming alone among the sturdy oaks and pine-trees of her native forests.

Virginia cannot too much honor her memory, since to her more than once Virginia owed its existence. And so long as history records deeds dared and hardships endured by the first settlers of Jamestown, so long will Pocahontas be remembered as the guardian angel of the colony.

---

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. How were the colonists forced to acknowledge the loss they had sustained in Captain Smith?
2. To what condition was the colony reduced in six months?
3. Relate some incidents of the "starving time."
4. What happened when they were reduced to their last extremity?
5. How was Sir Thomas Gates met on his arrival?
6. Relate the abandonment of Jamestown.
7. What happened next?
8. Give an account of Lord Delaware's arrival.
9. How did he employ his first hours?
10. What did he tell the people, and how was his speech received?
11. What measures did the new governor adopt?
12. What happened the next year?
13. What new town was built, and where?
14. What news did Captain Argall hear while trading with the Indians?
15. Tell of his bargain with Japazaws.
16. How did he obtain possession of Pocahontas?
17. How did Powhatan receive the news of his daughter's capture?
18. How was the union between the English and Indians accomplished?
19. What is the subsequent history of Pocahontas?
20. How should Virginians regard her memory?

## CHAPTER X.

1614-1622.

DEATH OF POWHATAN—THE PRICE OF A WIFE—INDIAN MASSACRE—  
ENGLISH HISTORY AS CONNECTED WITH VIRGINIA—GOVERNOR  
YEARDLEY—HARVEY SENT TO ENGLAND—BERKELEY APPOINTED  
GOVERNOR.

**The Common Fund.**—It had been a matter of necessity in the early days of the colony that there should be no separation of property; all worked for the common fund. Although, as I have said, this was necessary, yet was it the cause of innumerable evils; no man felt that he was working for himself, but for everybody; and if one was disposed to be idle, it was easy enough to feign sickness, when he knew he would be supplied from the public fund. And this was the cause of the quarrels, the idleness, and the want of thrift which marked the history of the first colonists of Virginia.

**New Regulations.**—So after the marriage of Pocahontas had established a firm peace with the Indians, it was determined to remedy this evil. Accordingly, each one of the settlers was made the owner of three acres of ground which he called his plantation, upon which he was forced to subsist with his family, and to pay into the public treasury a tax of two and a half barrels of corn. This had the effect that was desired; each man felt that his labor was for himself and his family, and so we hear little more of improvidence.

**Death of Powhatan.**—The year after the death of Pocahontas, Powhatan died, and in him the English lost a friend, though not one upon whom much confidence could be placed, as he was only bound to them by ties of inter-

est. He was succeeded by Opechankanough, one of the most treacherous and blood-thirsty of a treacherous and blood-thirsty people. For some years he continued his professions of kindness and good-will to the English, but there is no reason to believe that he ever cherished other than the bitterest hatred towards them. Perhaps his enmity was due to a recollection of his humiliation, when Captain Smith led him by the hair of his head through the midst of his own people; but however this may be, one thing is certain, that with professions of love upon his tongue he was bent upon their destruction.

**Slavery introduced.**—One year after the death of Powhatan (1619) slavery was first introduced into Virginia. The owner of an English vessel purchased twenty Africans from a Dutch man-of-war, thinking he was doing an act of kindness, as the poor creatures seemed to be suffering great misery, crowded together in the hold of the slave-ship. The Virginians had before this depended for laborers upon criminals, who were released from the prisons of England that they might act as servants for the colonists. The condition of the negroes was pitiable in the extreme; and when they were brought to Jamestown I have no doubt the planters thought they were doing God service by taking the poor creatures, teaching them Christianity, and otherwise improving their condition. They scarcely imagined that they were planting an institution which was to bring so much trouble and controversy into the Old Dominion and half the continent of North America.

**Wives imported.**—The same year a vessel arrived from England bringing a very different kind of cargo from that of which we have been speaking,—namely, a number of young women of good character, to serve as wives for the colonists. In order to defray the expenses of the journey each man was obliged to purchase his

wife for one hundred and twenty pounds of tobacco. Afterwards the price of a wife was much higher.

**Indian Treachery.**—Three or four years passed away without any event of striking interest to the colony of Virginia. Population increased rapidly, and reports of the prosperity of the country reaching the Old World, numbers were induced to emigrate. But the growth of the young nation was destined to receive yet another check from Indian treachery. All this time the English and Indians had been living together as one nation, and so it might have continued but for the circumstances which I will now narrate. An Indian called Jack of the Feather, from his wearing a remarkable ornament of that kind on his head, treacherously murdered an Englishman named Morgan; and Morgan's sons, in their turn, killed him. This coming to the ears of Opechankanough, he determined to make it the excuse for the entire destruction of the colony. He succeeded in drawing into his devilish plot all the tribes of Indians in the country around, and a day was fixed upon for the terrible outrage.

**The Massacre.**—The plantations were now so scattered as to make the success of the plan comparatively easy, and the destruction of the colonists would undoubtedly have been complete but for the interposition of a converted Indian, who disclosed the plot to a planter in whose employ he was. Upon hearing the news, he immediately secured his own house, and rode off to Jamestown and informed the governor, who with all despatch took means to prevent the catastrophe. But he had not time to inform the more distant planters, who were the first sufferers. Soon the light from the burning dwellings showed that the savages were at their work. From home to home they went, murdering men, women, and children, even burning their houses and driving off the cattle; but such was their fear of the English that wherever resistance

was made they retreated in dismay. At length the whole country was aroused and the massacre came to an end,



MASSACRE OF 1622.

but not before three hundred and forty-seven men, women, and children had been killed.

**Captain Smith's Proposition.**—Great was the distress of the people of England when the news of this calamity reached them. Many mourned friends among the slain, and others lamented those who, though still alive, were within reach of the tomahawk and scalping-knife. While the excitement was at its height, Captain John Smith wrote a letter to the king, representing how worse than useless it was any longer to trust to the promises of friendship given by the savage tribes of Virginia; he said that they must either be driven out of the country or kept in subjection, and offered, if the king would give him a hundred and thirty-seven men, with ships and money, to undertake the accomplishment of one or the other of these objects. He had many objections to encounter, but succeeded in obtain-

ing what he wanted, and, after six years' absence, again set sail for Virginia, but suffered shipwreck and was forced to return. Smith never saw the country again for which he suffered so much.

**One cannot restrain a feeling of pity** when he reads the account of the Indian tribes being driven back step by step before the sword of their conquerors; but this feeling should not lead us into error. He who led the conquering host of Israel into the promised land, and drove out before them the Amorite, the Hittite, and the Perizzite, willed that Christopher Columbus should accomplish the purpose for which he was created, and nerved the arm of Captain John Smith and those who succeeded him, so that, like a second Samson, fighting under the leadership of the great Jehovah, they paused not until this fair country was wrested from the hands of the barbarous savage and given to those who worshipped the God of heaven.

**The Whites and the Indians.**—You have heard much said, and will hear still more, about the wrong which has been done to the red man by the white man; but what would have been said if the civilized nations of the world had turned their backs upon this great continent, with all of its wonderful resources, because it was occupied by a few savage tribes, who were incapable alike of appreciating their possessions or improving them? God for his own purposes makes one nation superior to another, and the history of the world shows that the inferior always gives place to the superior race; so that while the act which has driven the red man backward step by step is man's, yet the purpose was God's, of whom man is but the instrument.

**Hostilities unavoidable.**—Could the two peoples have dwelt together in peace, it would have been wrong for the English to have dispossessed the Indians; but these horrible massacres, occurring after long seasons of peace

and apparent friendship, were proof sufficient that no colony could prosper so long as the savage tribes were their neighbors. Had it been possible, it would have been much better for the English to have bought the lands from the Indians, and this was done to some extent; but as a general thing they were averse to parting with them, and did not recognize a bargain after it was made; so that, as tranquillity was absolutely necessary to the prosperity of the colony, the savage must be removed beyond the settlements that it might be secured.

**English History.**—In order that you may understand fully this period in the history of Virginia, it is necessary to give you an insight into the history of England at that time, since Virginia was a British province.

**Henry VII.** narrowly missed the glory of promoting the discovery of the Western World; for Christopher Columbus was actually on his way to England to solicit the help of this its sovereign, when his ship was driven back by a storm, and he received the aid of the King of Spain.

**When the King of England** found of what great importance this discovery was to be, he lost no time in fitting out vessels, and sending the Cabots to follow it up by others; and, as I have already told you, they made the discovery of the main continent of America. During the reign of Queen Elizabeth of England several ineffectual attempts were made to colonize America. Elizabeth was succeeded by James I., and he it was who granted a charter to the London Company to plant a colony in Virginia, and they, as you remember, sent out Captain Smith and his companions. Nearly twenty years had elapsed since this settlement, and although the London Company had spent a great deal of money, the colony, as we have seen, did not flourish under its control as it ought to have done.

**King James seeing this**, and foreseeing also the great wealth which must accrue to the English crown if these colonies were successfully established, determined to take the matter into his own hands; he therefore deprived the London Company of its charter. This was certainly an unjust act, as the word of a king should never be broken; and it seemed very much like robbery of the merchants and other rich men who constituted the London Company, just when they might reasonably have expected to reap the benefits of the great expenditures they had made. Accordingly they offered an indignant remonstrance against this act of the king; but it did no good; King James remained firm. Now although this was a great misfortune for the company, yet it was the best thing that ever happened to Virginia; for during the eighteen years of the existence of the London Company the colonists were looked upon in no other light than as servants of the company, which had no settled plan for its improvement. No wonder, then, that the Virginians lost sight of the wrong which was done to the London Company, and rejoiced in the change that was come to themselves.

**King James** did not live long enough to complete his plans for the government of Virginia, as his death occurred only one year after he had taken the control of the colony from the London Company. His son, Charles I., ascended the throne, and, adopting his father's ideas about the new country, declared it to belong to the crown of England, and directly under his own government. He appointed Sir George Yeardley governor, and empowered him to act in conjunction with a council of twelve men, according to such instructions as he himself should send them from time to time. Thus Virginia knew no law but the will of the king. Although this was more agreeable to them than the exactions of the London Company,

they soon learned that a change of masters did not always bring entire relief from oppression.

**Charles I.** of England, although beloved by many of his subjects, was by others regarded as a tyrant. He was very extravagant in his habits of life, and even the revenues of his office were not sufficient to meet his wishes; and in order to raise money he resorted to unjust taxation. By his order, the Governor and Council of Virginia imposed taxes upon the people, deprived them of their property, and in many other ways caused them great distress. The favorites of the king were sent over, with permission to take for their own large tracts of land, and these grants often encroached upon the property of those who had for years endured the privations of the life in a new country, and who thus saw the results of their labors quietly transferred to others.

**Tobacco** had long been the staple production of Virginia. It had been introduced into England by Sir Walter Raleigh, who, you remember, fitted out the vessels which brought over the first English colonists to Virginia. Some amusing stories are told about this nobleman, who was very clever, and possessed a great influence over his sovereign mistress, Queen Elizabeth. He had imbibed a great fondness for smoking tobacco, and as it was the fashion to follow the example of this court favorite in all that he did, the young noblemen of the court all adopted the habit. One day Sir Walter was smoking his pipe, when his servant, who had just engaged in his service, entered the room. Seeing his master sitting before him, with a volume of smoke curling above his head, the man thought that he was on fire, and the first thing the nobleman knew was a douse of cold water all over him.

Another day he was smoking in the presence of Queen Elizabeth and the ladies of her court, and made a

wager that he could weigh the smoke which ascended from his pipe and curled away until it was lost in the pure atmosphere of the room. Elizabeth bet him five broad pieces of gold that this could not be done. The nobleman, with cool confidence, weighed the pipe of tobacco and then proceeded to smoke it; after he had finished, he carefully weighed the pipe with the ashes, which of course was lighter than the tobacco had been; he then triumphantly declared that the difference between the two must be the weight of the smoke which had escaped. He had fairly gained his wager, and the queen laid the gold pieces upon his extended palm.

**Unjust Proclamation.**—Since that time the demand for tobacco had steadily increased, and the sale of it brought much wealth to the colony. What, then, were the surprise and indignation of the Virginians to find a proclamation issued by order of the king, that henceforth no tobacco should be sold except to agents appointed by himself. This brought down the price, deprived the colonists of a great source of wealth, and created much dissatisfaction and murmuring among them. They presented a petition to the king, stating a list of their grievances and praying relief; but of this he took not the least notice.

**The condition of affairs** grew worse instead of better. Tyrannical governors were appointed, who executed the king's commands with severity,—nay, more, who, seeing that the Virginians had no redress, oppressed them even beyond their authority, until at last, in a fit of indignation with one of these governors, Sir John Harvey, who had succeeded Governor Yeardley, the Virginians seized him and sent him a prisoner to England, accompanied by two of their number, who were deputed to tell Charles of the cruelty and rapacity with which this man discharged his trust.

**This was a high-handed act** in the Virginians, and

one which Charles regarded as rebellion against his authority. He having appointed the governor, did not choose that any one but himself should remove him, so he refused to hear the cause, and sent Harvey back to resume his position. Notwithstanding this, he seems to have recognized the fact that it would be dangerous to try the Virginians too far, as not very long after Harvey was removed, and Sir William Berkeley, a man every way acceptable to them, was appointed his successor.

---

### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. What years are included in this chapter?
2. What necessary customs prevailed in the early days of the colonies?
3. What change was now made, and why?
4. Who succeeded Powhatan?
5. Was he a friend to the English?
6. Relate the circumstances of the first introduction of slavery into Virginia.
7. What important cargo arrived the same year?
8. What was the progress of the colony for some years?
9. What was the first check its prosperity received?
10. Relate the story of "Jack of the Feather."
11. What use did Opechankanough make of this incident?
12. Give an account of the massacre of 1622.
13. What prevented its being a perfect success?
14. How was the news received in England?
15. What of Captain Smith?
16. Was it right for the English to take the country from the Indians?
17. How should we regard the whole affair?
18. Why did not the English buy the lands?
19. Why is it necessary to give some account of the history of England here?
20. What circumstances of interest to America happened during the reign of Henry VII.?
21. What in the reign of Elizabeth?
22. Of James I.?
23. Why did he take the charter from the London Company?
24. What was Charles I.'s course?
25. Tell the story of Sir Walter Raleigh and the servant.
26. How did he weigh the smoke?
27. How did the Virginians incur Charles's displeasure?

## CHAPTER XI.

1644.

OPECHANKANOUGH MAKES WAR AND IS TAKEN PRISONER—HIS DEATH—WAR IN ENGLAND—LORD BALTIMORE SETTLES MARYLAND—CHARLES I. BEHEADED—HOW VIRGINIA GOT THE TITLE "OLD DOMINION."

The Indians had preserved an unbroken peace with the Virginians for twenty-three years; but their hatred, although carefully concealed, was not abated. Laws had been made which obliged them to fix their habitation at some distance from the white men. Opechankanough still lived, though he numbered nearly a hundred years; and so decrepit had he become that he could no longer walk, but had to be carried on a litter before his warriors; his eyelids were paralyzed so that he could only see when they were raised by his attendants, and yet so fierce and implacable was his hatred of the whites that he determined to make one more effort to rescue the country from their grasp.

Gathering the chiefs of the different tribes together, he told them of his plan, and succeeded in inducing them to join him, by a promise that they should possess all the riches which had been accumulated in the country; and, with the help of the arms and ammunition which they should gain, would be able to keep possession forever of the land so justly their own. The plot was well laid—not a white man was to be spared—and would have been successful if the Indians had carried it out courageously; but the fear of the English was too rooted in them to permit this. They struck the first blow, and then fled.

Sir William Berkeley, the governor, collecting a body of men, pursued the fugitives, and overtaking the party

who were carrying Opechankanough upon his litter, captured him, and took him a prisoner to Jamestown. He was kindly treated, but remained unconquered by age or by misfortunes. The presence of this brave old man ex-



OPECHANKANOUGH LEADING HIS WARRIORS.

cited much curiosity in Jamestown, and many flocked to look upon the warrior who had given them so much trouble during so many years. One day hearing footsteps in his room, he caused his eyelids to be lifted, and seeing a crowd of persons before him, sent for the governor and said to him, "Had it been my fortune to take Sir William Berkeley prisoner, I would have disdained to make a show of him." He had probably forgotten the time when he captured Captain John Smith, and led him in triumph through all the Indian tribes upon the Chickahominy and neighboring rivers. He did not continue long in the possession of the English. One

of his guards was not ashamed to take advantage of his helplessness, and shot him in the back to gratify a private revenge. He languished for a while, and then died.

**Civil War in England.**—While these events were taking place in Virginia, England was distracted by a civil war. Charles I. had pursued in his own country the same course by which he had oppressed the colonies in America.

**The Parliament.**—The government of England consists of the king and the Parliament (the House of Lords and Bishops, and the House of Commons). The members of the House of Commons are, like the members of our Legislatures and Congress, elected by the people to represent their interests. These representatives go to Parliament to carry out the wishes of the people from whom they come, and thus having the good not only of the different portions of the country, but of the whole at heart, make laws suitable to the state of their affairs. Now, if it should so happen that one portion of the country should not send its representatives to Parliament, you can understand that, having no one to speak for it, that portion would be neglected in the consultations for the general good. So there was a law made that no part of the country should be taxed unless it was represented. The American colonies were not represented, so, according to the laws of England, they should not have been taxed.

**Quarrel of King and Parliament.**—There were two other laws which just now had an important bearing upon English affairs: 1st. The Parliament was always called together by the king, and could only meet by his orders. 2d. The king could make no laws and take no step without the consent of Parliament. I have told you that Charles was in the habit of raising money by taxing the people. This Parliament would not give its consent to, and so there arose a quarrel between the two heads of the government.

Charles dissolved the Parliament and refused to call another, and went on laying his taxes on the people. This continued for a number of years, and everything was thrown into the utmost confusion; the people groaned under the unjust taxation, and there was no Parliament to set things right.

**War ensues.**—Then commenced a war between the king and Parliament, which resulted in the dethronement and capture of the king, who was afterwards beheaded in front of his palace; and Parliament took the entire control of the affairs of government, and placed at their head Oliver Cromwell, with the title of *Protector*. Now, though the Virginians had suffered much from the unjust taxation of Charles, yet were they loyal to his cause, mourned his death, and gave no recognition to the Parliamentary government. They were also encouraged in this course by Sir William Berkeley, who was a stanch friend of royal authority; and Virginia became a refuge for the friends of King Charles who were obliged to flee from their own country.

**Parliament** then passed a law prohibiting trade with Virginia because she harbored the enemies of the Commonwealth, and instructions were issued for the "reducement of the inhabitants of Virginia to the Commonwealth." In March, 1652, the fleet under Captain Dennis arrived in the river opposite Jamestown and demanded the surrender of the place. In spite of his loyalty to the king, Sir William Berkeley had to submit to what he had no means of resisting. The capitulation was made on the 12th of March, and terms highly honorable were granted. Virginia was to have all the privileges of any other plantation in America. The oath of allegiance was to be administered to all the people, but the governor and Council were permitted to wait one year before taking it. Sir William Berkeley was permitted to send a messenger to the exiled king telling him of the surrender of the country. They were per-

mitted to use the Prayer-book for one year, upon condition that they did not pray for the king. A few months before this the Navigation Act had been passed, which forbade Virginia trading with any country except England. She was now permitted free trade, and was only to be taxed with the consent of *her own* Grand Assembly.

**Church Disputes.**—The Episcopalian is the established Church of England, that of Scotland is Presbyterian, and the history of these two countries was for many years a struggle between the two forms of religion; the English insisting that the Scotch Presbyterians should use the Prayer-book service, and they fighting for their right to worship God according to the old forms of their church, which they still preserve. While the English, on the one hand, were violently opposed to the simple forms of the Church of Scotland, on the other hand they hated the gorgeous forms of the Church of Rome. We will not enter into a discussion of these religious controversies; suffice it to say that the most bitter animosities, the most bloody wars, and the most unconquerable prejudices are those which have their root in religion; and so all of these different parties hated each other with what they called a “holy hatred,” and in England the sovereigns were always forced to take an oath to preserve the faith of the Church of England.

Now, as Virginia was colonized by the English, of course the Episcopal was the established church of the country; and in no part of the “Mother-Country,” as England was called, was the devotion to the forms of this church greater than in this her colony.

**King Charles**, although himself a Protestant, had a Catholic wife, and one of his favorites was Lord Baltimore, a firm adherent of the Church of Rome. He, finding that his religion interfered with his possession of property in England, obtained a grant of land from the

king, and came over to Virginia to settle. Here he had the same difficulties to encounter, as the Virginians were averse to the very name of Papist. He seems to have been a very estimable gentleman, and not at all anxious to provoke controversy; so leaving the inhabited parts of Virginia, he proceeded up Chesapeake Bay to its head, where he found a beautiful country unoccupied. Returning to England, he obtained Charles's permission to settle a Catholic colony upon land that of right belonged to Virginia. This State he called Maryland, after Henrietta Maria, the wife of King Charles; and the first city which was laid out was called Baltimore.

**The Virginians** did not give up their right to this territory without a struggle; and it was not until after years of controversy that Maryland was recognized as a separate State. Maryland, therefore, is the eldest daughter of Virginia, being the first State that was formed out of South Virginia.

After the execution of Charles I. an effort was made to force the Marylanders to observe the forms of the Protestant religion; and, for a short time, this was successful, and the Roman Catholics were excluded from the pale of religious freedom. But Oliver Cromwell, the Lord Protector of England, refused to sanction this, but ordered the commissioners "not to busy themselves about religion, but to settle the civil government;" and the Catholics were again restored to their rights.

**Virginia loyal to the King.**—I have told you that the Episcopal had been the established form of religion in Virginia as well as in England; but the contest between Charles I. and his Parliament worked a change in both countries. The Parliament of England was composed of members from Scotland, who were stanch Presbyterians, whilst those from England were, of course, Episcopalians. The members who adhered to King Charles were mostly

of his own faith, and when they were defeated, the Presbyterians, or Puritans as they were called, were in the majority; and when they took possession of the government of Virginia, although the use of the Prayer-book was permitted, the Scotch form of worship was also sanctioned.

I have thought it right to call your attention to these matters concerning religious forms, because the changes I have spoken of constitute the first steps towards that freedom of religion which has ever been the pride of America.

**Oliver Cromwell** ruled England for eleven years, and they were years of great prosperity and peace; not only for the mother-country, but for her colonies in America. At the time of his death the English people were so well satisfied with the form of government he had inaugurated that they had no wish ever again to have a king to rule over them; and had there been another man like Oliver Cromwell, who could have governed them wisely and well, they would probably have continued in the same state of mind. But his son, who succeeded him, was not capable of filling his place, which caused great dissatisfaction; and many began to turn their eyes to Charles, the son of their late king, and to think that perhaps they would be happier under his government. This ended in his being invited to occupy the throne, which invitation he gladly accepted; and at the period which we have now reached he governed the kingdom under the title of Charles the Second.

**The "Old Dominion."**—About this time Virginia received the title of "Old Dominion," which you have doubtless heard. I will tell you how. Although she was forced to submit to Oliver Cromwell, she never gave up her loyalty to the king, and sent a small vessel to Flanders, where Charles, the son of the king who had

been executed, was an exile from his country. This vessel bore an invitation from the colony in Virginia to Charles to come across the ocean and set up his throne upon her territory, and his loyal subjects there would fight to maintain him in that position. Charles had accepted the invitation, and was actually making preparations to become King of Virginia when a second invitation arrived for him, from his subjects in England, to come back to the throne of his fathers. This was the most important of the two, and so he went, and was proclaimed Charles II., of England. As soon as he was firmly established upon his throne, in gratitude to Virginia for her loyalty, he caused her to be proclaimed an independent member of his empire, which was to consist of England, Scotland, Ireland, and Virginia, and her coat of arms was added to those of the other three countries comprised in his dominions.

This was considered a great honor by Virginia, which has ever since retained the title of the "Old Dominion."

**Navigation Laws.**—It was during Charles's reign that the famous Navigation Laws were passed, which were so long a source of trouble and depression to the colony. They forbade that Virginia should trade with any nation but England, and by thus cutting them off from other markets, compelling them to take whatever prices the English might think proper to pay, besides preventing an exchange of commodities with other countries.

---

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. What date heads this chapter?
2. What was the condition of affairs between the English and Indians?
3. What of Opechankanough?
4. What plot did he conceive?
5. How did he carry it out?

6. What was the result?
  7. How did Opechankanough behave as a prisoner?
  8. Give circumstances of his death.
  9. What constituted the English government?
  10. In what way was the Parliament a governor of the king?
  11. How did a quarrel arise between the king and Parliament?
  12. What was the result?
  13. What part did Virginia take in these affairs?
  14. What constituted the church controversies?
  15. How was Maryland colonized?
  16. Did Virginia willingly give up the territory?
  17. What was the state of the churches after Charles's death?
  18. Why is it necessary that the student of the history of Virginia should understand these matters?
  19. What was the condition of England under Cromwell?
  20. How did Virginia acquire the title of "Old Dominion"?
  21. What oppressive laws were enacted during the reign of Charles II.?
- 

## CHAPTER XII.

1675.

### INDIAN TROUBLES—BACON'S REBELLION.

**Sir William Berkeley** had now been Governor of Virginia for some thirty-three years. He had fostered Virginia in her infancy, and her youth was developing with every promise of continued prosperity.

**The Indians** had not seriously interfered with the whites since the attempted massacre of 1644, and although the friendship of some of the tribes was still doubted, yet many of them were embracing the Christian faith, and showing a desire to have their children educated; and had the marriage of Pocahontas with an Englishman been followed by others of the same sort, it was believed by many that the intermingling of the races would in one or two generations have wiped out

all distinctions and differences. But this was not to be. The white man regarded his dark-skinned neighbor as an inferior, and the proud savage winced under his knowledge of this feeling. Underneath a friendly exterior he still cherished a vindictive hatred against those whom he never ceased to regard as usurpers of his property and rights.

**Hostilities with the Indians.**—At the period of which we now speak this enmity between the two races began to show itself. The settlers on the frontier sent to the governor, asking his protection against the tribes in their neighborhood, who were depredating upon them, and murdering those who ventured unarmed into their midst.

In imitation of the government of England, the affairs in Virginia were regulated by the governor and an Assembly composed of representatives from all the different counties. The governor could take no step without the consent of this, the House of Burgesses. At the next meeting of the Assembly he presented the petition of the settlers, and the grievances were considered sufficient to justify a declaration of war against the Indians. Five hundred men were enlisted and the forts garrisoned. One of these forts was on the Rappahannock where Fredericksburg now stands, another on the Mattaponi, another on the Pamunkey, and another at the falls of the Appomattox, near the present site of Petersburg. The little army was put under the command of Sir Henry Chicheley; but just as he was about to march against the Indians, to the general surprise and dissatisfaction of the colony, he was ordered by Sir William Berkeley to disband his forces.

**Nathaniel Bacon.**—The continuance of the Indian outrages exasperated the colonists greatly, and they determined that if their governor would not defend them they would defend themselves. This determination was

strengthened by the news of fresh outrages on the frontiers; and looking around for some leader qualified to direct their operations, they found just the man they wanted in Nathaniel Bacon, a young gentleman of great popularity, who had his residence on the James River, near where Richmond now stands. The Indians had killed his overseer and one of his servants; for this he had vowed vengeance. He was chosen general by the colonists, who had risen now to the number of near six hundred men, and he at once applied to Sir William Berkeley for his commission. The old governor was secretly outraged at this infringement of his authority, but was afraid to resist the demands of this formidable body of men with arms in their hands. In order to gain time, he returned an evasive reply to Bacon's demand for the commission, and sent some of his friends to persuade him to disband his forces. The governor also issued a proclamation, declaring all such as should not return to their homes within a certain time rebels and traitors. This looked so serious that those who had property, fearing confiscation, deserted Bacon and returned home. Stimulated rather than intimidated by the course of the governor, Bacon refused to yield, and with only fifty men pursued his course towards the frontier. Sir William Berkeley, collecting a troop of horse, pursued Bacon about forty miles and then returned home.

**Slaughter of Friendly Indians.**—Bacon, with his small body of men, proceeded up the river. Many days elapsed before they encountered the Indians; but at length they found a fort in which were intrenched a party of Mannakins, a tribe which had always been friendly to the English. Bacon, calling to them from across the river, asked for food, offering to pay them liberally. They put him off with promises for three days, when Bacon, with some of his nearly starving men, waded

across the river and again demanded food. Just then a shot was fired from the side of the river Bacon had just left, and one of his men was killed. The idea at once occurred to him that Governor Berkeley had concerted a plan with the Indians for the destruction of his little army, and that they had been kept there by false promises for three days until the governor should arrive. In a storm of indignation he ordered his men to advance, and, without taking time for thought, utterly demolished the fort and all that it contained ; killing a hundred and fifty



BACON BEFORE BERKELEY.

Indians, and himself only losing three men. This was a great stain upon the character of Bacon, who was otherwise remarkable for moderation and clemency ; but nothing can excuse such slaughter.

**Bacon arrested.**—He seems to have been shocked at his own act, as, after this, he disbanded his men and re-

turned home. No immediate steps were taken against him. He was elected to the House of Burgesses from the county of Henrico, and going down to take his place in the Assembly, was arrested and sent a prisoner to Jamestown, where he was forced to humble himself and ask pardon for his offences, and to give his word of honor that he would not again offend. He was permitted to take his place in the House, and was promised a commission to go against the Indians; but hearing through a friend that Sir William Berkeley was dealing falsely with him, and was plotting against his liberty and life, he escaped from Jamestown.

**March on Jamestown.**—So great was the indignation felt throughout the whole country at the humiliation to which he had been subjected, that in a few days four hundred men joined him; and with this force he marched towards Jamestown, determined to obtain by force the commission which had been promised him. Sir William Berkeley, in alarm, summoned the whole militia of the country to defend Jamestown; but could only collect one hundred men, all the rest having flocked to the standard of Bacon, and half, if not all, of those which were left being favorable to his cause. In four days Bacon marched into Jamestown, unresisted. Nothing could exceed the panic of the House of Burgesses at his appearance, while the citizens rejoiced.

**Drawing up his forces** on the green in front of the State-House, Bacon demanded an interview with the governor. The old man rushed out into the midst of the rebels, and baring his breast, cried out in an agitated voice four or five times without stopping, "Here! shoot me, 'fore God, fair mark, shoot!" Bacon, advancing courteously towards him, raised his hat as he said, "No, may it please your Honor, we will not hurt a hair of your head or any other man's. In order to save our lives from the

Indians we are come for the commission which you have so often promised, and now we will have it!" and Bacon commenced walking up and down excitedly before his men. Sir William withdrew to the State-House to consult with the Burgesses, and Bacon followed him, while a company of his men with their guns cocked advanced to the windows of the room where the Burgesses were assembled, exclaiming, "We will have it! we will have it!" One of the Burgesses, going to the window, waved his handkerchief, exclaiming, "You shall have it! you shall have it!" Bacon harangued the Assembly upon the subject of the Indian outrages, the enormous taxes, and other grievances, and demanded authority to redress at least some of them.

**The Burgesses** were nearly all favorable to Bacon, but only the governor could give the commission, and he was not easily brought to terms. Finding, however, that there was no escape, he at length signed the commission, and Bacon and his men departed in triumph.

**Bacon denounced as a Traitor.**—They had scarcely left Jamestown before Governor Berkeley declared Bacon and his followers rebels and traitors, and that his commission was forfeited. Berkeley then repaired to Gloucester County, where he believed he had many friends, and summoned all who were loyal to the king to rally around him and support him against these disturbers of the public peace. He met with a very different response from what he expected. The men of Gloucester told him that they regarded Bacon as their friend and brother, that he was doing their country a service by fighting the Indians, and they had no wish to bear arms against him; when he should really become a traitor, the governor might depend upon them. Berkeley gnashed his teeth with rage at this rebellion against his authority, but stood too much alone to force their compliance.

**Intelligence of these events** was conveyed to Bacon by Drummond and Lawrence, two of his friends, and he said bitterly 'twas a hard case that while he was hunting wolves which were destroying innocent lambs, that he should thus be hunted in the rear like a savage animal. He added, "I am like corn between two millstones, which will grind me to powder if I don't look to it." Retracing his steps, he marched towards Gloucester, intending to force Sir William into a different course of action; but the old governor, having no idea of risking a personal encounter, calling together the few friends who still clung to his fortunes, crossed the bay and took refuge in Accomac County, where he not only hoped to be out of reach of the "rebellion," but to find many friends to aid him in his time of need. In this latter hope he was disappointed.

**Berkeley in Accomac.**—By looking at the map of Virginia you will find that Chesapeake Bay runs up into its territory, leaving a long slip of land on its eastern side, which terminates in a peninsula at the southern extremity of which is Cape Charles. When Captain Smith first brought his colony to Virginia, this peninsula was inhabited by the Accomac Indians, and from them it was named Accomac County; and here it was that Governor Berkeley expected to find hosts of friends. Instead, he soon perceived that the country was filled with earnest sympathizers with Bacon, who looked so coldly upon him that he was forced to conclude that his presence was endured, not desired.

**When the Virginians** discovered that Sir William Berkeley had withdrawn himself from the State, as Accomac was regarded in some sort as independent of the government of Virginia, they determined to act as though he had abandoned the conduct of affairs. Bacon called together the most prominent men of the colony at Middle Plantation, where Williamsburg now stands, to consult as

to the best mode of conduct under the circumstances. The period for which the governor was elected was ten years, and the fact that this time had long passed was unnoticed so long as Berkeley was regarded as a just and wise ruler, with the good of Virginia at heart; but as this was no longer the case, they determined to regard his office as vacant, and proceed accordingly.

**The Popular Feeling.**—The meeting was characterized by that enthusiasm which such stirring times and critical situations always engender. Patriotic speeches were made, in which even the women seem to have had a voice. There was with Bacon one William Drummond; he may be regarded as one of the leaders of the rebellion. Sarah Drummond, his wife, was also an ardent supporter of the cause. She was present at this meeting of the patriots, and rose in the Assembly and said, "The child that is unborn will have cause to rejoice at this rising of the country." A paper, which all signed, was drawn up, in which they set forth the grievances which the country suffered, the burdensome taxes under which the people groaned, the Navigation Act which restricted their commerce, and, above all, the horrors of the Indian outrages to which they were constantly subjected. They spoke of the ardor with which Nathaniel Bacon and his followers had striven to redress these last-mentioned grievances, at the hands of the governor and others, and they bound themselves by an oath to join Bacon against the common enemy, and to defend him against the governor and his adherents; they even went further, and declared that inasmuch as Sir William Berkeley had informed the king that the people of Virginia were rebels and traitors, and had requested him to send troops to subdue them, they were resolved to resist those troops until the king could be rightly informed as to the true state of the case.

**The Indian Power broken.**—After this meeting, Bacon

departed with his gallant army to attack the Indians. He destroyed several of their towns, and then proceeded to a point where he expected to encounter their whole force. Bacon's Quarter Branch, a little stream on the outskirts of the city of Richmond, marks this point. He met the Indians at Bloody Run, another stream in the same neighborhood, and here routed them so completely that the Indian power in Virginia was forever broken.

---

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. When did these events take place?
2. What of Sir William Berkeley?
3. What relations existed between the Indians and Virginians?
4. How did the secret animosity of the savage now begin to show itself?
5. In what respects was the government of Virginia like that of England?
6. How did the governor act in this crisis, and how was his conduct regarded by the Virginians?
7. Whom did the Virginians choose as their leader, and what of him?
8. What did Bacon do, and how did the governor regard his demands?
9. How did the governor act?
10. What did Bacon do?
11. Relate the circumstances of the storming of the Indian fort.
12. Was Bacon excusable for the massacre?
13. What did he do next?
14. What happened after his election to the House of Burgesses?
15. Tell of his leaving Jamestown.
16. What was his next step?
17. How was he received by the governor and House of Burgesses?
18. Did they comply with his demands?
19. What course did the governor adopt when Bacon left Jamestown?
20. How did the people of Gloucester receive the governor?
21. How did Bacon receive the news of these events?
22. What course did he take?
23. Where is Accomac County?
24. What did the Virginians do when they found Berkeley had gone to Accomac?
25. What was the character of the meeting at Middle Plantation?
26. Repeat some of the sentiments of the people.
27. What was Bacon's course?

## CHAPTER XIII.

1675.—CONTINUED.

BACON'S REBELLION.—CONTINUED.

**Nathaniel Bacon** had scarcely accomplished this victory over the Indians, before he received intelligence which again turned his attention to the enemy in his rear. Giles Bland and William Carver, two of Bacon's followers, had seized a ship of four guns, which was commanded by one Captain Laramore. Putting a number of men on board of her, they proceeded down James River and into Chesapeake Bay, which they crossed, and anchored near Accomac County, in the neighborhood of Governor Berkeley's refuge. The object of this expedition was nominally to intercept supplies going to the governor, as Bacon had ordered all vessels to be seized which were found thus employed. Now, though this was their avowed object, it is not improbable that they intended, should the opportunity occur, to take possession of the person of the governor and, by carrying him to Jamestown, force him to make a peace which would secure Bacon from the annoyance of an enemy in his rear.

**Laramore's Treachery.**—Bland had already seized several vessels, and was cruising in the bay, near the shores of Accomac, when Captain Laramore secretly sent a message to the governor, that if he would send a sufficient force, under an officer of tried fidelity, that he would promise to put him in possession of the ship, whose capture could easily be followed by that of the entire squadron belonging to the rebels. This message threw

the governor into a state of great agitation. On the one hand, Laramore was known to be an unprincipled and profligate man, and it was not improbable that this very message might be part of a plan to decoy him into the hands of his enemy; on the other hand, his condition was desperate; few of the Virginians still clung to him in his fallen fortunes, and his personal safety was every day becoming more insecure. His spirits rose at the mere thought of the great advantages which would accrue to his cause were Laramore only true to his promises.

**The Ship taken.**—While he was in this state of indecision, Philip Ludwell, one of his most devoted followers, sought an interview with him, and begged that he might have the management of the affair. The governor consented, and Ludwell, securing two boats, embarked at midnight, with twenty-six of his friends. Laramore had promised them a certain signal, and they were encouraged by seeing it as they neared the fleet. Guided by it, they were soon alongside the ship, which they boarded before their presence was discovered. Bland and his men, roused from their slumbers by the unusual noises on deck, rushed from their cabins, only to find themselves prisoners in the hands of their foes; and in a few hours the whole navy fell a prey to the governor's forces.

**Berkeley returns.**—Nothing could exceed the delight of Sir William Berkeley at this success, which gave him an opportunity to retrieve his depressed fortunes. He at once embarked for Jamestown, which he knew could make no resistance, as Bacon was far away on his Indian expedition with the flower of his army. With the greatest exultation, the governor took possession of his former home, proclaimed Bacon a rebel, and commanded his followers to surrender him and disperse, if they would not themselves be punished as traitors. He then called a

meeting of the Council, filling it up with only such men as he knew to be devoted to his cause.

**His Success.**—Inspired by the example of Ludwell, many now flocked to Jamestown, anxious to show their zeal for the king; and in a few days Sir William Berkeley found himself at the head of an army of near a thousand men. This was the news that struck Bacon like an electric shock, as he was returning victorious from his Indian expedition. In a moment he saw the full danger of the situation. His followers, under the impression that since the defeat of the Indians there could be no immediate call for their services, had many of them dispersed to their homes; and Bacon found himself with an army of scarcely three hundred men, worn down with the fatigues of their Indian campaigns, in want of the bare necessities of life, in the face of an enemy of more than three times their number, and provided with everything necessary for their comfort and success.

**Bacon's Advance.**—It is no wonder that for a moment the heart of the young leader failed him; but it was only for a moment. Nathaniel Bacon was of too brave a spirit and too sanguine a temper for despondency to master him; indeed, the very difficulties he had to encounter but stimulated his ardor. He made a stirring speech, the eloquence of which so fired the enthusiasm of his men that they rallied around him, professing their determination to follow him without reinforcements, and never to seek repose until he had led them to a victory which would be the last blow to the hopes and machinations of their tyrants. Their enthusiasm rose when they commenced their march; want and fatigue were all forgotten, and they listened only to their indignation as they thought of Jamestown, the cradle of the infant colony in the New World, now in the hands of the man who was plotting against their freedom. The army, as it passed through

the country, presented the appearance of a triumphal procession. In the centre were placed their Indian captives, with the arms and plunder which had been taken in battle, covered over with flags and other gaudy dis-



BACON ADDRESSING HIS MEN.

plays of military pomp, by which they proclaimed those past achievements upon which they based their hope of coming victory. In their front, upon a spirited steed, rode a gallant figure, whose animated countenance and courageous bearing proclaimed him one well qualified to inspire an army to dare great deeds and win its way against any odds. This was Nathaniel Bacon, whose eloquence chased away despondency and revived the ardor of that army of which he was the idol.

**Jamestown besieged.**—The sun was just setting when

the little army arrived in sight of Jamestown. From a neighboring height it overlooked the little town, now bright with the rays of the departing sun, and again the indignant blood flushed the cheeks of the war-worn patriots as they saw before them evidences of the presence of their hated foe. General Bacon ordered a cannon to be fired and trumpets to be sounded in token of defiance; then dismounting, with his own hands he drew the lines for intrenchments. In this moment of inaction for the weary men nature was loudly asserting her claims, and again the spirit-stirring voice of their leader entreated them not to give her hearing until they could rest securely without fear of their foes. He himself set the example, and soon all signs of weariness disappeared; their cheery and brave voices rose in mirth and exultation, patriotic songs mingled with the plaintive evening hymn, as their intrenchments rose like magic beneath the full light of an October moon. Their labor ended, they fell, with the implements of their work still in hand, beneath that master which would no longer be resisted, and slept in security behind the breastworks.

At dawn their labors again commenced. Refreshed by slumber, they pressed forward eagerly to receive the commands of their general. A small party was despatched to skirmish near the enemy's lines, in order to ascertain their strength, while the rest of the army waited in the rear, as patiently as they could, the onset of the governor's troops.

**Sir William Berkeley** was by no means anxious to delay matters. A stern old soldier, in whom the courage of youth still lived despite his years, he believed that he was but performing his duty to his king in subduing this dangerous rebellion against lawful authority; he had nothing to gain by delay, as he did not expect reinforcements unless the king's troops should arrive in time from England, which he had no reason to anticipate. Hearing

that Bacon's army was receiving hourly accessions to its numbers, the governor at once mustered his troops, and placed them under the command of Ludwell and Beverley, his two staunchest adherents.

**They sallied forth ;** but soon the difference in the spirit of the two armies became apparent. Berkeley's army was made up of men picked from the idle and dissolute, most of them without a foot of ground they could call their own, inspired only by their hopes of gain, and the promises of plunder and confiscations which the governor had made to them before they would engage in his service. Bacon's men, on the other hand, fought for their firesides, and for that liberty of opinion and action, the love of which the free life in the wide forests of the New World seems to have inspired in the hearts of the colonists since the earliest settlement in Virginia.

**The governor's troops,** under their leaders Ludwell and Beverley, advanced towards the intrenchments with a considerable show of ardor, but the contest lasted only a few minutes ; for when these paid mercenaries received the steady and well-directed fire of Bacon's patriotic little army, they ignominiously turned and fled back to Jamestown, although their officers implored them, with tears in their eyes, to turn and stand their ground, and thus wipe off this stain upon their courage. But such arguments had no effect upon the panic-stricken fugitives ; on they fled, until they reached the protection of their batteries and the cannon from their ships.

**Pursuit checked.**—Bacon, surprised at this sudden result, suspected it was a trick to draw his men into an ambush, and checked the pursuit a short distance from his own lines. Had he not done so, the story of this contest might have been ended in a few words, as there is little doubt, so great was the panic, that if the little army had then pressed forward they might have entered Jamestown

almost without opposition, and Sir William Berkeley and all the other officers of the royal government falling into their hands, they might have dictated such a peace as would have placed the name of Nathaniel Bacon where that of George Washington stands one hundred years later, as the Father of Independence.

**Another disappointment** awaited Governor Berkeley. His army not only retreated disgracefully to Jamestown, but the troops threw down their arms, and declared their determination never to take them up again. In vain were threats of punishment, in vain were promises of reward; they were too much in the majority to fear the former, and the rewards were nothing in comparison to the danger to their miserable lives.

**Berkeley's Flight.**—Thus the governor found himself in hourly expectation of an assault from the enemy, with only twenty men upon whom he could rely. Even then the proud old man, goaded by his misfortunes into recklessness, would have remained to meet his fate, and if need be have died at his post rather than retreat from it; but the arguments of his friends convinced him that it would be better to await at a distance another smile from that fortune which had been so fickle to him. At midnight he and the few friends who remained to him silently and sadly embarked upon the boats which, under cover of the night, had drawn in to the shore for the purpose, taking with them everything of value, and the fleet dropped quietly down the river to await further results.

**The City deserted.**—The astonishment of Bacon and his men, as these events disclosed themselves on the following morning, may be better imagined than described. They could scarce believe the evidence of their senses as they looked upon the deserted city, and missed first the sentinel from his post and the mustering soldier from the streets; the drum and the trumpet were silent, and, miss-

ing all other signs of an army of occupation, they drew nearer to interpret for themselves the meaning of the strange stillness. They found the desolation complete; only two or three frightened inhabitants crept from the houses to give them welcome, and to tell to their wondering audience the events of the past few hours.

Not only was the city deserted, but the houses were stripped of everything of value they contained which could be removed, and what could not be carried off was wantonly thrown into the river. The enraged and disappointed patriots looked, with burning cheeks and flashing eyes, upon their desolated hearth-stones; while the fleet



BURNING OF JAMESTOWN.

lay within their sight, but far out of their reach, down the river, calmly awaiting their departure in order that Berkeley might return and occupy the city.

**Jamestown burned.**—But in this expectation he too was doomed to disappointment. “If Jamestown no longer affords a shelter for true Virginians it shall never be a harbor for her enemies,” said General Bacon, in burning words, to his soldiers. As usual, they caught the inspiration from his lips, and soon were seen hurrying with flaming torches from house to house. Many a hardy soldier stood upon his own hearth-stone with the firebrand in his hand and a tear in his eye, as the thought of wife and child and home joys rose before his mental vision; and then, as the flags of the fleet waving in the distance betrayed the presence of his enemy, and he thought of the oppressor of his country finding shelter under his roof, he cast down the torch and turned away, leaving it to do its work. Even the old church was not spared, where for nearly a hundred years prayers had ascended to God.

Sir William Berkeley viewed with astonishment and indignation this last desperate resort of a determined people, and vowed vengeance against the authors of the outrage.

---

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. What is the date of the events contained in this chapter?
2. What news met Bacon when returning from the conquest of the Indians?
3. What did Bland and Carver intend to do?
4. What was the cause of the failure of their scheme?
5. Tell of the capture of Bland and Carver.
6. How did the governor receive his success?
7. Relate circumstances connected with his return to Jamestown.
8. What was Bacon's condition when he heard the news?
9. What steps did he take?
10. How was his speech received?
11. Tell of the march to Jamestown.
12. Of their arrival at that place.
13. Of the preparations for battle.
14. Of the fight itself.
15. Of the retreat of the vanquished.

16. What happened the next day?
17. What condition of things did Bacon and his men find when they entered Jamestown?
18. What course did they take?

## CHAPTER XIV.

1676.

## THE END OF BACON'S REBELLION—LORD CULPEPER—THE TOBACCO REBELLION.

Sir William Berkeley, having now no place in which to organize his government, returned to Accomac; and Bacon dismissed the great body of his followers, after engaging them to join him upon the first news of disturbance to the public tranquillity; nor did he relax for one instant his efforts to keep alive their enthusiasm. He went from place to place, inspiring all by his zeal and example; he kept before the people the fact that although all seemed secure, yet was danger close at hand. Sir William Berkeley had transmitted to England an account of the rebellion, which he represented as wide-spread and dangerous, and entreated the king to send a sufficient force to restore order. The answer to this appeal was daily expected, and Bacon was determined to resist any army that should be sent against him. Though disbanded, every man was a soldier, prepared to defend with his life the cause which was the cause of all Virginians.

**Bacon dies.**—Yet it is always a great mistake to place the issue of an important undertaking upon the life of a single individual, and never was this more apparent than in the history of Bacon's rebellion; for though he had many brave officers, they were but the creatures of his will, in-

capable of acting alone. In the prosecution of his plans, Bacon visited all the different military posts, undergoing great fatigue, which, added to a cold he had contracted in the trenches at Jamestown, developed a fatal disease. But he did not permit his exertions to abate on account of his illness, though its effects were plainly visible. At length, however, he was obliged to yield to a will stronger than his own, and died at the residence of Doctor Pate, in Gloucester County, in the thirty-first year of his age.

**The death of Bacon** was the knell of the cause for which he sacrificed himself. He left none to fill his place. Two of his captains, Ingram and Walklate, attempted it, but under their leadership the army melted away, and as their fortunes declined those of Berkeley revived. Bacon's followers were hunted down like wild animals. Among the first captives was Thomas Hansford, one of Bacon's warmest friends. After undergoing the mere form of a trial, he was hurried away to the gibbet. His heroic spirit did not quail; he only implored passionately that he might be shot like a soldier, and not die on the gallows like a criminal; but he was told that he was not a soldier but a traitor. He met his fate bravely, calling upon all persons present to witness that he had simply done his duty in taking up arms against oppression, and that he gave up his life willingly for his country. He was the first Virginian who suffered death upon the gallows.

**This was but the beginning** of the revenge which Berkeley visited upon his victims. It is said that such was his rage against Bacon, that he made search for his body, that he might dishonor him dead who had defied him while living. But his grave was never found; his faithful friends religiously preserved his dust from outrage.

**Execution of Prisoners.**—As fast as the prisoners were brought in they were led to execution. One Captain Wilford made his appearance before the governor

with his wife by his side; she knelt at his feet, and entreated that if one must die that she might be executed, since she had encouraged her husband to join the rebellion; but the demon of revenge had too entirely hardened the heart of Sir William Berkeley for this touching appeal to reach it; he answered her with insults too gross to be repeated. Wilford had lost an eye in battle, and when allusion was made to it, he answered bitterly that it made no difference, for he had no doubt but that Governor Berkeley would give him a guide to the gallows. This proved too true, as the unhappy young man was led out from the presence of his wife to execution.



BERKELEY WELCOMING DRUMMOND.

**Berkeley's Malignity.**—When William Drummond was captured, the passionate old governor seemed to lose even the control of common decency in his vindictive tri-

umph. He bent low before him, with affected courtesy, as he said mockingly, "Mr. Drummond, you are very welcome. I am more glad to see you than any other man in Virginia; 'fore God! you shall hang in half an hour;" and he was hung as soon as the gallows could be prepared for him. Nor did Berkeley's fiendish malignity end here; for he pursued the wife of Drummond with his persecutions, confiscated her property, and turned herself and five children out to starve; nay, he would have brought her to a felon's death had not an order from the king come in time to save her.

**Giles Bland hung.**—How far Berkeley's passions would have carried him is not known, for commissioners arrived, appointed by the king to inquire into the condition of things, and many pardons were issued; but even these, in some instances, Berkeley dared to set aside; as in the case of Giles Bland, who, you remember, was captured on the coast of Accomac, and had ever since been in irons. His friends had sent over to the king, who granted him a special pardon, and, with this in his pocket, the governor sent him to the gallows. He met his fate with conscious innocence, and his name was afterwards one of the most distinguished in the annals of American freedom.

**Berkeley's thirst for blood** seemed to increase with what it fed on, and as one of the Burgesses said, "He would have hanged half the country if he had been let alone." Charles II., King of England, whose father, you remember, perished on the scaffold, and who himself had received, both during his exile and after his restoration, many gratifying proofs of the loyalty of his subjects in Virginia, was horror-stricken when the news of Berkeley's severity reached him. He said, "That old fool has hanged more men in that naked country than I have done here for the murder of my father."

**The King's Commissioners.**—To such an extent did he carry his revenge that he succeeded in disgusting even the House of Burgesses, which was made up of creatures too much like himself to be easily touched with compassion. They voted an address imploring him not to shed any more blood, as "none could tell how, where, or when it would terminate." When his active cruelty was over Sir William Berkeley had time to note the change of feeling towards him in this people over whom he had ruled so acceptably for nearly forty years, and whose love and veneration for him had turned to detestation and abhorrence. Charles II., in order to put an end to these scenes of blood, sent over commissioners to Virginia, and these issued a general invitation to all to come and state their grievances. At once the tribunal was crowded with sufferers from Berkeley's cruelty. The widows and orphans of those who had been executed came weeping and invoking justice upon the head of the tyrant; men whose lives had been spared only to see all of their property confiscated, begged for bread for their wives and children. The commissioners applied to the governor for the restoration of the property of these unfortunates, but he had either taken it for his own use or bestowed it upon his favorites, and refused to give it up.

**The end of Berkeley.**—That best of all books, the Bible, says, "Be sure your sin will find you out," and this was verified in the case of Sir William Berkeley, who, though he affected to despise the opinion of the people, could not help being mortified at the course the commissioners were taking by order of the king, and which showed such undisguised disapproval of his conduct and disregard for his wishes. At length he resolved to go to England and make a statement of his position to his Majesty, which he felt sure would reinstate him in the royal favor. But in this he was mistaken; if pos-

sible, he found fewer friends in England than he had left in America. The king positively refused to receive him at court, and the proud old man, unable to support the mortification of this blow, died a short time after his arrival in England.

**A New Governor.**—He was succeeded in the government of Virginia by Herbert Jeffries, who exerted himself wisely and well to restore peace to the country. He made a treaty with the Indians of the west, which unhappily they did not regard for any length of time. Sir Herbert Jeffries did not live long to see the fruits of his wise government; he was succeeded by Sir Henry Chicheley, who took active measures against the encroachments of the Indians, causing forts to be erected in various unprotected places, and in many other ways he ingratiated himself into the respect and affection of the people.

**Lord Culpeper.**—Very different was the course of Lord Culpeper, his successor. At first he was so popular that the people voluntarily increased his salary, and in other ways gratified his desire for wealth; but it very soon became evident that the love of gain was the ruling passion of his heart, and to this the advantage of the people over whom he ruled must give way. He received an immense grant of land from the king, in what is known as the Northern Neck of Virginia, which embraced the territory lying between the Rappahannock and Potomac Rivers, as far back as the head-waters of the north branch of the Potomac, which lie in the Alleghany Mountains. Here a stone was afterwards planted called the "Fairfax Stone," and a line was drawn from it to the head-waters of the Rappahannock, and all the territory from this line between these rivers, down to the Chesapeake Bay, was included in this magnificent present.

When Lord Culpeper succeeded in amassing great wealth

he had no idea of remaining in the forests of a new country, where he could have no enjoyment of it; so leaving Sir Henry Chicheley as his deputy, he returned to England, where he lived in great luxury at court, without spending many thoughts upon his deserted people.

**The Tobacco Rebellion.**—After his departure commenced what is known as the Tobacco Rebellion. I have told you before that from the time of its first settlement, tobacco was regarded as the most valuable production of Virginia soil. Nearly a hundred years had now passed away since Sir Walter Raleigh so cleverly weighed the smoke from his pipe of tobacco, and received the broad gold pieces from the hand of Queen Elizabeth of England, and ever since that time the demand for the fragrant weed had been on the increase. For a long time it was used as money by the colonists. Articles, instead of being valued at so many dollars, were sold for so many pounds of tobacco; and it would have looked very strangely to you, I suppose you will think, if you could have seen the wives and daughters of the old Virginia planters going into Jamestown on their shopping expeditions, with their wagon-load of tobacco behind them, and purchasing rich silks, linens, and laces at so much tobacco a yard. Nor was this all: the preachers, the lawyers, the doctors, were all paid for their services in tobacco.

**The thirst for Riches.**—Now this did very well at first, but at length a change became necessary. You are all old enough to have observed the importance which the world places upon the possession of money. Some forty years ago news was brought to this country of great discoveries of gold in California, and the same fever pervaded the land which almost destroyed Captain Smith's colony when they thought they had found gold in the forest-stream: the farmer left his plough and the mechanic his tools, the physician his patients and the

lawyer his courts, and all flocked to the gold-fields of California, and dug in the earth for the wealth which was more sure, if more slow, at home. The very spirit which actuated men in these more modern times led the Virginians, in the days of which we are now speaking, to devote the largest part of their time and land to raising this great source of wealth. At one time laws were made restricting the raising of tobacco and forcing the planters to plant corn and other crops necessary for their subsistence; and at last, to a great degree, the custom of using it as money was done away with, though the salaries of the ministers, and some other matters of the same nature, were still, and for many years after, paid in tobacco.

**Action of the Burgesses.**—Notwithstanding this change of custom in the use of tobacco, it was still a great source of wealth; the people were again permitted to plant as much of it as they pleased. Vessels came from England, and returned loaded with the precious weed. For many years after the settlement of Virginia, Jamestown was the only town in the State; and after it was burned, the necessity of some place where trade could be carried on was severely felt. In order to facilitate the building of towns, the House of Burgesses passed a law that certain places along the river-bank should be selected as the sites for future cities; and in order to force the people to congregate on these particular points, the law provided that all ships which came to Virginia for purposes of trade should receive their cargoes only at the designated places, instead of being loaded as had heretofore been done at the plantations upon the river,—the idea being that the planters would thus be compelled to build warehouses, and other conveniences, for storing their crops, and so the foundation of the desired cities would be laid.

**The Planters resist.**—Now this plan may have been wisely conceived and perhaps would have been very suc-

cessful if it could only have been carried out, but this was the difficulty; and the very effort to force compliance with an inconvenient and unpopular law was near producing another rebellion. The planters living upon the rivers thought it a hard case that, instead of loading the vessels at their own doors, they should have the great inconvenience and expense of transporting their crops to these imaginary cities. The vessels would often go up to the designated points, find no cargo ready for them, have to wait at great expense until it could be hauled from considerable distances, and, as it often happened, have to return home empty. Out of these inconveniences grew a disregard of the law. The planters would load, and the captains of vessels would receive their cargoes, where it was most convenient; the high-spirited Virginians refusing to submit to what they considered an innovation of their rights.

**The Law sustained.**—In Gloucester County some of the planters, who were forcibly prevented from disposing of their tobacco as they pleased, fell to work and destroyed their entire crop; and their example was followed by many others. This looked like open rebellion. The Assembly which had made the law, frightened at the storm which they had raised and found themselves unable to still, in their dilemma appealed to the king, who ordered Lord Culpeper back to quell the disturbance. His lordship obeyed, in no amiable mood at being thus forced to leave the luxuries of the English court to contend with rebels in the forests of Virginia. He determined to end his exile and the revolt as speedily as possible. His measures were sufficiently vigorous, as the jails were soon filled with prisoners, and a penalty of death was proclaimed against all “plant-cutters.” Six men were actually executed for this trifling misdemeanor. This summary mode of proceeding had the desired effect, and the planters submitted to what they could not cure. Thus ended the Tobacco Rebellion.

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. What year heads this chapter?
  2. What sad event occurred to put a stop to the war?
  3. How did Governor Berkeley behave?
  4. Who was the first Virginian who died on the gallows?
  5. Relate the circumstances.
  6. Did Berkeley's cruelty end here?
  7. Relate the story of Captain Wilford.
  8. Of William Drummond and his wife.
  9. Of Giles Bland.
  10. How did the Burgesses regard Berkeley's conduct?
  11. What did King Charles say about it?
  12. What did the Burgesses do?
  13. What steps did the king take to stop bloodshed?
  14. What condition of affairs did the commissioners find?
  15. What became of Berkeley?
  16. Who succeeded him, and what is related of his government?
  17. What of Sir Henry Chicheley?
  18. What of Lord Culpeper?
  19. Relate the circumstances which had made tobacco so largely cultivated in Virginia.
  20. What steps were taken to restrict its cultivation?
  21. Was it still valuable after it ceased to be used as money?
  22. How did the government try to force the building of towns?
  23. What effect did it have?
  24. Relate the circumstances of the Tobacco Rebellion.
  25. How was it quelled?
- 

## CHAPTER XV.

1684-1723.

TREATY WITH THE FIVE NATIONS—WILLIAM AND MARY COLLEGE ESTABLISHED—PARSON BLAIR AND GOVERNOR SPOTTSWOOD—THE KNIGHTS OF THE HORSESHOE.

After the Tobacco Rebellion affairs in Virginia resumed their old routine, and for the next twenty years there are few incidents in the history of the colony which deserve more than a casual glance. Lord Howard, of

Effingham, succeeded Lord Culpeper as Governor of Virginia, and it was during his term of office that hostilities with the Indians were recommenced. This was followed speedily by a treaty of peace with the tribes known as the Five Nations, who came from what is now the western part of the State of New York. These were the Mohawks, the Oneidas, the Onondagas, the Cayugas, and the Senecas; and if you will glance at the map of New York, you will find their names in those of the cities and lakes in that vicinity. These Indians were generally esteemed to be the most powerful and dangerous tribes in North America. In war they were terrific; and united the cunning and sagacity of the savage to the skill of civilized nations. Even the English, with all their knowledge of the art of war, found it difficult to deal with them, and the rumor of their advance was always received with horror and consternation.

A writer of the times, in describing them, says, "They advanced like foxes, attacked like lions, and retreated like birds." They had subdued all other Indian tribes and united them with themselves, and were extending their power even into Southern Virginia.

**Treaty of Peace with the Indians.**—The colonies of the different provinces became alarmed, and Governor Howard, of Virginia, and Governor Dungan, of New York, met at Albany the chiefs of these several tribes, and after complaining of their aggressions and acts of cruelty, threatened to retaliate unless they would make a firm treaty of peace with the whites, but if they would consent to the terms laid down in this treaty, the chain of friendship was to be brightened and made more strong and lasting than ever. An orator of the Mohawks replied in a speech full of the figures for which their language is remarkable. He promised that the peace between themselves and the English should be firmly kept; and then, after the manner of their people, they buried five axes, in token of the burial of

strife; after which all the Indian tribes united in singing the peace-song, with demonstrations of much joy, and thanked the Governor of New York for his mediation with the Governor of Virginia in their behalf.

**William and Mary.**—The following year there was another change in the government of England. Charles II. died, and was succeeded by his brother, James II.,—the first Roman Catholic sovereign who had sat upon the Eng-



TREATY OF THE FIVE NATIONS.

lish throne since Mary, the sister of Queen Elizabeth. For reasons which have no bearing upon the history of Virginia, the English expelled him from the throne after he had been king only two and a half years. He was succeeded by William, Prince of Orange, and his wife Mary, who took possession of the throne under the title of “William and Mary.”

**A Virginia College.**—The next year Francis Nicholson was appointed governor of Virginia. During his term of service, the King and Queen of England granted to Virginia a charter for the establishment of a college in that province. This was a very important advance in the interests of Virginia. It had heretofore been the custom to send the young men of the colony to England to be educated; but Governor Nicholson, upon his introduction into office, suggested the idea of a Virginia college, and put his own signature at the head of a subscription-paper for the purpose. In a very little time, with the assistance of some merchants in London, twenty-five hundred pounds were subscribed, and the Virginia Assembly sent "Parson Blair" to England to solicit a charter from the king. He was successful, and the foundation of the college was laid at Middle Plantation, where, you remember, Bacon and his men held their deliberations after the burning of Jamestown. The town was called Williamsburg, in honor of the king, and the newly-founded college was called William and Mary. The streets of the city were laid out so as to form the letters W and M,—a handsome compliment to the joint sovereigns of England, but a most inconvenient device for a city.

**Mr. Blair** was appointed the first president of the college, which became the pride of Virginia. It is the oldest college in the United States, except Harvard, in Massachusetts. The seat of government was removed to Williamsburg, which thus became the centre, not only of learning, but of the wealth and fashion of Virginia. In 1706 the college was burned to the ground, and many years elapsed before it was rebuilt.

**Governor Spottswood.**—Years now rolled quietly away, marking only increased prosperity to Virginia. William and Mary passed from an earthly throne to give an account of their stewardship in the courts of heaven,

and Anne, the sister of Mary, succeeded her. It was during her reign that a gentleman was appointed governor whose name Virginia will always cherish with gratitude. Alexander Spottswood, a Scotchman, who had distinguished himself in the British army, left the hardships and honors of the battle-field to fill the office of chief executive in Virginia. He did more for the improvement of the province than any of his predecessors.

**His Plans.**—Contemplating the wide-spread territory before him, and his imagination fired at the thought of broad lands, mountains, and rivers which were as yet unexplored, the desire filled him to signalize his term of service by extending his knowledge of this great country. Accordingly he formed a scheme for the furtherance of his design, and presented himself before the General Assembly of Virginia, and desired its assistance in his plan, which was to head an expedition across the “Appalachian chain of mountains,” as the Alleghanies were then called. After some discussion, he succeeded in obtaining its consent, and a promise was given to furnish him with ample means to carry out his design.

**His Expedition.**—As soon as it became known that Governor Spottswood was organizing an expedition for the purpose of new discoveries, he had no difficulty in filling up the ranks of his little army; and soon a gallant array of cavaliers presented themselves, eager to share in an enterprise which promised so much variety, honor, and increase of wealth, with enough sprinkling of danger to make it all the more attractive to the bold Virginians. The hardiest horses in the country were pressed into service, and soon the streets of Williamsburg presented a busy scene as the gay cavalcade, with the governor at its head, started forth with their faces turned towards the distant mountains.

**The Start.**—In our day, when genius and energy have

cut their way through these very mountains, have made the sea their servant, and have even linked continents together with the aid of the telegraphic wire, it is difficult to realize what a formidable undertaking it was to attempt the passage of the mountains, which, for the hundred and more years which had elapsed since the first settlement of Virginia, had reared their lofty forms as a barrier to the progress of the white man. It seemed like an attempt to conquer nature itself; but the romance and peril of the attempt acted as a stimulus to the governor and his followers, who fondly imagined that their names would go down to posterity side by side with that of the great Alexander. They crossed the York River, and started merrily upon their journey; stopping at night with friends upon the route, and gathering recruits for their little army as they went along.

**Upon the Rappahannock**, not far from where Fredericksburg now stands, they encamped for some days, and regaled themselves with the abundant provisions which had been provided by the loving housewives at home, and brought with the party upon pack-horses. We can well imagine the merry encampment, where great fires were kindled, and venison and bear's meat roasted for the luxurious repast, and toasts drank, and the laugh, the song, and the jest awoke new echoes in those forest haunts.

**Passage of the Mountains.**—So leisurely did they proceed that more than a month elapsed before they commenced the toilsome ascent of the mountains. Think of them as they wound along through the trackless country which the foot of the white man was treading for the first time; now over rocks and chasms, now pausing to catch through the openings in the trees a glimpse of the country beyond, and now mingling their voices with the sound of the trumpet that rang for the first time through these old mountains. When at length they gained the

summit, their ecstasy was too deep for words; they fairly drank into their souls the beauty of the panorama which lay spread before them. The glorious Valley of Virginia, smiling in the freshness of early summer, met their gaze;



KNIGHTS OF THE HORSESHOE DRINKING THE KING'S HEALTH.

the streams, as if wearied with their dash down the mountain-sides, wound quietly and calmly along like silver threads until they were lost in the misty distance.

**The Expedition returns.**—Upon the top of the mountain they drank the health of his Majesty, and called it Mount George, in honor of him. The next peak they named Mount Alexander, after the governor. Descending the mountain, they crossed the Shenandoah River,

which they playfully named Euphrates. On its banks they rested for some hours, or beguiled the time by hunting, fishing, and feasting. Some carved their names on the trees; some, more ambitious, climbed the steep sides of the rocks and tried to carve imperishable memorials upon their granite surfaces; and the governor wrote upon a sheet of paper, "I take possession of this country in the name of his Majesty King George of England," and signing his name upon it, enclosed it in a bottle and buried it on the banks of the river. I never heard that this interesting record of the journey had been found, and in all probability it still remains buried to this day. Turning their faces homeward, they reached Williamsburg in safety, after an absence of about six weeks, and dispersing to their different habitations, recounted to eager listeners their adventures in this the first expedition across the Blue Ridge Mountains of Virginia.

**Knights of the Horseshoe.**—The Virginians had been accustomed to ride their horses unshod, the soft sandy soil of the lowlands requiring no protection for the horse's hoofs; but for the trip to the mountains they had provided a quantity of horseshoes. In allusion to this circumstance and as a memorial of the expedition, the governor, upon his return, gave to each of his companions a miniature golden horseshoe, to be worn upon the breast. King George, when he heard of the expedition, bestowed upon Spottswood the honors of knighthood, and also presented him with a golden horseshoe set with jewels, which is said to be still in possession of one of his descendants. All who took part in the expedition were recognized by the title of "Knights of the Horseshoe."

**Governor Spottswood's administration** was marked by the steady prosperity of Virginia; he neglected nothing which could minister to this end. He attempted what was neglected by most of the other governors,—namely, the im-

provement of the Indians. He sent good men among them to teach them the arts of civilization, and even had some of the Indian boys admitted to William and Mary College, to be instructed in whatever would conduce to their advancement.

**Blackbeard the Pirate.**—During his administration the shores of America were infested with pirates, who captured vessels going to and from the country, and perpetrated acts of the most terrible cruelty. One of the most distinguished of these pirates was known as Blackbeard, and his ferocity made him the terror of the seas. The stories that are told of this fiend in human form almost exceed belief. He is said, on one occasion, to have dressed up his crew to personate devils, and he himself represented the chief fiend.

**His Defeat and Death.**—Many unavailing efforts were made to capture Blackbeard; Governor Spottswood offered large rewards for his person living or dead. Hearing definitely of his whereabouts, Lieutenant Maynard, commander of a small English ship-of-war, started in search of him. He found him lying in wait at one of the inlets to Pimlico Sound, and at once bore down upon him without giving him time to escape. Blackbeard discovering the ship-of-war close to him, made preparations for battle, placed one of his men at the powder-magazine with orders to blow it up if there was danger of capture, and drank brandy until he was ready for any reckless deed whatsoever; and so the fight began. A terrible one it was, and the pirate was defeated; the wretch, covered with wounds, waited until the English boarded his vessel, and then gave orders to blow up the magazine, intending that his captors should share his destruction. But he was disappointed; the courage of his man failed, and he threw down the fatal match. Blackbeard sprang up, his face distorted with anger, cocked his pistol and aimed it at the delinquent,

but before he could fire it off he fell back on the deck and expired.

**Spottsylvania.**—Although Governor Spottswood was so much beloved by the people of Virginia, yet he fell under the displeasure of the British Ministry, who did all they could to thwart his plans for the good of the colony, and at length removed him from office. He retired to his country-seat in the county, which was called in his honor “Spottsylvania,” and there dispensed a generous hospitality, of which some pleasant stories are told.

**The Deer's Assault.**—An old friend of his, Colonel William Byrd, who went to visit him, describes the town of Germanna, which he says consists “of Colonel Spottswood's enchanted castle on one side of the street and a baker's dozen of ruinous tenements on the other side; there was also a chapel about a bow's-shot from the governor's house, at the end of an avenue of cherry-trees.” When he arrived he found only Mrs. Spottswood at home. She received him with a gracious smile, and took him into the dining-room, which among other handsome furniture contained several costly mirrors, and where also the hospitable tea-table was laid to which she invited her visitor. Mrs. Spottswood had amused herself in her solitude by taming a variety of animals, among them a brace of deer, which ran familiarly about the house. One of them coming to the door to stare at the visitor, caught sight of his own figure in the mirror opposite, and mistaking it for one of his companions, sprang over the tea-table, shattered the glass into a thousand pieces, then fell back upon the table, making a terrible clatter among the china and silver, and frightening the guest considerably; but Colonel Byrd adds, after telling the story, that it was worth all the lost china to see the moderation and good-humor with which the hostess bore this disaster.

In the evening the old governor came in, and they spent

the hours until bedtime in recounting old stories, of which probably the expedition across the mountains formed part. The next morning they visited his iron founderies, of which he was very proud.

In this peaceful retreat Governor Spottswood closed his life in the year 1739.

---

### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. What is the date of these events?
2. Who was Governor of Virginia after Lord Culpeper?
3. What important treaty did he assist in making?
4. Who were the Five Nations, and where did they live?
5. How do the writers of the times describe them?
6. Tell of the treaty.
7. What important changes took place in the English government?
8. Who did King William appoint Governor of Virginia?
9. What important privilege did he solicit for Virginia?
10. What steps did he take to accomplish his purpose?
11. With what success?
12. Tell of the foundation and name of the new college.
13. What happened to it in 1706?
14. Who was appointed governor by Queen Anne?
15. What of him?
16. What scheme did he devise?
17. What steps did he take for accomplishing his purpose?
18. How does the attempt look to us now, and why?
19. Tell of the journey.
20. What names did they give the mountain peaks?
21. Tell the rest of the story.
22. What were the adventurers called, and why?
23. What other improvements did Governor Spottswood undertake?
24. What infested the shores of Virginia?
25. Who was Blackbeard?
26. What steps did the governor take for his apprehension?
27. Tell of Maynard's expedition.
28. Tell of Blackbeard's death.
29. Why was Governor Spottswood removed from office?
30. Tell of Colonel Byrd's visit to Mrs. Spottswood.
31. Where did the governor die, and when?

## CHAPTER XVI.

1723.—CONTINUED.

DIFFICULTIES BETWEEN THE COLONIES—COLONEL WILLIAM BYRD  
LAYS THE FOUNDATION OF RICHMOND AND OF PETERSBURG—  
SETTLEMENTS IN THE VALLEY OF VIRGINIA—EARLY CUSTOMS.

**Hugh Drysdale** was appointed governor in the place of Governor Spottswood. His administration was a short one, and devoid of interest. Colonel William Gooch, one of the best governors of whom Virginia can boast, succeeded him.

**About this time** the colonies in North America began to draw more closely together; heretofore their governments had been almost as distinct as those of England, France, and Germany, but now they began to feel their dependence upon each other. New York, Pennsylvania, Virginia, North and South Carolina, and Georgia were like a band of young sisters, bound together by ties of a common interest, and united for purposes of self-defence, though their governments were still distinct.

**A Colony Quarrel.**—During the administration of Governor Gooch a quarrel arose between the neighboring colonies of Virginia and North Carolina about their boundaries, each claiming a tract of land lying upon their borders; and for a long time persons living upon this disputed territory did not know which colony to claim as their home. This led to many difficulties, as some would pay taxes to North Carolina which Virginia claimed, and then just the other way. At last it was determined to settle the matter before the disagreement became too serious to be cured; so the governors of the two colonies each appointed commissioners to meet and travel through the country with engineers, and run the line over again straight, so there could be no further mistake.

**Colonel Byrd.**—At the head of the Virginia Commission was Colonel William Byrd, a gentleman of great distinction and originality. He has left a narrative of his adventures, which is full of interest, in which he tells many amusing stories, besides giving us a picture of the settlements in that part of the country in these early days. Many of these are valuable contributions to the history of the State.

**Richmond and Petersburg founded.**—The most lasting memorial, however, which he has left is the city of Richmond, of which he laid the foundation; also of Petersburg, about the same time. It was expected that these two cities, one at the head of navigation on the James River, and the other on the Appomattox, would become great centres for the trade of Virginia, as the two rivers upon which they were situated constituted convenient outlets into Chesapeake Bay.

**Settlements now began to be made** in the beautiful Valley of Virginia. From Pennsylvania came a number of Scotch-Irish settlers, who, in consequence of religious persecution in their own country, emigrated from the north of Ireland to America, and had at first fixed their homes in that colony, but finding the fertile fields of the Valley open to their occupation, they moved onward and took possession. William Penn had so wisely conciliated the Indians in Pennsylvania by buying their lands and in other ways, that they regarded him as a benefactor, and this movement into the Valley was not interrupted by them. The new settlers also proposed buying the lands as William Penn had done; this they did to some extent, but a serious difficulty arose. The Valley was looked upon as a common hunting-ground, and no tribe could be found who claimed it as their particular property. A number of families, headed by Joist Hite, obtained a grant for forty thousand acres of land, which they lo-

cated in the lower part of the Valley of the Shenandoah; and having settled on it, gradually extended their settlements up the Valley to a point near the spot where the town of Woodstock now stands. Two small houses were erected on what was known as Shawnee Spring, the present site of the city of Winchester, which was afterwards the frontier outpost for the settlers in that part of the Valley.

**Burden's Grant**—The reports brought back by Governor Spottswood and his party about the Valley reaching the ears of two newly-arrived emigrants to Virginia, named John Mackey and John Lewis, they visited it with a pedler named Salling, and so delighted were they that the three determined to fix their abode there. John Lewis obtained a grant of a hundred thousand acres of land, which he located in this Valley, and was visited in his mountain home by an agent of Lord Fairfax named Burden, who spent some months in hunting through the forests. Returning to Williamsburg, Burden presented Governor Gooch with a young buffalo calf which he had captured, and in return the governor gave him a grant for five hundred thousand acres of land in the Valley, upon condition that within ten years he would settle upon it one hundred families; and if this was accomplished, he should have one thousand acres in the neighborhood of every house. Burden returned to England for emigrants, and the next year, 1737, brought over upwards of one hundred families to settle upon the granted lands. The first party were soon joined by others, mostly of their connections and acquaintances in the mother country. These again drew others after them; and they all increased and multiplied, until before the first generation had passed away the land was filled with them, and then they began to send forth colonies to new lands, southward and westward, until now their descendants are scattered over the whole country.

**Scotch Settlers.**—His grant covered a greater part of

Rockbridge County, and was settled by the McDowells, Alexanders, Paxtons, and many other names of which Virginia knows the worth. They were mostly Scotch Presbyterians, and were distinguished for their simplicity and integrity. They devoted themselves to agricultural pursuits, built churches, and in the enjoyment of religious freedom and home duties they passed their simple lives. Thus was the whole Valley of Virginia settled.

**Nearly twenty years passed away** before the settlers had any difficulty with the Indians, though the Delawares and Catawbias were engaged in a war at the time the Valley was first known, and this continued many years afterwards. Many signs are now found throughout the Valley of the furious contests between these two powerful tribes. It was one of the customs of the Indians to bury their dead, not in single graves, but in mounds, and some of these mounds have been found which are eighteen or twenty feet high and fifty or sixty feet wide.

**Customs of the People.**—It was fortunate for the new settlers in Virginia that their savage neighbors were so deeply engaged in their own affairs that the colonies had time to grow without interruption, and were in some degree able to defend themselves when defence became necessary. Some of the customs of these early inhabitants of the Valley of Virginia were curious; most of them were derived from the Germans. I will tell you about their marriage ceremony.

**Marriage Festivities.**—A wedding, then as now, excited the attention of the whole neighborhood. It was celebrated at the house of the bride, and was almost the only frolic which their lives of hard labor allowed. On the morning of the wedding-day, the groom and his four attendants met at his residence and proceeded towards that of the bride, which they were obliged to reach by noon, that being the hour at which the ceremony was generally per-

formed. Then the fun began, and all the neighbors joined in it. The groom and his party found the narrow roads obstructed by fallen trees and grape-vines tied across the way, and these they must stop and remove. Next they were ambuscaded, and a discharge of guns enveloped them in smoke. But in spite of these interruptions, the groom could not be behindhand, and the hour of noon would generally find him at the appointed place. The bridal-party proper consisted of the bride and groom; four groomsmen, dressed in moccasins, leather breeches, leggings, and linsey hunting-shirts, all home-made; the ladies were dressed in linsey petticoats, with linsey or linen gowns over them, coarse shoes, coarse stockings, cotton handkerchiefs, and buckskin gloves. If the ceremony took place at the church, the whole party—mounted on horses caparisoned with old saddles, old bridles, and a blanket or bag thrown over them—would have to encounter the same obstructions in their pathway to matrimony, placed there by their fun-loving neighbors.

**Running for the Bottle.**—After the ceremony was performed they would return home, and the way thither was beguiled by various amusements, one of which I will tell you about. It was called “running for the bottle.” A big bottle, which was named “Black Bettie,” was filled with whiskey and placed at some designated point (generally at the house of the bride) on the road; then two young men, mounted on their horses, would run a race for this prize, taking an even start, which was announced by an Indian whoop. Off they would go, their horses at full speed, dashing over rocks, stumps, and any other impediments. The victor announced his success by another yell, and then returned to the company, holding the bottle high above his head. It was presented first to the bride, who must at least taste it, then to the groom, and then to each of the party, no one being allowed to refuse to take a drink.

**The Wedding Dinner.**—Immediately after arriving at the house, dinner, for which literally the fatted calf had been killed, was announced, and a most substantial meal it was, consisting of beef, pork, fowls, bear's meat, venison,



RUNNING FOR THE BOTTLE.

bread, butter, honey, maple-sugar, wine (if it could be had), potatoes, cabbage, and other vegetables. These were set out on old pewter dishes and plates, wooden bowls, and trenchers; if knives were scarce, the guests made use of the scalping-knife which each man wore in the belt of his hunting-shirt. During the meal the greatest hilarity prevailed. The younger part of the company attempted to steal the bride's shoe; the four groomsmen were obliged to guard her, and he who failed to do so was obliged to pay a forfeit for the redemption of the shoe, and the bride was not permitted to dance until it was restored. Next came the ceremony of throwing the stocking. A stocking was rolled in a ball and given to each of the young ladies in turn, who, standing with her back to the bride, threw

it over her shoulder, and the first who succeeded in striking the bride's head was the next to be married. The young men then went through the same ceremony, only throwing it at the groom's head. The dancing, which was kept up often through the whole night, consisted of jigs, reels, and square dances; and if any of the company, through weariness, attempted to conceal himself for the purpose of sleeping, the luckless wight was dragged out upon the floor, and the fiddler ordered to play "Hang out till morning."

These festivities were sometimes kept up for a week or more, until the revellers, perfectly exhausted, had to claim several days of rest before they were fit for their employments.

---

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. What is the date of these events?
2. Who succeeded Governor Spottswood?
3. What relations existed between Virginia and her sister colonies?
4. What dispute arose between Virginia and North Carolina?
5. Who was then governor of Virginia?
6. How was the dispute settled?
7. Who was Colonel Byrd?
8. What two cities did he found?
9. Give an account of the settlements in the lower Valley.
10. What settlements were made by Mackey, Lewis, and Salling?
11. Tell of Burden's visit to Lewis.
12. What present did he make to the governor, and how was he rewarded?
13. To what trick did he resort, and with what success?
14. What portion of the Valley did his grant cover?
15. What was the character of the settlers upon it?
16. What of the Indian tribes in the Valley of Virginia?
17. Did they molest the early settlers?
18. Tell the manner in which a marriage was conducted among the early settlers.
19. What of the feast?

## CHAPTER XVII.

1732-1755.

BIRTH OF GEORGE WASHINGTON—INCIDENTS OF HIS EARLY LIFE—  
UNSUCCESSFUL MISSION TO THE FRENCH—WAR WITH THE FRENCH  
BEGUN.

**Birth of Washington.**—On the 22d day of February, 1732, in the county of Westmoreland, was born George Washington, who, from the place he holds in the history of the United States, but especially in that of Virginia,



BIRTHPLACE OF GEORGE WASHINGTON.

merits more than ordinary mention in these pages. He was the son of Augustine Washington and Mary Ball, both by birth Virginians. When he was about five years old, his father removed to Stafford County; and upon the

banks of the Rappahannock, nearly opposite Fredericksburg, the childhood of George Washington was passed.

**He received only a plain English education**, his first schoolmaster being an old sexton named Hobby, who lived to see the renown of his pupil, and used to boast that the foundation of George Washington's greatness was laid between his knees. But it is far more likely that the wise counsels and good example of his father had more to do with the formation of the character of the future patriot than the A B C teachings of old Hobby. "Truth, George," said his good father to him one day, "is the loveliest quality of youth. I would ride fifty miles, my son, to see the little boy whose heart was so honest, and his lips so pure, that I could depend on every word he says."

**His School-Life.**—With such nurture of the tender shoot, it is no wonder that the tree spread out great branches. Young Washington seems to have taken a position among his companions at an early age, as one whose word could be depended upon. His father died when he was ten years old, but he never lost the impression made upon him by his teachings; on the contrary, they seemed to grow with his growth and strengthen with his strength. He went to school in Westmoreland County, to a Mr. Williams; and here he was distinguished for his skill in athletic sports, running, jumping, and wrestling, he showing great disdain for such tame games as tops and marbles.

**Mimic Warfare.**—It is told of him that, when he was only in his eleventh year, he gave evidence of military talent. He used to divide his school-fellows into two parties, one of which he called French and the other American. The French were commanded by a big boy named William Bustle; George himself commanded the Americans; and every day, at recess, the little armies would seize their corn-stalk muskets and calabash drums, and turn out to

fight their mimic battles with great fury. At the age of sixteen he left school and obtained a situation as surveyor for Lord Fairfax, who owned all the land in what is called the Northern Neck of Virginia, lying between the Rappahannock and Potomac Rivers, and from the Chesapeake Bay back to the Alleghany Mountains. This tract was first granted to Lord Culpeper, former Governor of Virginia, and inherited by Lord Fairfax from his uncle, Lord Culpeper.

**Washington remained in this employment** until his twentieth year; working hard as a woodsman, and spending his leisure hours in athletic sports with his young companions, the Stevenses and Crawfords. Such was his physical training; and his heart seems to have been equally well disciplined, for he always retained the tenderest feelings towards the companions of his youth. It is said that he received an appointment on a British man-of-war, and his trunk was actually on board; but when he came to take leave of his weeping mother, who told him her heart was breaking, he declined the appointment and stayed at home to gratify her.

**From this time** he seems to have imbibed a passion for military life, and spent his leisure time in practising military tactics; and attracted so much attention by the skill he manifested in all military arts, that when he left the service of Lord Fairfax he was appointed adjutant-general of the Virginia forces on the Northern Neck, who were training for service against the Indians. Here his history becomes involved with other events, which I must pause to relate.

**The French and English.**—You remember that, when the first colonists came to this continent, England claimed, by right of discovery, the entire country stretching in length from Canada to the southern border of North Carolina, and in breadth from the Atlantic to the Pacific

Ocean. Now, if you will look at your maps, you will see what a great extent of territory this comprises, and that the Mississippi River cuts it in two, and with its tributaries waters all this country, as well as that to the south of it. It is true that England had no idea of the immense territory she was claiming; nevertheless her title to it all was considered perfect.

**The French**, however, with their possessions in Canada as a stronghold, were disputing this title vigorously. About seventy years after Captain Smith planted his colony in Virginia, one of the French Jesuit missionaries, sailing down the Wisconsin River in an open boat, entered the Mississippi, and sailing past the mouths of the Ohio and Missouri Rivers, claimed the whole country watered by the Mississippi and its tributaries in the name of his sovereign, not knowing or not caring that the English had a prior claim.

**Nine years after** the expedition of the Jesuit missionary, another Frenchman, named La Salle, descended the Mississippi River to its mouth, and named the surrounding country Louisiana after his sovereign Louis. The possession of this country was never disputed by the English, as it was not within the boundaries of their claim; but as time went on, and the English settlements were pushed back towards the Mississippi, it became a contested matter whether the English or the French should own the magnificent country which was watered by the Mississippi and its tributaries. Many years before this time, Governor Spotswood had advised the English government to send companies to explore this splendid country, to make English settlements, and to build forts along the Ohio River for their protection. Had he been listened to a bloody war might have been averted; but he was not, and the colony of Virginia had now to suffer the consequences of the disregard with which his warnings had been treated.

**French Treaties with the Indians.**—The Indians with whom the American colonists came in contact were divided into many tribes, but all belonged to about three families, and these families in time of trouble united their strength. The Algonquins in Canada had for their confederates the New England tribes, the Susquehannas in the south, and some tribes in the west; then there were the Creeks and Cherokees, belonging to the Mobillians in the South; but the most powerful of all the three were the Iroquois, who comprised the famous Five Nations, of whom I have already told you. These formed a powerful confederacy which held sway over the others; the Algonquins paid tribute to them for many years, but the French formed an alliance with the Algonquins and helped them to rebel against the Iroquois, and so gained their bitter enmity; and it was the continual warfare which these powerful tribes kept up which at last prevented the rapid advance of the French upon the English possessions, and secured to us final conquest. Information reached Governor Dinwiddie, of Virginia, that the French had made treaties with all the western tribes of Indians, and were building forts on the Ohio River, which they intended to claim; and Governor Dinwiddie, after trying other means, determined to send a message to the commander on the Ohio to remonstrate against his encroachments, and to warn him that if he did not at once withdraw his forces he would compel him to do so. But a difficulty arose as to who would be the bearer of this message through trackless forests where the silence of nature had never been broken save by the Indian war-whoop and the roar of wild beasts, where dangers known and unknown must beset every step.

**Washington's Perilous Journey.**—Dinwiddie did not have long to wait for a messenger. Young George Washington, hearing of the difficulty, at once presented himself

to the governor and tendered his services. They were gladly accepted; and the next day, which was the 31st of October, 1753, he left Williamsburg, and passed through Fredericksburg up the Potomac to Alexandria, thence over the mountains to Winchester, and thence again to the point on the Potomac where the city of Cumberland now stands, beyond which there was no European settlement.

**The prospect before him** would have daunted any heart less brave than his own, but Washington did not linger long enough to think of the dangers of the way. The firmness which his early education had imparted to his character now displayed itself. At the head of his little party, over the snow-crowned Alleghanies, he slowly and cautiously made his way. How the journey was accomplished has ever since been a wonder to all. In the middle of winter, through difficulties of which language can convey no idea, our young hero pushed on. They crossed the large rivers on rafts, and had to fell trees across the rapid mountain torrents. At length they reached the point where the Monongahela and Alleghany Rivers unite and form the Ohio; it was a beautiful country, and the keen eye of Washington at once fixed upon it as a most important position for a fort. Twenty miles farther on he again paused, and collecting as many of the Indian braves as he could, made them a speech, in which he told them the object of his mission and asked their assistance. He was answered by a young Indian king, from whom he learned that his people were not unwilling to assist in putting a stop to the progress of the French, as they were beginning to view their movements with apprehension and jealousy.

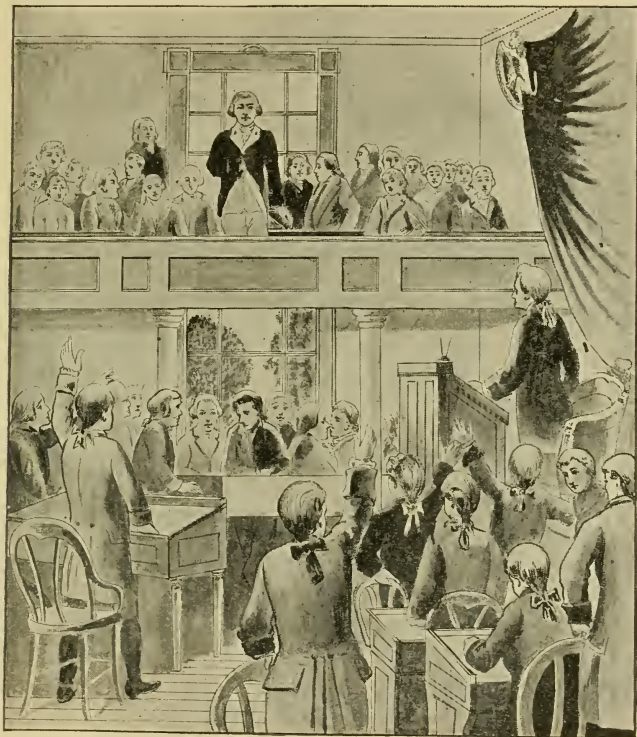
**After resting a few days,** Washington again set out on his journey for the head-quarters of the French, which was about one hundred and twenty miles from the Ohio River. The young Indian king and three of his men ac-

accompanied him. By perseverance they at length reached the place, and were courteously received by the French commander, St. Pierre. Washington presented Governor Dinwiddie's letter; St. Pierre, in reply, said that the matter must be decided by the Governor of Canada; his duty was simply to obey orders, which obliged him to maintain his present position; and with this unsatisfactory answer, Washington was forced to return. We will not follow his course back. He reached Williamsburg about the middle of January, after an absence of only two months and a half, and delivered his message to Governor Dinwiddie. It was decisive; war between the English and French was at once declared.

**The service of the young officer** in this expedition was highly appreciated. Going into the House of Burgesses one day, he took his seat in the gallery just in time to hear Speaker Robertson say, "Gentlemen, it is proposed that the thanks of this House be given to Major Washington, who now sits in the gallery, for the very gallant manner in which he has executed the important trust lately imposed on him by his Excellency Governor Dinwiddie." In a moment the House rose as one man, and turning towards the blushing young officer, saluted him; he tried to reply, but so completely confounded was this young hero, who had not feared to encounter the dangers of the American forest, that he stood blushing like a girl as this the first leaf in his crown of laurel was placed on his head. At last he found voice to articulate faintly, "Mr. Speaker—Mr. Speaker!" and then was silent. Old Speaker Robertson called out to him, laughingly, "Major Washington—Major Washington, sit down, your modesty alone is equal to your merit."

**Washington's First Command.**—As soon as the news reached England of the unsuccessful mission of Washington to the French, orders were issued by the British Ministry for the colonists to arm and unite in repelling the

aggressions of the French. Virginia raised two companies of one hundred men each, and placed them under the command of Washington, who, in obedience to orders, early in April marched towards the fork of the Ohio, to complete



WASHINGTON RECEIVING THE THANKS OF THE HOUSE OF BURGESSES.

the erection of a fort which had been commenced some time before. He here joined Colonel Fry, who assumed command. Before they reached there, however, they heard that the fort had been surrendered to the French, with a quantity of valuable property and a large body of

men. This was the first open act of hostility on the part of the French.

**His Success.**—Upon hearing this news, Washington moved slowly forward, intending to be guided in his course by any circumstances of which he could take advantage. He had many difficulties to encounter, with the Indians particularly. At one time, as he was making his way down the mountain, his Indian guides refused to go any farther without reward, and he was obliged to promise them his coat and his ruffled shirt at the end of the journey. At length the opportunity to meet the enemy, for which he had so ardently longed, presented itself, as his Indian scouts reported quite a large body of French approaching with apparently hostile intentions, and these the young officer determined to anticipate. Guided by friendly Indians, among whom was the young half-king Tanacharisen, who gave many proofs of affection and fidelity, Washington, after dividing his men into two parties, marched under cover of a very dark night in the direction of the valley in which the enemy were encamped, and before morning dawned the French commander awoke to the consciousness that he was completely surrounded. There was a rush to arms, but it was too late, and the whole party were forced to surrender, which they did not do until they had lost their commander and ten men. This was the first blood shed in the war between the French and English.\*

---

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. When and where was George Washington born?
2. Relate the circumstances of his early life.
3. What was the real foundation of his honest character?

---

\* I would advise teachers to make the pupils study these lessons with the aid of maps, as it is important that they should have a proper idea of these localities.

4. Relate the story of his school-days.
5. What place did he fill when he left school?
6. Where is the Northern Neck of Virginia, and to whom was it granted?
7. How long did he act as surveyor to Lord Fairfax?
8. What proof of filial love did he give?
9. What situation did he next receive?
10. Point out on your map the territory claimed by England.
11. What great river cuts this in two and waters it?
12. Where were the French possessions?
13. What circumstances led them to claim this country?
14. Of what portion of the country did La Salle take possession, and what did he name it?
15. What difficulties arose out of these French claims?
16. What advice had Governor Spotswood once given upon this subject?
17. What news reached Governor Dinwiddie?
18. What step did he determine upon?
19. Who was chosen as messenger?
20. What course did Washington pursue?
21. Relate the circumstances of his journey.
22. Tell of his interview with the friendly Indians.
23. Next his interview with the French officer.
24. Of his return home.
25. Of his appearance in the House of Burgesses.
26. How was the news of French aggressions received in England?
27. What position was given to Washington?
28. To what point did he direct his course?
29. What condition of things did he find?
30. What course did he pursue next?
31. Tell of his first battle with the French.

---

## CHAPTER XVIII.

1755.—CONTINUED.

BATTLE OF FORT DUQUESNE—BRADDOCK'S DEFEAT AND DEATH.

**Fort Necessity.**—After this battle, the command of the Virginia forces, by the sudden death of Colonel Fry, devolved upon Washington. He was reinforced at a place called the "Meadows" by two companies, one from New

York and one from South Carolina. At the Meadows he erected a small fort which he called Fort Necessity, and when this was done, at the head of nearly four hundred men he turned towards Fort Duquesne. He had gone thirteen miles in this direction when he was met by some friendly Indians, who told him that the troops in Fort Duquesne were as numerous as the pigeons in the woods. A council of war was held, and it was reluctantly determined to return to Fort Necessity; here Washington strained every nerve to complete the fort, as he had no doubt that the French, trusting to their superiority of numbers, would make a descent upon him.

**Washington's Defence.**—The result showed the foresight of the young officer, for before his preparations were complete, fifteen hundred French and Indians came bearing down upon Fort Necessity, commanded by Monsieur de Villiers, who, confident in his superior numbers, expected to secure an easy prey. Surrounding the small fort, they commenced a furious fire from all points at once; but now the wisdom of Washington in the choice of its position was shown. It was erected in the middle of level ground, with nothing to obstruct the eye for a long distance on any side. The French shots were thrown away on account of the distance, and as they ventured nearer they were picked out and shot down by the keen American marksmen. All day long the fight continued, Washington animating his troops by exhortations and personal example. He had early taken a position on the outside of the fort, where the men fought from morning until evening in the ditch up to their knees in mud and water. De Villiers was astonished; he was not prepared for so earnest a resistance from these untutored Americans. After hours of contest he had made no impression on the fort, and had lost two hundred of his men killed and disabled.

**The Capitulation.**—Knowing that it was impossible for the little garrison to escape, and that it could be reduced by famine, he sent a message to Washington proposing terms of capitulation; but the conditions laid down were too humiliating to be thought of for an instant, and the young officer returned for answer that he and his companions would sacrifice their lives one by one in the ditch where they had fought rather than submit to dishonor. The haughty Frenchman began to understand what sort of a man he had to deal with, and during the night sent another message, proposing that the Americans should be permitted to retire from the fort with their arms and baggage, and to march without molestation into the inhabited parts of Virginia, and that the French should retire to Fort Duquesne. These terms were accepted; but Washington had scarcely commenced his march before he discovered that the terms he had accepted were not honorably observed, for the Indians in the employ of the French hovered about his little army continually, committing the most wanton outrages and barbarous cruelties; his men dared not close their eyes for fear of the terrible war-whoop and the scalping-knife. At length, with diminished numbers, spent with fatigue and hunger, the little army arrived at Winchester.

**The House of Burgesses** returned a vote of thanks to the officers and men engaged in this expedition, and gave about nine hundred dollars to be divided between them.

**Governor Dinwiddie** immediately formed a plan for another campaign, and sent orders to Washington to retrace his steps across the Alleghanies, to defeat the French and Indians, and to capture Fort Duquesne. Nothing could exceed Washington's astonishment at these orders. He knew that it was madness, with his exhausted army, to attempt to march through the wilderness in the midst of winter without supplies, to accomplish the defeat

of a daring foe who had double his number intrenched in fortifications. In this dilemma the Virginia Assembly came to his relief, and refused to vote the money required to carry out Governor Dinwiddie's plan of campaign.

**During the next winter** the English government sent Governor Dinwiddie ten thousand pounds for carrying on the war, but it was accompanied by orders which threw everything into confusion. The whole army in Virginia was to be divided into companies, and no officer was to have a higher grade than that of captain; so that Washington, who had fairly won his position as colonel of a Virginia regiment, was degraded to the rank of captain, with English officers, who had seen no service, ranking him. His high spirit refused to brook such injustice; he resigned his position in the army and retired to private life.

**Washington's next Service.**—He was not permitted long to remain in retirement. Early in the spring of this year Major-General Braddock arrived with a sufficient body of troops to carry on the war with vigor; and hearing of the merits of the young Virginia officer, and knowing how important would be his knowledge of the country in the approaching campaign, he sent for him and entreated him to accept the position of aide upon his staff, with the rank of colonel. Washington was only too glad to accept this offer, as it had been a severe trial to him to lay down his arms which had been raised in defence of his country.

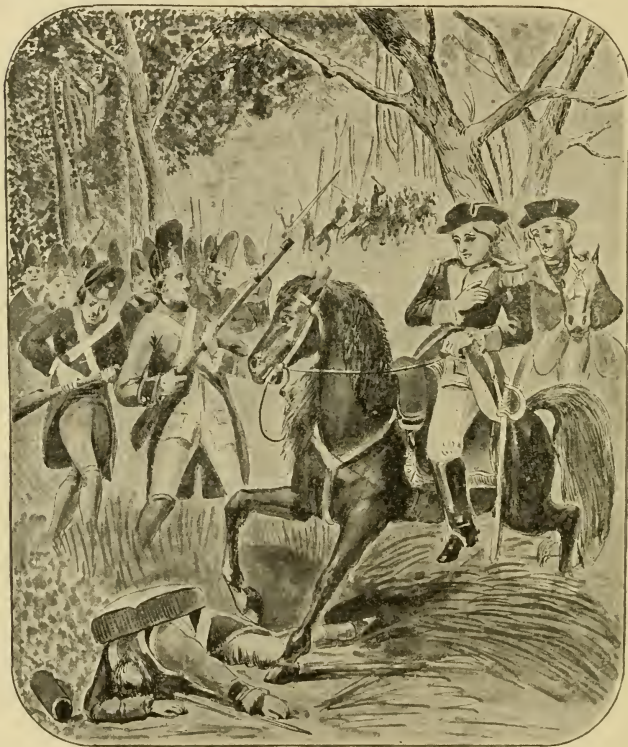
**General Braddock**, a brave and experienced officer, had won many laurels upon the battle-fields of Europe, but he knew nothing of fighting in America. He expected to march his men through the thick forests in heavy columns as he had done over the plains of Europe, to cut down trees, level obstructions, and bridge every brook. You may imagine that the progress of his troops was very slow; they were nearly one month going eighty miles from Cumberland towards Fort Duquesne. Unfor-

tunately, Washington was taken sick and obliged to stay behind, so that General Braddock lost the benefit of his advice; but it is doubtful whether he would have availed himself of it had Washington been with him, for he is described as being a haughty, imperious man, unwilling to accept counsel from an inferior officer.

**At length they arrived at the Monongahela,** and here Colonel Washington, weak from illness, joined them; but the ardor of his spirit and the urgency of the situation forced him to enter upon the duties of his position without delay. On the morning of the 9th of July, General Braddock made preparations for crossing the Monongahela. Washington in later days often spoke of the beauty of the scene. The British troops, perfectly disciplined and in full uniform, marched through the forest with the regular step of the parade-ground. Braddock had retained but three Virginia companies, and those probably out of compliment to Washington; the others were left in the rear.

**The Ambush.**—They were now within seven miles of Fort Duquesne, and Washington saw, with the deepest anxiety, the incautious rapidity with which General Braddock advanced. In vain he warned him of the dangers of ambush, and entreated that he might lead the way with the Virginia Rangers and search the country well before the advance of the whole army. Rejecting his advice, the haughty commander gave him to understand that he was presuming upon his position. He retired with flushed cheeks, and as his eye glanced over the splendid army, a sad feeling struck to his heart. How many of the brave fellows before him, so confident of victory, would that day bite the dust! The result was worse even than his anticipations. Just above the crossing of the river, as they were ascending the slope from its banks, a heavy fire was opened upon the front and

left from an unseen foe. The van of the army, startled by this fire, fell back. A panic commenced; and now the fire opened upon them from every side, though not a man was to be seen.



BRADDOCK'S DEFEAT.

**The Defeat.**—General Braddock was a brave man, and did his utmost to rally his troops; but again his ignorance of American warfare misled him. Instead of ordering his men to charge into the trees and brushwood, and thus to dislodge the hidden enemy, he formed them in solid columns,

as he had been accustomed to do upon open battle-fields. This was playing into the enemy's hands, as the French and Indian sharp-shooters poured in continuous volleys upon these masses, and no exhortations, no examples, could stay the panic that ensued. Crowded together like sheep in a slaughter-pen, as if the fire of the enemy was not destructive enough, they added to the bloodshed of their own men by their random firing. Their unfortunate general did all that man could do to restore order; he was always to be seen in the front, riding from place to place, trying to rally his men; but it was in vain. Five horses were killed under him, and two of his aides were shot down by his side. Nearly half of his army was either killed or wounded, and the ground was literally strewn with the dead. The Indians picked out the officers by their brilliant uniforms.

**The Virginia troops**, in this terrible havoc, behaved with the greatest bravery. Unlike the British, they made no attempt to keep in close order, but scattering themselves in the woods, fought from behind the trees. To speak in the language of the time, they fought like men and died like soldiers; but their bravery did not save them from destruction. When the battle ended, but thirty remained alive of the three hundred that had gone into it; out of one company of twenty-nine, twenty-five were killed; of another, only one private survived.

**Colonel Washington** also distinguished himself by his coolness and resolution. After the death of the general's aides, the whole duty of carrying his orders to different parts of the field devolved upon him; this duty he performed in the midst of an incessant fire.

**A Charmed Life.**—It is said that an Indian chief marked him, as he rode to and fro through the field, and, taking deliberate aim, fired; but the intended victim rode on unharmed. The fire was repeated with a like result,

and then, calling his men around him, the warrior pointed out the young brave whose life he sought, bidding them direct their rifles upon him; but still the young hero passed on unharmed, until the superstitious Indians desisted, believing that he bore a charmed life. He had two horses shot under him, four bullets passed through his clothes, but not a hair of his head was hurt; and, by his coolness and activity, he saved the remains of the army. The unhappy general was not thus protected. He received a ball through his lungs, and was borne from the field by Washington and another of his officers. After this the rout became general. Everything was deserted; the artillery, baggage, and colors were all abandoned, and this probably saved the remnant of the army, for the Indians stopped the pursuit to revel in the plunder.

**Braddock's Grave.**—Fortunately, a portion of Braddock's army had been left some distance in the rear, under Colonel Dunbar. To join these the fragment of the defeated forces bent their way, bearing their dying general. He died on the way within sound of the savage war-whoop of the pursuers. They buried him in the road, and drove their wagons back and forth over the spot to obliterate the marks. The spot remained unidentified until a few years ago, when a skeleton was found and identified as that of General Braddock by the English military buttons found with it. It was removed to a field near by, and buried beneath an oak-tree, upon which was recorded the fact; except this rude record, the grave has remained unmarked to the present time. Perhaps in the future England may honor the grave of her brave soldier with a fitting monument. It is said that in his dying moments he confessed frankly to Washington that he had erred in not taking his advice upon that fatal morning.

**After his death** the entire army retreated to Win-

chester; nor did Dunbar, who succeeded to the command, consider himself safe even there, for he announced his intention of taking up winter-quarters in Philadelphia in the middle of summer. Washington sent a message to Governor Dinwiddie, to inform him of the defeat and death of General Braddock and of Dunbar's departure to Philadelphia. The whole frontier was open to the enemy. Nothing could exceed the dismay of the people of Virginia at the reception of this news. A meeting of the Burgesses was immediately called; a sum of money was voted to Washington and his surviving officers, as a token of approval of the part they had borne in the unfortunate campaign, and their confidence in Washington was shown by bestowing upon him the command of a regiment which was to proceed at once to the protection of the border.

---

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. In what year did these events occur?
2. What promotion was conferred upon Washington after the battle?
3. What fort did he erect?
4. What prevented his marching against Fort Duquesne?
5. What was Washington's next step?
6. Tell of the attack on Fort Necessity.
7. Of the close of the affair.
8. Of Washington's retreat to Winchester.
9. How did the House of Burgesses acknowledge his services?
10. What plan of campaign did the governor form?
11. What prevented its execution?
12. What did the English government do next?
13. What course did Washington take?
14. What induced him again to take up arms?
15. What of General Braddock, and his idea of fighting in America?
16. Tell of his march.
17. Where was Washington?
18. What happened on the 9th of July?
19. Relate the order of the advance.
20. What remonstrance did Washington make, and with what effect?
21. Relate the story of the fight.

22. Tell of the panic.
23. What course did the Indians take?
24. What of the behavior and loss among the Virginia troops.
25. How was Washington wonderfully protected?
26. Tell of Braddock's death.
27. What became of the rest of the army?
28. What remarkable course did Dunbar take?
29. What did the House of Burgesses do?

---

## CHAPTER XIX.

1756-1763.

INDIAN ATROCITIES—FALL OF FORT DUQUESNE—WASHINGTON RETIRES TO MOUNT VERNON.

**After the Defeat.**—The prompt measures thus taken were not premature, for, before Washington could return to Winchester, news was received that the Indians, encouraged by the defeat at Fort Duquesne, had gathered in great numbers, and were already spreading devastation throughout the whole country. Had the government furnished him with men and means sufficient to take Fort Duquesne at once, the heart-rending details of savage butcheries upon the frontier might never have been told. The whole country was terror-stricken at the fate of Braddock's army, and no representations of Washington could induce the authorities to order another advance. Thus the French were enabled to concentrate their forces at this most important place; and it is no doubt true that this civilized nation used every means in its power to send the murderous savage with his tomahawk and scalping-knife upon the defenceless inhabitants of the frontier of Virginia.

**Washington builds Forts.**—Washington did all he could in its defence, but this was little; for how could sixteen hundred men guard a frontier of three hundred and

sixty miles? He built a large fort at Winchester, which he named in honor of Lord Loudoun, who was now in command of the British forces in America; and besides, twenty-three smaller forts were erected along the mountain ranges. Among these he divided his forces, and to these places of refuge would men, women, and children fly for safety when the war-whoop of the savage awakened the echoes of the forests.

**Indian Outrages.**—The history of the following three years is written in blood, and the heart of the brave commander of the Virginia forces sickened at the sights which daily met his eye, and which he was powerless to avert. Steadily he pursued his course, going from fort to fort. At one place he found a man lying in the furrow beside his plough, with his story written in his forehead by the terrible tomahawk; and at a short distance stood the ruins of his cottage, with the bones of his wife and children bleaching in the ashes. But why should we dwell on such horrors? How can the writer of history paint the American Indian as brave and generous with such facts before him?—his distinguishing characteristic being to fight under cover, and not only to murder, but to torture defenceless women and children.

**Fort Duquesne taken.**—During all this time Washington continued to advocate the attack upon Fort Duquesne, but in vain, until Dinwiddie was removed from the government of Virginia and Lord Fauquier appointed in his place. He at once saw the wisdom of this movement, and an army was raised, which after many dangers and delays reached Fort Duquesne to find it deserted, so that this important position fell into the hands of the Virginians without a blow. It was now their duty to bury the remains of those who were slain in Braddock's defeat, and which now lay bleaching upon the battle-field. Disfigured, mutilated by wounds, torn by birds and beasts of prey, they pre-

sented a spectacle horrible to the sight, and many a brave soldier dropped a tear as he walked silently and solemnly through this army of the dead.

**Distressing Scenes.**—It is related that one Major Halket had lost a father and a brother in this battle; an Indian guide told him of an old officer whom he had seen fall, and of a young man who in stooping to help him fell across the body, and he pointed out the two skeletons as they lay. Quivering with emotion, the strong man stood by the side of the bones; stopping an instant to think, he recalled some peculiarities connected with his father, and as he raised the skeleton and perceived the mark for which he sought, he exclaimed "It is my father!" and fell back in the arms of his companion. This is but one touching instance among many. There were some there who had escaped the slaughter of that terrible day, and told of its horrors with all the eloquence of eye-witnesses. At length, with pious care they gathered together the sacred dust and buried it in one grave. Having performed this duty, they made a treaty with the Indians, and having taken proper steps for the protection of the frontier, General Forbes returned with his army to Philadelphia.

**The fall of Fort Duquesne** put an end to the war between the French and English upon the frontiers of Virginia, and Washington, after five years of active service, was not sorry to lay down his sword and return to Mount Vernon.

It is a remarkable fact that in Washington's career, though often unsuccessful, he never lost the confidence of his countrymen. No one blamed him for Braddock's defeat; on the contrary, his reputation rose upon that battle-field; ministers in the pulpit thanked God for preserving the life of the young hero, and the Burgesses presented him with a token of their confidence in him.

For some years after this Virginia grew in strength and prosperity. The northern colonies were involved in war with the French, but everywhere the English were victorious, France was humbled, and the civilized world once more desired peace.

The population of Virginia increased rapidly, and she was unconsciously preparing for the great struggle in which she was to take the lead. She had now passed her infancy, her childhood, and even her youth, and she was slowly learning the high duties to which she was to be called, and in whose faithful performance she won for herself a name of which her sons to the latest generation will be proud.

**Taxation without Representation.**—England, in the mean time, had been involved in so many wars that she was deeply in debt, and began to think seriously of forcing her prosperous colonies in America to assist her in paying these dues. This she had no right to do, and I will tell you why in a few words. You remember, some chapters back, I tried to explain to you about the government of England. Her House of Commons, like our Congress and Legislatures, is made up of men elected by the people to represent their interests, and the people are then taxed to pay the expenses of the government and to lay up a fund by which their own wants will be supplied. Now you can see by a little thought how well this would conduce to the benefit of all parties concerned. This great body of men, selected from the most intelligent in the country, meet together and consult about the good of the whole; and after the wants and wishes of all are made known, they then decide how the sum of money they have in hand, and to which all have contributed, can be best used to meet these necessities. Having fixed this in your minds, you will be able to understand what injustice it would be if one particular part of the country should have been prevented from sending her men to Parliament to represent her wishes, and had still been forced

to pay her share of the money in the treasury. Now this was exactly the state of the case with America. She was not allowed to send any men to the Parliament of England to represent her interests, and therefore she very properly thought that England had no right to tax her, particularly as each colony had her own government to support. If you will try and comprehend these few simple facts perfectly, you will have no difficulty in understanding the causes which led to the Revolutionary War.

---

### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. What years are included in this chapter?
  2. What happened before Washington returned to Winchester?
  3. What was the cause of these misfortunes, and how might they have been averted?
  4. What steps did Washington take?
  5. What of the following three years?
  6. What course did Washington advocate, and with what success?
  7. Give an account of the return to the scene of Braddock's defeat, and the burial of the dead.
  8. What put an end to the war between the French and English?
  9. What is a noticeable fact in Washington's career?
  10. What progress did Virginia make after these events?
  11. What was the condition of the British government, and how did she propose to relieve herself of her difficulties?
  12. Explain why England had no right to tax America.
- 

## CHAPTER XX.

1765-1770.

PATRICK HENRY—RICHARD HENRY LEE—RICHARD BLAND AND EDMUND PENDLETON—THE STAMP ACT RESISTED—THOMAS JEFFERSON.

**Loyalty of Virginia.**—An important and interesting duty of the Virginia historian is to make the reader ac-

quainted with her great men; those who by heroism, by eloquence, by statesmanship, by the power of the pen, and by patriotism have made their names immortal. You have already had a portrait of the great hero George Washington, who stands as the Father of his country. The circumstances of America at this time called for other weapons than the sword. Virginia was in sore difficulties; more than the other colonies was she devoted to the mother-country. She had been the last to desert King Charles I., and the first to welcome King Charles II. to the throne. But there was something that Virginia loved more, even, than she did her king, and this was justice and freedom, and these she found endangered by the proposition to tax her in order to enable England to pay her heavy debt.

**The Navigation Laws.**—I have told you about the navigation laws which forbade America to trade with any country but England. When the colonies were too feeble to think of resistance, they had been forced to pay a tax upon all articles which were brought from England to America. These things, though wrongs, Virginia had become accustomed to; but when her submission in this matter encouraged her English rulers to put still greater burdens upon her, she became alarmed, and looked around anxiously to see which of her sons would give voice to her indignation; nor did she look in vain.

**Patrick Henry.**—A young lawyer from the county of Hanover, with neither birth, wealth, nor connections to recommend him, came forward. This was Patrick Henry, whose name, as an orator, will go down side by side with that of Demosthenes; and there is no person in history the study of whose character should give more encouragement to the young. He had not even enjoyed the advantage of a first-rate education; he was awkward and ungainly in appearance, and had a natural indolence to contend against which made success doubly difficult;

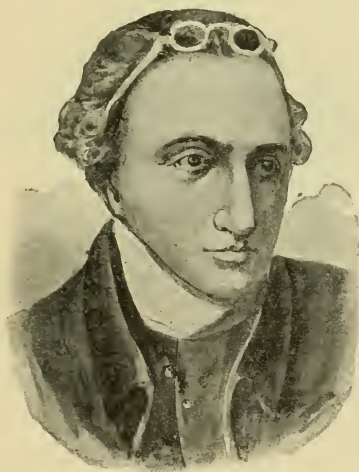
but with all this, he had a thirst for knowledge which was unconquerable. History was his favorite study, particularly that of Virginia. With this he made himself perfectly familiar, from the time that James I. gave the charter to the London Company down to the present; and thus fortified by a knowledge of her past, when Virginia wanted help he was ready to give it.

**The Stamp Act.**—The question of the right of England to tax her colonies was being discussed in the Assembly of Virginia. There were many eloquent men in this body, but still there was something wanting. It was a serious matter to oppose England. It was not only the love of a child for a mother which made Virginia pause to think, but the knowledge that the opposition to her would produce a struggle from which the boldest shrank, and which many thought had better be avoided, even by allowing the right of England to tax the colony. Fortunately, this was not the opinion of all. The colonies now resembled a smouldering fire which only required a strong breath to kindle into a flame. This breath was supplied by the news which reached Virginia that the Parliament of England had passed a law known as the "Stamp Act."

**A Modern Parallel.**—In these days it is not difficult to understand what this was. You all know that not many years ago almost every article which was purchased from a store in this country had a stamp upon it; that many business papers and instruments of writing were not worth anything unless they had a stamp upon them; but you do not know probably that these stamps were a tax which the government levied upon the articles. The United States issued these stamps, and sold them to the people; the money thus obtained was put into the Treasury, and provided a fund for the payment of the debt of the country. I have nothing to say against this plan: it was perhaps the best that could be devised; every American

was interested in having the debts of the country paid, and no one felt sensibly the few cents which these stamps cost. But when England made it a law that America should buy her stamps and use them they determined to resist.

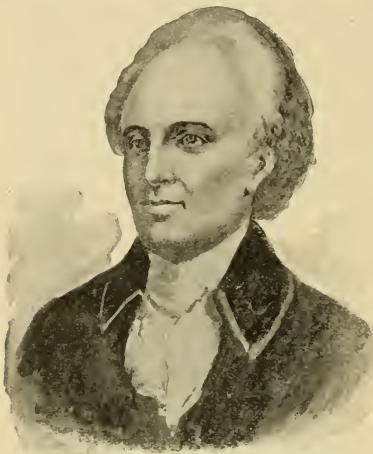
**Indignation in the Colonies.**—The Virginians were a proud race, and very jealous of any attack upon their liberties. It was not the money that they cared for, but it was the principle involved in the matter. They would willingly have voted a large sum to assist England in paying her debts, but they knew that this small tax was but the first link in the chain which was to bind them as slaves to the mother-country. Admit her right to levy this upon them, and it would be followed by a larger and a larger tax until the burden would become intolerable. Nor was Virginia alone in this opinion; the voice of indignation rose from all the colonies. When the Stamp Act was issued in Boston, it was seized, torn in pieces, and trampled underfoot. The Virginia lawyers declared that they would rather give up their profession than use the stamps; and when the English agent arrived to distribute them, he was so rudely treated that he was obliged to seek safety in flight. These are the circumstances which prepared the way for the great orator, Patrick Henry.



PATRICK HENRY.

**The Virginia Assembly.**—As I have said, the Virginia

Assembly met to discuss this act. I will tell you something about a few of the great men of the Assembly, whose names should live in the history of Virginia. There was Richard Henry Lee, who was called the Cicero of Virginia, from his great reputation as an orator, and from his appearance, which was formed in the Roman mould. He had lost one



RICHARD HENRY LEE.

of his hands by an accident, and he always wore a silken bandage over it, which is said to have added to, rather than taken from, the effect of his manner. He was so graceful that many thought he must practise speaking before a mirror.

#### Other Members.

—Next came Peyton Randolph, the attorney-general, who was no orator, yet a man

of much learning and influence. Then there was Richard Bland, who was a wise statesman, but a better writer than speaker. Still another was Edmund Pendleton, who had been left an orphan, poor and uneducated, and who, after ploughing all day, pursued his studies at night, working hard, and spending all that he could spare from his earnings in books. He had no skill as a writer, but spoke with great power. George Mason, who wrote the Bill of Rights for Virginia, was a modest country gentleman who lived not very far from Mount Vernon, at Gunston. Mr. Madison said of him that he was the ablest man in debate he ever saw. He was fifty years old when he wrote the Bill

of Rights, and also the Constitution for the government of the State, which papers will always secure to him a foremost place among the distinguished men of Virginia. These were the sons whom Virginia called around her in her time of trouble.

**A Great American Patriot.**—In front of and greater than them all stood Patrick Henry. He was twenty-eight years old when he became a member of the House of Burgesses, to which he had not been elected, but in which he obtained a seat through one of the members resigning his place to him, in order that he might speak upon this great subject.

He found the House divided into two parties; one advocating submission in the matter of the Stamp Act, and the other opposed to it. Finding that the party for submission was about to pass the Stamp Act, he took out his pencil and wrote upon a leaf of an old book some resolutions which he presented to the House. They set forth the facts that Virginians had a right to all the privileges of English subjects; that having no representatives in Parliament, they should not be taxed by Parliament; that the right of these colonies to tax themselves had always been recognized by the kings and Parliaments of England; and lastly, that no one had a right to tax Virginians but the General Assembly of Virginia, and were such a thing allowed it would destroy American freedom.

**Patrick Henry's Great Oration.**—These were the boldest words which had ever been uttered in that place, and the bravest hearts shrunk from the results which might follow them. A stormy discussion took place, in the midst of which Patrick Henry rose. The party opposing him laughed almost without reserve at his appearance. He was plainly, even coarsely, dressed, awkward in his figure and manner, and formed a striking contrast to the fashionable gallants, with their powdered hair and

ruffled shirt-fronts, who filled the House. Their amusement did not last long, for soon a great change came over the speaker; his eye kindled as he warmed with his subject, his form became erect, and even graceful, and his voice thrilled like music as he spoke, as no Virginian had ever dared do before, of the wrongs of the colony and the dangers which lay before her. Not a sound broke the stillness; every eye was turned upon him as he painted



PATRICK HENRY BEFORE THE HOUSE OF BURGESSES.

Virginia in chains to the power of England. The blood ran cold in their veins as they listened. It seems a pity that this wonderful speech was not preserved; no one thought of writing it out as he uttered it, and only a portion of it has come down to us. "Cæsar," he cried, "had his Brutus, Charles I. his Cromwell, and George III.—" Here he was interrupted by loud cries of "Treason! trea-

son!" He knew that he stood upon the brink of a precipice; Virginia was not yet able to bear the daring words he would have uttered. He did not lose his self-command, but straightening himself up, he continued, "and George III. may profit by their example. If this be treason, make the most of it."

**The effect of this speech** is best known by its result—the resolutions passed by a majority of one. At the door of the House, listening with delight to this speech, stood a student of William and Mary College. It was Thomas Jefferson, who afterwards wrote the Declaration of Independence. The news of the adoption of these resolutions spread like wildfire, and caused intense excitement throughout the whole country. The other colonies adopted similar resolutions, and determined that nothing bearing the stamp of England should come into the country. Clubs were formed named "The Sons of Liberty," and the members bound themselves by an oath to resist oppression. Massachusetts proposed that all the colonies should send delegates to New York in October to consult about the best means to be adopted in this crisis. This was the first American Congress. The colonies heretofore had had separate governments, and this was the first time they united for a common defence.

**On the 1st of November**, the day fixed upon for the Stamp Act to take effect, signs of indignation and murmuring were visible everywhere. In Boston a funeral, which they called the Funeral of Liberty, took place; muffled drums beat dead marches, the bells were tolled, and long processions of black-robed mourners passed through the streets following a coffin, which was solemnly interred.

**When the news of this opposition** reached England, it created a great excitement in Parliament. Many members thought America was perfectly right in her course, and one of them, William Pitt, rose from a sick-bed to

make a speech in behalf of the Americans. "We are told," said he, "that America is obstinate, America is in open rebellion. I rejoice that America has resisted oppression; three millions of people so dead to all feelings of liberty as voluntarily to submit to be slaves would have been fit instruments to make slaves of all the rest." The result of American firmness was, that England repealed the act,—that is, did away with it; and the Americans, strengthened by this triumph, determined that they never again would submit to a wrong from England.

**Later Events.**—For some time after this, affairs went on quietly in Virginia. Governor Fauquier died, and was succeeded by Norborne Berkeley, Baron of Botetourt, who was chosen as Governor of Virginia because it was supposed that he would check rebellion and see the king's commands enforced. He was a good and a great man, loved his new people, and was continually perplexed by the desire to obey his king and yet do justice to those over whom he ruled.

**Governor Botetourt.**—Notwithstanding all the trouble about the Stamp Act, England still debated how she could make the colonies help to pay her debts. Virginia had also another complaint to make. There had for many years existed a law that when a person was accused of crime in Virginia, he should be sent all the way over to England to be tried. The year after Lord Botetourt was appointed Governor of Virginia, the General Assembly passed two resolutions: first, that Virginia would no longer submit to be taxed by England, nor would she send criminals to England to be tried.

**The Assembly dissolved.**—Now, although the governor knew perfectly well that the Assembly was right in this, yet he thought that his duty to the king compelled him to take notice of what seemed rebellion against his authority. He told the Assembly that he had heard of

their resolutions, but that his duty was not to countenance rebellion, therefore he dissolved the Assembly. It had always been the custom, when the Assembly was dissolved, for the members to return quietly to their homes; but the spirit of freedom and independence was now aroused, and instead of dispersing, they met at a private house in Williamsburg, and resolved that they would not bring into the country anything from England upon which a tax was laid. Copies of this resolution were sent all through the country, and the other colonies joined Virginia in making the same resolution.

**The Boston Tea Party.**—It is one thing to resolve and another thing to perform. Americans did both. Glass, lead, paper, and tea had been taxed, and not one of these articles was permitted to be brought to America. So determined were the colonists, that when some time afterwards a vessel loaded with tea entered Boston harbor, a number of citizens, who feared the people might be tempted by a sight of the commodity, disguised themselves as Indians, went on board the ship in the night, and threw overboard three hundred and forty-two chests of tea, and then returned to their homes.

---

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. What is a very important duty of the writer of the history of Virginia?
2. Who was the great military hero of Virginia?
3. What condition of affairs in her colony called for other weapons than the sword?
4. What effect had the submission of Virginia to the navigation laws produced?
5. What did she do in her dilemma?
6. Who was Patrick Henry?
7. Why should his life be an encouragement to the young?
8. What circumstances fitted him to become the defender of Virginia?
9. What considerations had prevented the men of Virginia from resisting the oppressions of England?
10. Explain what the Stamp Act was.

11. Why did Virginia determine to resist the execution of the Stamp Act?
  12. How was it received in the other colonies?
  13. What of Richard Henry Lee?
  14. What of Peyton Randolph and Richard Bland?
  15. What of Edmund Pendleton?
  16. What of George Mason?
  17. How did Patrick Henry get a seat in the House of Burgesses?
  18. What division of opinion did he find in the House?
  19. What resolutions did he present to the House?
  20. How were they received?
  21. Describe the orator's appearance.
  22. What change came over him when he began to speak?
  23. Repeat a portion of his speech.
  24. What effect did it have?
  25. Who was the student listening at the door?
  26. What effect did the news of these events have through the country?
  27. Tell of the first American Congress.
  28. What was done in Boston?
  29. What effect did these events have upon England?
  30. Who succeeded Lord Fauquier?
  31. Of what other grievance did Virginia complain?
  32. What steps did she take in the matter?
  33. What did the governor do?
  34. Did the Assembly disperse?
  35. Did America act as well as resolve?
  36. What decisive step was taken at Boston?
- 

## CHAPTER XXI.

1774.

DEATH OF LORD BOTETOURT—LORD DUNMORE SUCCEEDS HIM AS GOVERNOR OF VIRGINIA—HIS DIFFICULTIES WITH THE ASSEMBLY—INDIAN TROUBLES—BATTLE OF POINT PLEASANT—LOGAN—MEETING OF THE VIRGINIA CONVENTION IN ST. JOHN'S CHURCH, RICHMOND.

**Governor Dunmore.**—This year died Lord Botetourt, beloved and respected by all who knew him. His death was doubtless hastened by the troubles and perplexities of

his position. The people of Virginia showed their appreciation of his worth by erecting a monument to him at Williamsburg, and naming after him one of the most beautiful counties in the State. He was succeeded by Lord Dunmore, who stands lowest of all the Governors of Virginia. He was not only harsh and rude in his manners, but perfectly unprincipled in his morals, and haughty and tyrannical in the extreme. He came to Virginia accompanied by a favorite, Captain Foy, and with the determination to draw from the people, by every means in his power, both fair and unfair, money to enrich himself and his friend.

**But the Virginians** were not so easy to deal with as he had expected. The Assembly investigated closely, and refused to sanction his attempts to cheat the people out of their property. His next project was to bring on a war between Virginia and Pennsylvania about their boundaries, thinking that if he could inflame the colonies against each other, they would not be able to join together to oppose England, and besides, would be so much interested in this quarrel that he would be at liberty to carry out his own private plans without molestation.

**Again he was mistaken.** The colonies were more closely drawn together than ever before by a common interest, and this was the resistance of oppression. The difference between Virginia and Pennsylvania was peacefully settled; and hearing that, as a punishment to the Boston people for throwing the tea overboard, her port was closed, and no vessel permitted either to come in or go out (thus cutting off her trade), the Virginians, at the next meeting of the Assembly, offered resolutions expressing sympathy for their oppressed brethren. Lord Dunmore, in a great rage, immediately dissolved the Assembly; but, instead of dispersing as he had intended, they adjourned to the Raleigh Tavern, and there, in in-

dignant terms, denounced tea as the source of all their troubles, and declared their purpose not to send one pound of tobacco to England until the port of Boston was opened.

**Logan's Revenge.**—In the mean time, Governor Dunmore's schemes to produce a diversion from himself and his affairs had revived a fearful evil, which perhaps even he did not intend. The Indian war-whoop was again heard upon the frontiers, and again were defenceless men, women, and children flying from their savage foe. Reports of these horrors thrilled all hearts at Williamsburg. The white men seem to have commenced these outrages; one Colonel Cresap had headed a fearful massacre of the Indians, in which the entire family of a great chief named Logan had been killed. Logan had been a warm friend to the white man, and had done all in his power to keep the peace between the Americans and his own race; but this outrage aroused his savage nature, and he himself led his tribes to the war and wreaked his vengeance upon the frontier settlements.

**A Fierce Battle.**—An army was raised and placed under the command of General Lewis, who marched to Point Pleasant, where the Kanawha River empties into the Ohio. Here he remained some time without seeing the Indians; but one day two young men, venturing out for the purpose of hunting, were suddenly attacked by a large body of Indians; one was killed, and the other fled wounded to the camp to rouse his comrades. In a few moments the whole force was under arms. The Indian war-whoop was heard, and fifteen hundred savages came yelling like an army of demons. They were led on by a gigantic warrior named Cornstalk, whose great skill and cruelty were well known. The Indians now understood the use of fire-arms almost as well as the Americans, and a terrible fire poured from their ranks, which killed and wounded many of the whites. Colonel Charles Lewis, a

brother of the general, was mortally wounded, and only contrived to drag himself within the camp before he expired. When all seemed lost, a reinforcement arrived under Colonel Flemming, who ordered the army to adopt the Indian method of shooting from behind trees. Instantly, as if by magic, both armies disappeared, and little was seen of the fight except the flash of fire-arms. The huge figure of Cornstalk glided from tree to tree, encouraging his men; and his loud voice was heard above the din of battle, calling out "Be strong! be strong!"

**The Indians repulsed.**—Colonel Flemming received two balls through his wrist and one through his lungs, but still continued to cheer on his men. The firing kept up all day, and the loss of life was terrible. By the advice of Colonel Flemming, the Virginians adopted a very cunning stratagem. Holding up their hats from behind the trees, when the Indians fired they let them fall; the Indians, thinking they were men, rushed forward with their scalping-knives, only to be shot down by the Virginians. At length the Indians began to give way, the Virginians having been reinforced by Colonel Field, who was killed while leading the pursuit. The Indians fought for every inch of ground as they retreated, and it was not until after sunset that they withdrew. Cornstalk himself brought up the rear, and with his own hand struck dead one of his men who showed signs of cowardice. This victory, though complete, was dearly bought, the Virginians having lost one hundred and forty men, among whom were many valuable officers.

**Lord Dunmore**, who had promised to join Lewis, instead of doing so took another direction; and immediately after the battle an order came for Lewis to join him at Shawneetown, eighty miles farther on, as he had succeeded in securing a treaty of peace with the savages. General Lewis at first refused to obey, as he did not

think the Indians meant peace, but at length yielded to Governor Dunmore, only stipulating that every precaution should be taken to prevent treachery. The Indians were encamped within their fortifications, from which only eighteen besides their chiefs were permitted to pass at a time; and they were forced to deposit their arms with the guard at the gate. The negotiation was opened by Cornstalk, who made a long speech in a loud tone of voice, which was heard all over the camp. He accused the Virginians of commencing the war by their massacres, which was undoubtedly true; after this the terms of the treaty were settled, and the prisoners on both sides delivered up.

**Logan's Appeal.**—It was observed that Logan, the great Cayuga chief, was not present at this interview; but although he would not personally have anything to do with those who had murdered his family, yet, on account of his people, he consented to the peace. While the treaty was going on a man appeared bearing in his hand a letter with the signature of Logan; he found it tied to a war-club in a cabin at some distance from the camp. It was addressed to Lord Dunmore, and was afterwards published throughout England and America. It is considered one of the finest specimens of savage eloquence that was ever penned. I give it to you complete, because I am sure that its simple pathos must touch the hearts of all who read it:

“I appeal to any white man to say if ever he entered Logan's cabin hungry, and he gave him not meat; if ever he came cold and naked, and he clothed him not. During the course of the last long and bloody war, Logan remained idle in his cabin, an advocate for peace. Such was my love for the whites, that my countrymen pointed as they passed, and said, ‘Logan is the friend of white men.’ I had even thought to have lived with you, but for the injuries of one man. Colonel Cresap, the last spring, in cold blood and

unprovoked, murdered all the relations of Logan, not even sparing my women and children. There runs not a drop of my blood in the veins of any living creature. This called on me for revenge. I have sought it; I have killed many; I have fully glutted my vengeance; for my country I rejoice at the beams of peace. But do not harbor a thought that mine is the joy of fear. Logan never felt fear. He will not turn on his heel to save his life. Who is there to mourn for Logan?—Not one.”

**The Clouds of War.**—But a more obstinate contest was in progress than with the Indians. Thick clouds were swiftly gathering, which were to burst in the storms of war between England and America. Notwithstanding the remonstrances of patriots on both sides of the water, notwithstanding the firm determination, strictly adhered to by the colonists, not to send anything to England or to receive anything from England until their grievances were removed, still the evil increased rather than diminished.

**The Virginia Convention.**—In the month of March of this same year the Virginia Convention met at Richmond, which was then a small town of wooden houses built over the hills which sloped down to the river. Upon what is now called Church Hill there stands an old wooden church, with which some of you, at least, are familiar. It was in this very building that the Convention met to deliberate upon the course to be pursued in the gathering crisis. Virginia had not yet acknowledged, even to herself, that war was inevitable; but when day after day ships arrived from England bringing armed troops, which were quartered in the town; when over the waters of Chesapeake Bay she saw the English vessels of war hovering upon her coast, she knew that if liberty was to be preserved, she must, without delay, put herself in a posture of defence; and it was for the



ST. JOHN'S CHURCH, RICHMOND.

purpose of consulting upon the best mode of doing this that the Convention had now assembled. It was composed of representatives from all the different counties in the colony; and it is interesting and instructive to read the bold instructions which the hardy patriots at home dared to give to these delegates.

**Instructions to Delegates.**—I have now before me a curious relic of this time. It is a document printed on white satin, and contains the instructions from the freeholders of Augusta County to their representatives to this Convention. The satin is yellow with age, but the principles imprinted upon it should ever remain fresh in the breasts of freemen. It was, in effect, a declaration of their determination to be a free people. After expressing loyalty and attachment to their sovereign, the King of England, the men of Augusta declare that their fathers left their native land and came to the wilderness to enjoy liberty of conscience and the rights of human nature, and these rights they were fully determined should never be surrendered to any parliament or body of men on earth, in which they were not represented. Nor did Augusta stand alone; other counties gave similar instructions to their delegates. So that the body of men who gathered in convention at Richmond went strengthened by the knowledge, that whatever course might be decided upon for the defence of Virginia the people at home were ready to lay down their purses and their lives to accomplish it.

**Patrick Henry** proposed that the citizens of the different counties should be formed into military companies and drilled in the arts of war. This looked so much like threatening England, that the more timid members drew back in alarm. "What is the use," said they, "of taking a bold stand which we have no means of maintaining? Without soldiers, without arms, and without officers, shall we attempt to contend against the strongest military power in

the world?" Acknowledging their loyalty to England, they pictured the comforts and luxuries they might continue to enjoy were only peaceful means used to assert their rights.

**A Grand Oration.**—Then outspoke that voice of Virginia, Patrick Henry. Turning his piercing eyes from one member of the Convention to another, he thrilled every heart with his fiery eloquence. I wish I could give you his whole speech; I feel sure that your hearts too would glow with the enthusiasm which moved him. He besought the members to give up at once the idea that the storm of war could by any means be averted; he reminded them how again and again they had prostrated themselves before the throne of England, petitioning simply for their rights, and had met with nothing but disregard and insult; if they wished to be free, they must fight, and He who had declared that the "race is not to the swift, nor the battle to the strong" would help them in their helplessness, and raise up friends for them in their weakness. His wonderful speech closed with these memorable words: "Is life so dear, or peace so sweet, as to be purchased at the price of chains and slavery? Forbid it, Almighty God! I know not what course others may take, but as for me, give me liberty or give me death!" Not a sound broke the stillness as the great orator took his seat. His words had reached every heart; there were no timid men now in the Convention; all were ready to give up their lives in the defence of liberty.

**Battle of Lexington.**—Mr. Henry's proposition was adopted; men from every county were enrolled in the army of Virginia, and trained with all diligence in military duties. But these preparations had scarcely begun before news arrived which still more fired the hearts of the Virginians. A battle had been fought on the plains of Lexington, in Massachusetts, between the British forces and the Massachusetts militia, in which the first blood of the Revolutionary War was shed.

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. What is the date of these events?
2. What probably caused the death of Lord Botetourt?
3. What was the character of his successor, and how did he seek to accomplish his ends?
4. Did he succeed in his schemes?
5. Why did he dissolve the Assembly, and did they disperse at his bidding?
6. What fearful evil did Dunmore's schemes bring upon Virginia?
7. What did Colonel Cresap do?
8. Who was Logan?
9. To what point did General Lewis conduct his men?
10. Give an account of the battle of Point Pleasant.
11. Which side gained the victory?
12. Give an account of the treaty at Shawneetown.
13. How did Logan act?
14. Read aloud his letter to Lord Dunmore.
15. What difficulties were gathering over America?
16. Where did the Virginia Convention assemble?
17. Give an account of the condition of affairs in Virginia.
18. Who composed the Convention?
19. What instructions did Augusta and other counties give their representatives?
20. What was Patrick Henry's proposition, and how was it received?
21. What did Patrick Henry answer?
22. Give the closing words of his speech.
23. What was the result of his eloquence?
24. What news from Massachusetts still more fired the hearts of the Virginians?

---

 CHAPTER XXII.

1775.

GOVERNOR DUNMORE'S TREACHERY—THE POWDER AT WILLIAMSBURG—THE REVOLUTION BEGUN—BATTLE OF HAMPTON—ATTACK ON JAMESTOWN—THE TORIES.

**Lord Dunmore's Proceedings.**—When the news of the proceedings of the Convention, followed closely by that of the battle in Massachusetts, reached Lord Dunmore, he became alarmed, and determined, as far as he

could, to take from the Virginians the power of resistance. There was, in the city of Williamsburg, a magazine containing a quantity of powder which belonged to the colony. In the dead of night a body of armed sailors came up to the city, and, by order of Lord Dunmore, removed twenty barrels of powder to their vessel, which lay in York River. This caused the most intense excitement in Williamsburg. Groups of men, with gloomy and angry faces, gathered in knots about the streets. The Common Council sent an address to the governor, asking an explanation; they reminded him that the powder had been placed in the magazine for public use, and that he knew, moreover, that if their slaves, who had been urged by wicked persons to insurrection, should now rise, the people would be utterly defenceless. Governor Dunmore returned a most unsatisfactory answer, and when, a short time afterwards, he heard that the citizens were in arms, in a great passion he swore that if a hair of his head, or of those who had been instrumental in taking away the powder, was touched, he would himself arm the slaves and burn Williamsburg to the ground.

**Public Indignation.**—Those who knew Lord Dunmore best, knew that this was no vain threat: he was wicked enough to commit this or any other outrage; but this knowledge, instead of allaying, increased the excitement, and as the news spread through the country it roused indignation everywhere. A party of citizens entered the magazine at night, and took from it a number of pistols, muskets, and other military articles.

**The "Fowey."**—There were, at this time, lying in the waters of Virginia a number of English war vessels. One of them, the "Fowey," was in York River, directly opposite Yorktown. As soon as the arms were removed from the magazine, Lord Dunmore sent a messenger to the captain of the "Fowey," asking him to send a body of armed men

to protect him in his palace. This request was complied with, and after the departure of the troops, the captain of the "Fowey" addressed a letter to Thomas Nelson, a prominent citizen of Yorktown, who had been very active in soothing the discontent among the people and upholding the authority of the king in the colony. The letter informed Mr. Nelson of Lord Dunmore's request and his compliance with it, and then went on to express a hope that they would meet with no molestation in Williamsburg, as it was his determination, in such an event, to open his guns upon Yorktown, which was full of defenceless women and children. You will easily understand the barbarity of this determination, when you consider that the people in Yorktown were in no way responsible for the acts of the people of Williamsburg, and that it was too late for them to protect themselves by an appeal to them, as the sailors had already gone to Williamsburg.

**Patrick Henry** watched the progress of affairs with intense interest. He believed that the time had arrived for active measures, and allowed himself to be placed in command of a body of volunteers, organized for the purpose of retaking the powder which Lord Dunmore had stolen. The effect was magical. His name aroused the enthusiasm of the entire country. Companies of horse and foot flocked to his standard, and in a short time not less than five thousand men were in arms, ready to march at a moment's warning, and to undertake any work he might order.

**Lord Dunmore** was alarmed, and sent a messenger to Mr. Henry, offering to pay for the powder which had been taken. This being the object which they were determined to accomplish, Mr. Henry and his men, after receiving the money, disbanded and returned in triumph to their homes. This incident, though it ended peacefully, convinced the governor and the British Ministry that Virginia was in

earnest, and that it was dangerous to trifle with her earnestness. In the hope of allaying the excitement, Lord Dunmore summoned a meeting of the Assembly on the 1st day of June. This was the last meeting of the House of Burgesses; the next time these patriots assembled it was as a Legislature, to make laws for their government without regard to royal authority.

**The Burgesses assemble.**—In obedience to this summons, the Burgesses arrived in Williamsburg, when their serious, resolved faces showed their sense of coming danger. Many of them wore hunting-shirts, and brought in their hands the rifles which were afterwards used upon the field of battle. At the opening of the session the governor made a very courteous speech, in which he said that England was ready to hold out the olive-branch of peace, provided the Virginians would agree to pay their proportion of the public debt of the mother-country. If this offer had been made at an earlier period, there is little doubt that it would have been accepted; but Virginia began to be conscious of her strength, and was in no mood to be conciliated by half measures. Thomas Jefferson presented a paper to the House, in which he declared that the people of Virginia had a right to bestow their money where they pleased, and that they would not be forced by taxation or otherwise to pour it into the treasury of England, who had invaded their country by sea and land, and from whom they had nothing to expect but injustice and oppression, but in spite of whom they intended, by the help of heaven, to gain their rights.

**An Infamous Plot.**—Soon after this the Virginians were further inflamed by the discovery of an infamous plot of Lord Dunmore's for destroying his opponents in the Assembly. On the night of the 5th of June several young men went into the magazine at Williamsburg for the purpose of getting arms. As they passed the door a

cord attached to it fired off a spring-gun, by which one of the men had his shoulder torn to pieces, and another lost three of his fingers. When this catastrophe became known, the fact was recalled that Lord Dunmore had always kept the key of the magazine, and had that very day officially insisted upon giving it into the possession of the House of Burgesses, in order that they might investigate the removal of the gunpowder.

**Suspicion being thus aroused**, an examination was forthwith made, and the diabolical plot revealed itself. Three or four barrels of gunpowder were found concealed under the floor of the magazine, intended to be used, doubtless, as a mine to blow up the committee appointed to investigate the matter of the powder removal. The indignation of the people at this discovery was extreme, and there is no telling what punishment they might not have inflicted upon the wicked governor, had he not taken the alarm and fled from the palace with his wife and servants. He took refuge on board the "Fowey," at Yorktown. The House of Burgesses despatched a message to him assuring him of safety, and of their readiness to unite with him in restoring order to the country. He could not be induced to trust his precious person in their hands, but sent the House an insolent order to come on board the "Fowey" to consult with him there. Of course this was declined; all correspondence between Dunmore and the Assembly ceased, and soon afterwards the House of Burgesses adjourned. With it passed away forever the royal authority in Virginia.

**The War begins.**—Before their separation, the members agreed to meet in convention at Richmond, and there they instituted vigorous measures for arming Virginia. War was no longer a matter of doubt. Washington (who may be termed the sword of Virginia, as Patrick Henry was her tongue and Thomas Jefferson her pen) was with

the main army in the North,—having been appointed Commander-in-Chief of the Continental Army by Congress, June 15. 1775,—where the Revolution had fairly commenced. Arrangements for the defence of Virginia were not begun a moment too soon, for the malignant and treacherous Dunmore was taking every step for her total ruin. He had sailed out of York River in the “Fowey,” and had fixed his head-quarters at Norfolk, then the most flourishing town in Virginia. Under his command, besides the “Fowey,” were three other vessels,—the “Mereury,” the “Kingfisher,” and the “Otto,”—besides a number of smaller vessels.

**The Victory at Hampton.**—Now look on your maps for Norfolk; a short distance off, and at the end of the peninsula between York and James Rivers, you will see the little town of Hampton. Here the first battle in Virginia was fought. For some time the small vessels of Lord Dunmore had been harassing the coast, plundering the people and destroying their property, and the town of Hampton was daily expecting an attack. The people made such simple arrangements for their defence as their limited means allowed. Remember that Virginia had no navy and no regularly organized army, and was in these respects no match for the English under Lord Dunmore. But the battle is not always with the strong, and vigilance, activity, and bravery in a good cause sometimes make up for the difference in numbers.

**Colonel Woodford**, with the Culpeper riflemen, numbering one hundred men, hearing of the expected attack, marched all night through a heavy rain, and at eight o'clock on the morning of the 25th of October was ready to aid the gallant militia at Hampton in repelling the attack. He found them emboldened by a slight success they had met with the day before, when six tenders full of armed men under Captain Squires had approached the town, and not expecting any opposition, had landed under a heavy

fire to cover their attack. To their surprise, they were received by a shower of rifle-bullets; marksmen concealed behind fences and in the town poured a precise and deadly fire upon them, and they were glad to escape to their boats, which they did not accomplish without the loss of a great many men.

**The Virginians**, reinforced by Colonel Woodford and his riflemen, awaited quietly the second attack. They had sunk obstructions in the river immediately in front of the town, but these the British removed in the night, and in the morning they discovered the fleet drawn up in the harbor with the guns bearing upon the town. Do not forget that in this fight the Virginians had no fire-arms but their rifles to oppose the English cannon. When the cannonade commenced, the riflemen drew close to the water's edge, and concealing themselves behind trees, bushes, houses, and fences, opened their unerring fire upon the British vessels. The men at the guns were killed, and not a sailor touched a sail without being shot by the deadly balls from the Virginia rifles. Soon confusion was manifested upon the British decks. It was impossible to guide the vessels or to man the guns, because of the fatal precision of the Virginia riflemen. In dismay, the British tried to draw off and make their escape into the bay. Some succeeded, but two of the tenders drifted ashore and were captured, with a great many prisoners. There can be no doubt as to which was the victorious party in this the first battle of the Revolution upon the soil of Virginia; it was with great difficulty that any of the vessels escaped. A number of men went down to a narrow channel to oppose the egress of the British into the bay, and the whole fleet would have been captured but for the report that a large body of the British were advancing from another direction. The Virginians retreated and the vessels escaped.

**Dunmore's next Proceedings.**—Soon afterwards an

attack made by Dunmore upon Jamestown was repelled with great spirit. Alarmed at the boldness everywhere



ATTACK ON HAMPTON.

manifested, and seeing the great necessity for striking a blow that would create terror and discouragement, Dunmore left Norfolk and went to Princess Anne County, to

capture some cannon which belonged to the colonists. He took with him a large force, composed of regulars, fugitive slaves, and *Tories* (the name given to those who took the part of England against their own countrymen). Encountering a body of Virginia militia under Colonel Hutchings, they attacked them suddenly, threw them into confusion, and the Virginians retreated, leaving Colonel Hutchings wounded upon the field.

**His Proclamation.**—One would think from Lord Dunmore's exultation over this slight success that all opposition had been overcome; and, emboldened by it, he issued a proclamation commanding everybody to return to their allegiance to his Majesty the king, under penalty of being declared traitors and having their property confiscated. This, so far from striking terror to the hearts of the colonists, as he expected it would do, had just the opposite effect; for the Virginians everywhere left their ordinary employments and flocked to arms, and the difficulty of the committee on military affairs was not how to obtain men, but to furnish them arms and ammunition.

---

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. In what year did these events take place?
2. What effect did the news have on Lord Dunmore?
3. What steps did he take to reduce the Virginians to helplessness?
4. What did the Council do, and what reply did Dunmore make?
5. What effect did this have upon the citizens?
6. What was Lord Dunmore's next step, and how was he aided in his designs by the captain of the "Fowey"?
7. How did Patrick Henry interfere at this juncture, and with what effect?
8. What was the effect of these proceedings on the governor?
9. Give an account of the meeting of the House of Burgesses.
10. Did they accept terms from England?
11. What plot was now discovered, and how?
12. What did Lord Dunmore do?
13. Give an account of the adjournment of the last House of Burgesses.

14. How did the people of Virginia employ themselves?
  15. Who were the three most influential men in Virginia, and how may they be described?
  16. To what position was Washington called, and when?
  17. What was Lord Dunmore's situation?
  18. Give an account of the first battle of the Revolution in Virginia.
  19. Which side had the advantage in numbers and munitions of war?
  20. Who commanded the Virginians?
  21. Which side gained the victory?
  22. Who were the Tories?
  23. What slight advantage did Dunmore soon after gain?
  24. What effect did this success have upon the opposing parties?
- 

## CHAPTER XXIII.

1775.—CONTINUED.

DUNMORE INCITES THE INDIANS TO THE MASSACRE OF THE WHITES — BATTLE OF GREAT BRIDGE — NORFOLK BURNED—GWYNN'S ISLAND.

**Dunmore's Infamous Plot.**—An event now occurred which exasperated the people still more against the infamous Dunmore. A man named Connelly, who was suspected of carrying communications from Dunmore to the British commander, General Gage, at Boston, was arrested at Hagerstown, Maryland. Upon searching his baggage, a large sum of money was found, and the outline of a scheme for the ruin of Virginia. There was a letter from Dunmore, addressed to White-Eyes, an Indian chief, written in the figurative and flowery style which he supposed would please the Indians. He begs his "dear brother, Captain White-Eyes," to call together Cornstalk and all the other chiefs, and entreats them to take up the hatchet against the "Long Knives" (which was their name for the Virginians). As a reward for this, he promised them rich presents and ample protection, in addition to the money

sent by Connelly. Comment is unnecessary; for how can we sufficiently condemn the man who, not content with rousing the slaves to fight against their masters, was now inciting savages to bring the tomahawk and scalping-knife upon the defenceless inhabitants of Virginia? Happily, his machinations were defeated.

**The Opposing Armies.**—About twelve miles from Norfolk, the Great Bridge crossed a branch of Elizabeth River. It was surrounded by a swamp, through which a road led to the city. On a little piece of firm ground on the Norfolk side Lord Dunmore had erected a fort which commanded the bridge. The Virginians took possession of a small village a short distance off. In this state the two armies remained for several days, watching each other, and prepared to seize upon any circumstance which would give one the advantage over the other. This Great Bridge was looked upon as a very important point, commanding the possession of the city of Norfolk.

**A Virginian Stratagem.**—In order to precipitate a contest, the Virginians had recourse to a stratagem. A negro boy, belonging to Major Marshall, was sent to Lord Dunmore. He represented himself as a deserter, and reported that the Virginians had only three hundred "shirt men," a term used to distinguish the patriots, whose only uniform was the graceful hunting-shirt, which afterwards became so celebrated in the Revolution. Believing this story, Dunmore gave vent to his exultation, as he thought that he saw before him the opportunity of wreaking vengeance upon the Virginians. He mustered his whole force, and gave the order for marching out in the night and forcing the breastworks of his hated foe. In order to stimulate his troops to desperate deeds he told them that the Virginians were no better than savages, and were wanting in courage and determination; that in all probability they would not stand fire at all; but if by any chance

they were permitted to triumph, the English need expect no quarter, as they would be scalped according to the rules of savage warfare.

**The British defeated.**—Early in the morning of December 9, the Virginians beheld the enemy advancing towards their breastworks. They were commanded by Captain Fordyce, a brave officer. Waving his cap over his head, he led his men, in the face of a terrible fire which ran all along the American lines, directly up to the breastworks. He received a shot in the knee and fell forward, but jumping up, he brushed his knee as if he had only stumbled. In a moment afterwards he fell again, pierced by fourteen bullets. The death of their commander threw everything into confusion. The officer next in command to Fordyce was mortally wounded; other officers were prostrate with wounds, and many privates had fallen. In this desperate situation a precipitate retreat towards their fort at Norfolk was the only resource left to the English.

**Pursuit.**—But they were not allowed to escape without a vigorous pursuit. It was conducted by the brave Colonel Stevens, who captured many prisoners, and, what was still more valuable, two pieces of cannon. The loss of the British in this engagement was one hundred and two killed and wounded. One of the Virginians, writing of the scene, says, "I saw the horrors of war in perfection, worse than can be imagined: ten and twelve bullets through many, limbs broken in two or three places, brains turning out. Good God! what will satisfy the governor? The only damage to our men was a wound in the finger of one of them."

**Virginian Humanity.**—After the account they had received of the savage barbarity they might expect from the Virginians, the English soldiers who fell into their hands were astonished to find themselves not only humanely but courteously treated. One poor fellow who lay wounded

upon the field, seeing his captor approach, cried out, "For God's sake, do not scalp me!" He was answered, "Put your arm around my neck, and I will show you what I intend to do." Taking him in his arms, he bore him tenderly along till he laid him down within the breastworks. The gallant Fordyce was buried with military honors. Lieutenant Battul, the second in command, wounded and a prisoner, sent a letter under a flag of truce to his comrades, in which he gratefully acknowledged the kindness and courtesy he had received.

**The Virginia Convention** at their next meeting voted a letter of approbation to Colonel Woodford, the officer in command of the patriots, and instructed him always to treat the vanquished with lenity and kindness. Such conduct on the part of the Virginians cannot be too much admired. The Convention obeyed the Scripture injunction to "return evil with good;" as Dunmore had not only heaped insult and contumely upon them, but had basely plotted their destruction by treachery, fire, and sword, by the furious savage and the brutal slave. We may well feel proud of a descent from such noble and generous spirits as the patriots of the Revolution.

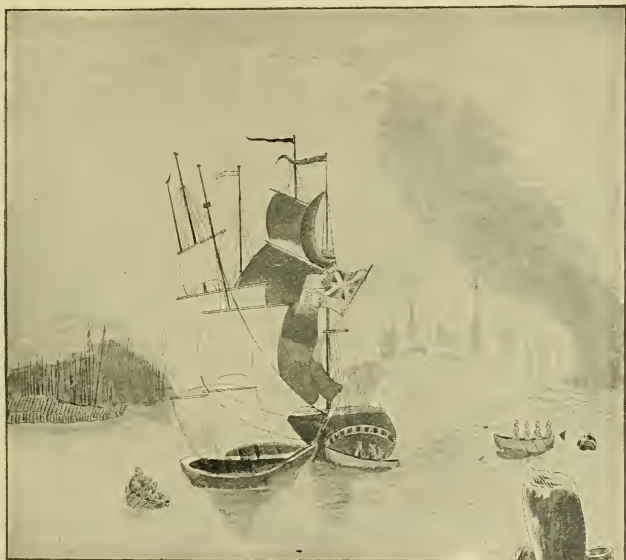
**Dunmore's Cowardice.**—Nothing could exceed the rage of Lord Dunmore at this defeat; he raved like a madman, and threatened to hang the messenger who brought him the tidings, but there was no time for the indulgence of passion. Couriers arrived, saying that Woodford with his men was approaching Norfolk, as there was nothing now to obstruct his progress. Men, women, and children crowded the streets, entreating help; for during the long occupation of the city by British troops the Tories had flocked into it from all parts of the State, and naturally feared to meet their injured countrymen. But they could hope for nothing from Lord Dunmore, who was brave enough when dan-

ger was at a distance, but whose cowardly heart quailed at its approach. He measured his fears by his deserts, and thinking only of his own safety, went hastily abroad a man-of-war in the harbor. All the Tories who could took refuge on the English fleet.

**Norfolk occupied.**—Meanwhile, Woodford had been reinforced by Colonel Howe, of North Carolina, who brought with him four hundred fresh troops. They took possession of Norfolk without opposition, and were warmly welcomed by those brave citizens who had remained faithful to their country in its hour of trial. Woodford issued a proclamation offering protection to the country people, and inviting them to bring their supplies into the town. We read of but one punishment meted out to those who had been most active in betraying their country. Such of them as were taken in arms were sent to places of confinement handcuffed with their negro fellow-soldiers; this was considered but just, they having fought against their country upon equal terms with the negroes.

**Dunmore's Requisitions.**—It might now be hoped, and naturally expected, that Dunmore, having retired from the town, would not seek to molest or injure it in any way, particularly as he knew that a large portion of its inhabitants were friendly to him; but what did he care for his friends? His kindly consideration never went beyond himself. He at first contented himself with idle threats and clamors for provisions. He had been so long accustomed to luxuries, that he could ill bear being reduced to the naval stores, and reinforced his larder constantly by marauding upon the unprotected plantations and towns upon the rivers; but even this did not satisfy him; he must have those luxuries which the city of Norfolk alone could afford him, and he sent a message to the commanders that he would be sorry to fire upon the town, but that he should do so unless a plentiful supply of pro-

visions were sent to him and his men. This of course was refused; but a supply was continually sent for the captain's private table, which did not satisfy the unreasonable commander, and was made the excuse for burning the city of Norfolk to the ground.



BURNING OF NORFOLK.

**Norfolk bombarded and burned.—**

This happened on the 1st day of January, 1776, a year which from its beginning to its end was replete with momentous events to the people of America. Between three and four o'clock in the afternoon the English opened a heavy cannonade upon the devoted city; under cover of this, some sailors landed and set fire to a number



of wooden houses upon the wharves. The efforts of the Americans to stop the conflagration were unsuccessful; the wind was against them and blew fiercely from the shore, carrying the burning timbers into the heart of the town. The horrors of the scene were heightened by the continuous roar of the cannon from the ships and the musketry from the shore; for fighting was going on above the ruins of the houses. The intrepid Stevens added to his fame in this affair, as he rushed to the water's side and drove back a large party of British who had just landed, and compelled them, amidst slaughter, to retreat. The fire lasted for three days, and nine-tenths of this, the most flourishing and richest town in Virginia, were destroyed. Its beautiful harbor and other natural advantages had promoted its growth, and wealth had poured in upon it. Such was the great catastrophe which deprived four thousand people of their homes.

**Patriotism.**—Those who were truly Virginian were too much interested in the success of their struggle to mind mere personal loss. One of these patriots wrote to a friend upon this occasion, "We do not care for our towns, and the destruction of our houses does not cost us a sigh. I have long since given up mine as lost; and I feel such indignation against the authors of our calamities, and such concern for the public at large, that I cannot think of my own puny person and insignificant affairs."

**A Piratical Cruise.**—And now the career of the wretched Dunmore was happily drawing to a close. His fleet consisted not only of men-of-war, but of more than fifty transports, filled with unhappy Tories and negroes and a rabble of convicts and other low characters, all of whom had to be fed. So he cruised up and down the bay, landing at one place, burning a house, stealing private property at another, and committing depredations of every sort after his own fashion.

**General Lee.**—Just at this time Congress appointed Major-General Charles Lee to the command of the forces in Virginia. This celebrated person was an Englishman by birth, a soldier of fortune, of an adventurous spirit, brave, and talented, but of a temper which afterwards was the cause of much trouble in the army. In his later career he aspired to the position of commander-in-chief, and his jealousy of Washington led to such acts of insubordination that he was finally court-martialled and dismissed from the army.

**Lee** saw that the only way to deal with Dunmore was to cut off his supplies; so he ordered that all the inhabitants near to the sea-coast, with their live stock and other property, should be removed to the interior; and that any Virginian who should be found in correspondence with the enemy should be treated as a traitor, and be sent a handcuffed prisoner to Williamsburg. These seemed to be harsh measures, but they were necessary commands, and their wisdom was soon evident, for Lord Dunmore found himself and companions in imminent danger of starvation. But the *brave* Dunmore was not easily daunted in pursuit of creature comforts.

**Gwynn's Island.**—There lies at the mouth of the river Piankatank, in Matthews County, a beautiful island, now called Gwynn's Island. It contains about two thousand acres of land, its natural fertility had been greatly improved by cultivation, and it abounded in fruits, vegetables, fine water, cattle, and everything that could make it a desirable asylum for the floating colony of Lord Dunmore. General Lee had stationed his vigilant soldiers along the shore, to keep watch over the English fleet and prevent any landing from it. The guards were surprised to see the whole flotilla come out of Hampton Roads, one May morning, and, after sailing in one direction, and then in another, until the watchers were completely puzzled,

suddenly put on all sail and move rapidly up the bay. Before the object of these manœuvres could be guessed the fleet had entered the mouth of Rappahannock River, and the motley crew had occupied and intrenched themselves on Gwynn's Island. They were not to remain masters of this Eden; the mark of Cain was imprinted on their foreheads, and the Virginians could not rest satisfied while this degraded band, with their execrated leader, found refuge within their territory.

**The Fleet repulsed.**—General Andrew Lewis with a party of men was sent to dislodge them. This brave officer had already distinguished himself in the fight with the Indians at Mount Pleasant, and he joyfully accepted a position which would give him the opportunity of chastising one who had been a greater enemy to Virginia than all of the savages combined. He threw up intrenchments on a point of land opposite Gwynn's Island, and upon these mounted his great guns. The enemy, intrenched within fortifications on the island, with their ships lying in the deep waters around, could be plainly seen. One of the ships, the "Dunmore," lay about five hundred yards from the shore. General Lewis himself opened the engagement by firing a gun at this vessel, aboard of which was the governor. The great cannon gave a roar as it sent out its terrible messenger, which passed directly through the hull of the vessel and did great damage. It was followed by another ball, and then another, each of which did its duty nobly, breaking the timber and scattering splinters in every direction. One of the latter wounded Dunmore, smashed his china around him, and so frightened his lordship that he cried out, "Good God! that ever I should have come to this." The fight did not last very long. The captains of the vessels were glad enough to cut their cables and make off in great haste, and yet they would all have been captured had not the wind favored their retreat.

**General Lewis** could not immediately go over to the island for the want of boats; but the next morning, having collected a sufficient number to transport his troops, he crossed over. A terrible scene met his eyes. During the month in which Dunmore had held possession of this beautiful island, the small-pox and other diseases had committed such ravages upon his miserable crew that five hundred are supposed to have died; corpses in a state of putrefaction lay strewed along the shore in half-dug trenches, and miserable dying creatures had crawled to the water's edge to beg that they might be saved from death. The enemy in their haste left behind them a great deal of valuable property, which fell into the hands of the victors.

**Dunmore's Final Proceedings.**—Driven from this retreat, Dunmore found another on St. George's Island in the Potomac River, and this too he was soon compelled to abandon. While ascending the river, he landed near the mouth of Acquia Creek, and wantonly burnt a beautiful dwelling belonging to Mr. Brent, and was proceeding to destroy a valuable mill hard by, when the Prince William militia arrived and drove him to his boats. The fleet dropped down the river on the ensuing day, and some of his vessels, driven ashore by a gale of wind, were lost. As one resource after another failed him, his malignant spirit began to break. The excessive heat of the season, the impurity of the water, the bad quality and scanty supply of provisions, engendered fearful diseases in the crowded vessels, which hourly plunged numbers into a watery grave. Thus loaded with the execrations of the people he had been appointed to govern, defeated in all his schemes for their ruin, hunted from place to place by their just resentment, Dunmore found himself a fugitive from the land where he had hoped to plant the standard of victory, and upon whose people he had sought to wreak a terrible vengeance. He returned to England, and here

our history leaves him. He never returned to the shores of Virginia, and her people will never forget the events which connected him with her history.

---

### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. What is the date of these events?
2. What discovery was made which still further exasperated the Virginians against Dunmore?
3. Where was the Great Bridge, and what was its importance?
4. To what stratagem did the Virginians resort in order to bring on the fight?
5. How did Lord Dunmore receive the news?
6. How did he seek to stimulate his troops?
7. Who commanded the English?
8. Give an account of their advance.
9. Give an account of the battle.
10. How is the scene described?
11. How did the victors behave to their prisoners?
12. What did the Virginia Convention do?
13. How did Lord Dunmore behave under defeat?
14. What course did he adopt?
15. Give an account of the occupation of Norfolk by the Virginia troops
16. What was Dunmore's course?
17. What dastardly revenge did he next take?
18. Give an account of the burning of Norfolk.
19. How did the patriots feel about the loss of their property?
20. What class of persons composed Dunmore's fleet?
21. Who was appointed to the command of the Virginia forces?
22. What steps did he take?
23. Describe the retreat of Dunmore to Gwynn's Island.
24. What steps were taken to dislodge him?
25. Describe the battle and retreat of Dunmore.
26. What condition of affairs was discovered on the island?
27. Where did Dunmore next go?
28. What was the end of his story?

## CHAPTER XXIV.

1776.

THE GENERAL CONVENTION MEETS AT WILLIAMSBURG—DECLARATION OF RIGHTS—DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE—PATRICK HENRY CHOSEN GOVERNOR—THE SEAL OF VIRGINIA—RELIGIOUS FREEDOM DECLARED—THE LAW OF PRIMOGENITURE.

**Virginia** was now fairly launched in the War of the Revolution. She had sought peace, but her plea having been rejected, she no longer wished for it, unless freedom came hand in hand with it. The blood of her sons had been shed, her towns had been desolated, and her property pillaged by the king's troops. More than once the British had been forced to acknowledge her victory over them upon hard-fought fields, and now, while her soldiers were winning freedom with the sword, her statesmen were carving out for her a government worthy to last through all succeeding generations.

**A Convention**, composed of delegates from all of the counties of Virginia, met at Williamsburg in May, 1776, to consider the best course for Virginia to take in this crisis. On the 15th of the month, Mr. Archibald Cary, of Chesterfield, offered a resolution to the following effect: that forasmuch as all the efforts of the united colonies had failed to obtain from the king and Parliament of Great Britain that security for life and property which they had a right to demand, and as all their representations and petitions for a redress of their grievances had been met by an imperious and vindictive administration with increased insult and oppression and a vigorous attempt to secure their total destruction, and as the representative of the king in this colony had retired on board an armed ship and instituted a savage war upon them, they had no alter-

native but abject submission to or total separation from Great Britain: "therefore we unanimously resolve, appealing to the Searcher of hearts for help in defending the justice of our cause, that the delegates appointed to represent this colony in the General Congress be instructed to propose to that body to declare the united colonies free and independent States, absolved from all allegiance to or dependence on Great Britain, and to give the assent of this colony to any measure deemed necessary for the good of the whole, provided the power of forming a government for, and the regulations of, each colony be left to the respective Legislatures of each colony." It was further unanimously resolved that "a committee be appointed to prepare a Declaration of Rights and such a plan of government as shall be most likely to maintain law and order and secure substantial and equal benefit and liberty to the people."

**George Mason**, who wrote the Bill of State Rights in 1776, also drew up a constitution for the State, which was adopted five days before the Declaration of Independence. Virginia asserted her independence of Great Britain on June 29, 1776, and the United States on the 4th of July following. One of Virginia's most gifted sons \* thus pictures the grand act by which Virginia addressed herself to the solemn and responsible act of self-government: "On that day Virginia exhibited to the world a grand spectacle; it was on that day that she renounced her colonial dependence on Great Britain, and separated herself from that kingdom. Then it was that, bursting the manacles of a foreign tyranny, she in the same moment imposed upon herself the salutary restraints of law and order. In that moment she commenced the work of forming a government complete within itself, and having perfected that work, she, on the 29th of June in the same year, performed the

---

\* Judge Beverley Tucker.

highest functions of independent sovereignty by adopting, ordaining, and establishing the Constitution under which all of us were born! Then it was that, sufficient to herself for all the purposes of government, she prescribed that oath of fealty and allegiance to her sole and separate sovereignty, which all of us who have held any office under her authority have solemnly called upon the Searcher of hearts to witness and record. At that time it could not be certainly known that the other colonies would take the same decisive step. It was indeed expected. In the same breath in which Virginia had declared her independence she had advised it. She had instructed her delegates in the General Congress to urge it, and it was by the voice of one of her sons,\* whose name will ever live in history, that the word of power was spoken at which the chains that bound the colonies to the parent kingdom fell asunder, as flax that severs at the touch of fire. But even then, and while the terms of the general Declaration of Independence were yet unsettled, hers had already gone forth. The voice of her defiance was already ringing in the ears of the tyrant, hers was the cry that determined him to the strife, hers was the shout that invited his vengeance. ‘Me! me! Adsum qui feci. In me convertite ferrum!’”†

Mr. George Mason, of Gunston Hall, on the Potomac, was a retiring country gentleman, not ambitious of political prominence, but destined by Providence to do a work for Virginia which must always place him in the front rank as a patriot and a man of genius, for it was he who, as we have seen, framed both the Bill of Rights and the first Constitution for the government of the State.

**In the Declaration of Rights** the principle was maintained that all men being entitled to certain rights,—

---

\* Thomas Jefferson.

† Translation: “Me! me! Here am I who have done it; against *me* direct thy sword.”

namely, the enjoyment of life and liberty, the means of acquiring and possessing property, and of obtaining happiness and safety,—the government of a country ought to be administered for the protection of the people and the maintenance of these rights, and that “whereas, George the Third, King of Great Britain, had endeavored to pervert the government of Virginia into an insupportable tyranny, by imposing taxes without the consent of the people, by cutting off their trade with all parts of the world, by plundering their seas, ravaging their coasts, burning their towns, and destroying their lives; by inciting the negroes to rise in arms against them, and endeavoring to bring upon the inhabitants of the frontiers the merciless Indian savages, whose known rule of warfare is an utter destruction of all ages, sexes, and condition of existence, and by answering their repeated petitions for redress by a repetition of injuries,—that for these and many other acts of misrule and tyranny, the government of Virginia, as exercised under the crown of Great Britain, is totally dissolved.”

**Public rejoicing.**—This decisive step produced the greatest benefit; it removed all doubt and uncertainty from the public mind; the people felt that separation from Great Britain was a fixed fact, and demonstrations of joy everywhere showed the popular approval of the course the Convention had taken. At Williamsburg military parades, discharges of artillery, dinners, toasts, and general illuminations showed the pleasure which both the citizens and soldiers felt at the decisive step which dissolved their union with a tyrannical and unnatural mother.

**Declaration of Independence.**—The Declaration of Rights in Virginia was soon followed by the Declaration of Independence, in which all of the American colonies united. This was written by Thomas Jefferson, to whom, you will remember, we have given the title of the “Pen of

Virginia." It expressed the same sentiments as the Declaration of Rights, which you know was the work of George Mason. It was adopted on the 4th of July, 1776. Each colony then framed a constitution for its separate government. This was to consist of a governor and a legislature; the duty of the latter was to make laws, and that of the governor to execute them. Besides, there were to be three different courts, which were to make decisions in doubtful cases. For instance, the legislature makes a law that every murderer must hang; when a man becomes liable to this penalty, he is tried first by the lowest court, and if condemned, he has a right to demand a trial by a second court, and then again by a third; if all of the courts find him guilty of murder, he is condemned to die, and the governor has to order his execution.

**Patrick Henry was chosen the first governor of Virginia.** His appointment was received by all classes with the greatest satisfaction. A committee was appointed to wait upon him and inform him of the honor which had been conferred upon him. The regiments which he had commanded since the beginning of the troubles congratulated him in the warmest terms upon his unsolicited election "to the highest honor which a free people could bestow." "Once happy under your military command," they said, "we hope for more extended blessings under your civil administration; our hearts are willing and our arms are ready to support your authority as chief magistrate, happy that we have lived to see the day when freedom and equal rights, established by the voice of the people, shall prevail throughout the land." In returning thanks for this address, so expressive of their confidence and affection, after announcing his determination to do all in his power for the safety, dignity, and happiness of the new commonwealth of Virginia, the governor went on to say that, whilst the officers of the

State were exerting themselves to create such a form of government as would best conduce to the happiness



THE MILITARY CONGRATULATING PATRICK HENRY UPON HIS ELECTION.

and welfare of the people, it remained for them, the soldiers, to save by their valor all that was most precious to mankind. "Go on, gentlemen," he said, "to

finish the great work which you have so nobly and successfully begun; convince tyrants that they *shall* bleed. and that you *will* bleed to the last drop before their wicked schemes find success."

**Patriotic Enthusiasm.**—And now, perhaps, you will wonder that these brave young colonists were not dismayed at the perils which surrounded them. In their weakness they had defied the strongest power in Europe; yet their hearts beat high. What to them was the smallness of their army and their empty treasury? Free and independent they were determined to live, or not to live at all.

**All through the country** the same enthusiasm was manifested which characterized Virginia. The American army was then at New York. The Declaration was read to each brigade; it was listened to in respectful silence, which was followed by bursts of enthusiastic applause. In the evening the equestrian statue of George III., which had been erected six years before, was laid prostrate, and the lead of which it was composed was converted into bullets to fight him with. Rather a comical idea, don't you think? to make old George assist in his own destruction.

**In Boston, Philadelphia, and Baltimore** demonstrations even more enthusiastic than those we have detailed occurred. Every trace of royalty was obliterated; you would have thought that the people were taking off the sword of victory instead of putting it on to fight for victory.

**The Seal of Virginia.**—After the constitution of Virginia had been adopted, the subject of interest which next engaged her statesmen was the choice of a device and motto for her seal; for every country, you know, has its seal. A great many suggestions were made, but at length, after much discussion, one proposed by Mr. George Wythe was chosen. You have doubtless seen it. A female figure,

resting on a spear with one hand and holding a sword in the other, represents Virtue; her foot rests upon the neck of Tyranny, represented by a prostrate man, with a crown



VIRGINIA.

falling from his head, a broken chain in his left hand, and a scourge in his right. Over the head of the female figure is engraved the words "*Sic Semper Tyrannis*," which means "Thus always to tyrants," and underneath, "Virginia."

#### Laws against Dissenters.—

The convention which met this memorable year did not complete its work. I have told you more than once in the course of this history that the early government of Virginia was formed after the model of that in England. In the first place, the English or Episcopal was the established Church, and although many efforts had been made to do away with some of the restrictions imposed upon other denominations, and to some extent tolerance had been granted, yet the laws against "Dissenters" (as all who were not members of the Church of England were called) were still in full force, and were very oppressive. All dissenting congregations had to support not only their own ministers, but also had to contribute to the support of the Episcopal Church. Moreover, they were liable to be tried and punished for serving God through the forms they most approved. All of the different religious sects were now represented in Virginia, and there was much bitterness of feeling between them and the established Church. That peaceable sect called Quakers, strange to tell, were held in particular aversion and subjected to special persecution.

**Liberty of Conscience.**—But now a spirit of freedom pervaded all classes, and the time had come to apply the

same spirit to religion. The Legislature of Virginia was beset with petitions from dissenting denominations that the laws which placed one church above another might be repealed, and that a free people might worship God by whatever form they thought best. Stormy were the discussions between the members advocating the different sides of this question. Edmund Pendleton, the venerable Speaker of the House, was a strenuous advocate for the Episcopal Church, while Thomas Jefferson, in the spirit in which Mason dictated the Declaration of Rights for Virginia and he himself the Declaration of Independence for America, strongly urged religious freedom. After some time he succeeded in establishing his views, and that most valuable of all liberty, liberty of conscience, was secured to a free people.

**Primogeniture.**—Another English law which had been in force in Virginia up to this time remained to be repealed; of this I must tell you. It was called the law of “Primogeniture.” In England, when a rich man dies, he does not divide his property equally among his children, but the great bulk of it descends to his eldest son, who is called his “heir.” The advantage of this is that it prevents the property from being cut up, and keeps it in the family for centuries; but the disadvantages are greater than the advantages; for while it places one son, not from any merit of his own, in wealth and luxury, it forces the others, without fault of theirs, to a life of comparative poverty and toil. This unjust law was now repealed,—that is, done away with,—and all the members of one family were placed on an equal footing. I have been thus particular to make you comprehend these things, which may at first seem a little dull to you, because they constitute a very important part of the history of Virginia, and show you by what rapid strides her government came forth from the despotism of the British monarchy into the full, free light of constitutional freedom.

## HISTORY OF VIRGINIA.

### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. In what year did these events take place?
  2. What was now the situation of Virginia?
  3. What was the action of the General Convention?
  4. Who wrote the Declaration of Rights?
  5. What did it lay down as a principle?
  6. How had the rights of the colony been violated?
  7. In view of these things what did the paper declare?
  8. What effect did this step produce?
  9. What followed the Declaration of Rights?
  10. Who wrote the Declaration of Independence?
  11. When was it adopted?
  12. What was the character of the State constitutions?
  13. Who was the first governor of Virginia?
  14. In what terms did his soldiers congratulate him?
  15. What did he answer?
  16. How did the colonies regard their situation?
  17. How was the Declaration of Independence received?
  18. Who furnished the device for the seal of Virginia?
  19. Describe it.
  20. What church had been the established Church of Virginia, and why?
  21. What objections were now made to this?
  22. What controversies arose, and how did they end?
  23. What other English law had been in force in Virginia?
  24. What were the provisions of this law?
  25. Was it repealed?
  26. Why is it necessary for the student of Virginia history to understand these things?
- 

## CHAPTER XXV.

1776-1781.

TRoubles IN THE STATE—FEARS OF A Dictator—LA FAYETTE AND DE KALB ARRIVE—THOMAS JEFFERSON APPOINTED GOVERNOR—BRITISH TROOPS ENTER HAMPTON ROADS—DEFEAT OF GENERAL GATES IN NORTH CAROLINA—CONVENTION TROOPS IN ALBEMARLE.

**Discouragement.**—Virginia, after passing through her first difficulties, was to find by a hard and bitter experience that freedom was not to be obtained without a long

struggle and many discouragements. The terrific sounds of war were now heard throughout the length and breadth of the land. Washington, struggling in vain against the disciplined troops of England, had been defeated at Long Island, and was now retreating through New Jersey and Delaware; while the enemy who followed on his track marked their course with rapine and violence. Fields were wasted, cattle destroyed, and houses burned. It is much easier to plan a great enterprise than to carry it through the midst of dangers. Virginia, for a moment, bent beneath the blast; her Legislature seemed to lose all hope, and to look beyond their present resources for help in this bitter hour.

**A Dictatorship projected.**—One of the members recalled the history of Rome, who, when torn with intestine strife and deluged in blood, put a dictator at her head. Some of the Virginians who were struggling to escape from a tyrannical monarchy talked calmly of giving themselves up to a far more dangerous government, in which the entire power was to be placed in the hands of one man, to be used as he pleased. Strange infatuation! There is little doubt that Patrick Henry was the man thought of to fill the position of dictator, but it is not believed that he countenanced the idea for an instant. During the discussion in the Legislature, the feelings for and against the proposition were bitter in the extreme; the excitement became so great that it is said that the opponents not only would not speak to each other, but would not even walk on the same side of the street. One of the bitterest opposers of the dictatorship was the Speaker of the House, the venerable Archibald Cary, who, meeting the brother-in-law of Patrick Henry one day, addressed him with a great deal of passion and said, "Sir, I am told that your brother wishes to be dictator; tell him for me that the day of his appointment shall be the day of his death, for he shall feel

my dagger in his heart before the sunset of that day!" He was answered that Patrick Henry had never approved that or any other measures which would endanger the liberties of the country. Had he been on the spot, one word from his eloquent tongue would have brought the Assembly to its senses; but he had been obliged by sickness to go some distance into the country, and before he returned the madness of the hour had passed away, and the project was abandoned. The next year he was re-elected governor; the manner in which he had performed the duties of the first term having more than satisfied his friends.

**La Fayette and De Kalb.**—This same year there passed through the State of Virginia, on their way to join the American army in the North, two young foreign noblemen, Marquis de La Fayette, a Frenchman, and Baron De Kalb, a German by birth but a brigadier-general in the French army. These distinguished men, who were about to do battle for American liberty, were received with the greatest enthusiasm by the Virginians. Their stay was brief, as they were anxious to join the army; but they were both destined to revisit Virginia, and La Fayette won most of his laurels in this State during the closing scenes of the Revolution.

**For nearly three years** after this time there was very little fighting in Virginia, although she took her full part in the war by her contributions of men and money. The fortunes of the united colonies during these years were at their lowest ebb; nothing but their determination to be free, or die in the attempt, could have supported them under their dreadful discouragements. There was one gleam of light, however, in the midst of the darkness, and this was a treaty with France, by which she not only acknowledged their independence of England, but promised her assistance in securing it. This was the turning-point in the history of the Revolutionary War, as it had

the double effect of encouraging the Americans and of discouraging the English.

**Jefferson elected Governor.**—At the expiration of his second term of office as Governor of Virginia, Patrick Henry would have been re-elected by the unanimous voice of the people, as there was no one in the State who held more complete sway over the inhabitants than he; but he refused the honor, and Thomas Jefferson was appointed in his place.

**The British successes in the North** were followed by still more decided victories in the South. Thus the English government began to look forward with certainty to the conquest of the entire country. Virginia was regarded as the heart of the rebellion, and it was decided to carry their victorious arms into that State, as the surest way of bringing the war to a speedy conclusion. In May of this year a fleet of armed vessels, under the command of Admiral Collins, and carrying two thousand troops, entered Hampton Roads.

**The Virginians had built a fort** a short distance below Portsmouth, for the defence of Norfolk and Gosport navy-yard; this was the first point of attack. The British fleet attacked it in front, while land forces assaulted it in the rear. It did not hold out long. The Virginians, under Captain Matthews, had no means of defending themselves, so they abandoned the fort and took refuge in the Dismal Swamp. The whole country was thus left open to the British, who did not hesitate to take advantage of the opportunity. Their course was marked by devastation; they burned houses, and destroyed all property which they could not carry away. They burned the town of Suffolk, where there were a great many stores which had been accumulated for the use of the army, and after having laid waste the whole country as far as it was possible, they returned to New York.

**The American Defeat at Camden.**—Though this seemed to be a misfortune to Virginia, yet in the end it was not without its advantages, as for some time her attention had been so constantly directed to the main army that she had forgotten the defence of her own territory; now, however, she saw the impolicy of this inaction, and the Legislature immediately authorized the governor to call twenty thousand militia into the field, if necessary. Nor were they too early in taking these more active measures. General Gates, finding that Lord Cornwallis, the British commander, was already passing through North Carolina on his way to Virginia, determined, if possible, to intercept him. They met at Camden, North Carolina, and the Americans under Gates were totally defeated. Never did American soldiers act more disgracefully than in this battle; and I am sorry to relate that the Virginia militia were among those who ingloriously fled from the field. The brave Colonel Stephens, who commanded them, was almost maddened by their conduct; but in vain he entreated, in vain he even exerted all his personal strength to turn their bayonets again towards the enemy; they were panic-stricken, and even bore him away in their flight. It is said that this defeat was caused by a mistake of General Gates, who had, before this, been a most successful general; and this brings me to a very interesting incident.

**The Saratoga Prisoners.**—Some time prior to these events, while General Gates was in command of a portion of the army in the North, he met the British general Burgoyne at Saratoga, and forced him to surrender with his whole army, consisting of about six thousand men. It is not a part of the history of Virginia to give a full account of this battle, which filled all America with joy; but there is a portion of the story with which we have to do. The prisoners were at first marched to Boston. From this

place they would have been sent to England on their parole, but in the mean time some dissatisfaction arose between the two governments, and it was deemed necessary to keep the prisoners, who were known hereafter as the Convention troops; but what to do with them was a serious question.

**Their Removal to Charlottesville.**—To subsist six thousand men, prisoners, in the city of Boston, was scarcely possible; they must select some place both secure and comfortable for them. After some time, the neighborhood of Charlottesville, Virginia, was chosen. On the top of a ridge, five miles from the town, barracks were built for their accommodation, which cost about twenty thousand dollars; and to these, as soon as possible, the prisoners were transferred, under proper escorts.

**When they first arrived,** considerable fear was felt that so large an increase of population could not be sustained; but such apprehensions were soon removed. The country was very productive, and the planters were glad enough to have purchasers for their crops. Soon everything assumed an air of comfort. The ground around the barracks was laid off in several hundred gardens, which the soldiers amused themselves by enclosing and cultivating. One general, a German, is said to have spent two hundred pounds in garden seeds for the use of his own troops. The officers rented houses in the neighborhood, and in many instances their families joined them. They purchased horses, cows, and sheep, and spent their time in farming, and Governor Jefferson himself acted the hospitable host in devising amusements to make their captivity as pleasant as possible. His own residence was at Monticello, and here the officers would visit him; and he placed his fine library at the disposal of those who were fond of literature. Others who had a taste for music and painting found in him a cultivated companion. Thus Mr.

Jefferson gained over the hearts of these enemies of his country a bloodless victory; and among his letters have been found many from these officers, after their return home, expressing in warm terms their admiration for him.



MONTICELLO.

Years after, while passing through Germany, Mr. Jefferson was recognized by one of the soldiers who had been among these prisoners. The news spread, and he was soon surrounded by officers, who spoke of Virginia with feeling.

But captivity, even under the most favorable circumstances, is not desirable; and notwithstanding the comforts which surrounded the prisoners, desertions became so frequent that, after they had been two years in Albemarle, it was thought necessary to remove them, so part were taken to Fort Frederick, Maryland, and the rest to Winchester, and here we will leave them.

---

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. The events of what years are included in this chapter?
2. What condition had the colonies of America reached?
3. What insane idea was suggested in Virginia?
4. Who was to be chosen dictator?

5. Give on account of the strife of opinion.
6. Where was Patrick Henry during the excitement?
7. What distinguished visitors passed through Virginia?
8. Give a brief review of the history of Virginia for the next three years.
9. Who was elected the next governor of Virginia?
10. What course was the British victories assuming?
11. Tell the story of the fight near Portsmouth.
12. How did the British behave after this victory?
13. What effect did these excesses of the enemy have upon the Virginians?
14. What measures did the Legislature take?
15. Give an account of the battle of Camden.
16. Who were the Convention troops?
17. To what portion of Virginia were they transferred, and why?
18. What preparations were made for their reception?
19. How did the prisoners spend their time?
20. How did Mr. Jefferson behave to them?
21. What happened when Mr. Jefferson was afterwards travelling through Germany?
22. What became of the Convention troops?

---

## CHAPTER XXVI.

### 1781.—CONTINUED.

REVOLUTIONARY WAR TRANSFERRED TO VIRGINIA—RICHMOND ABANDONED—THE TRAITOR ARNOLD—BARON STEUBEN AND GEORGE ROGERS CLARKE—DEATH OF DE KALB—CORNWALLIS MARCHES TOWARDS PETERSBURG—COLONEL TARLETON'S RAID.

**Virginia becomes the Seat of War.**—We have now reached that point in the history of Virginia when the War of the Revolution was in a great degree transferred to her soil. The beginning of this year was signalized by the princely donation which the Legislature made to the Union, which was nothing less than the huge territory north-west of the Ohio River, out of which were formed the States of Ohio, Indiana, and Illinois.

**Richmond threatened.**—On the last day of the old year information was received that twenty-seven British

ships had entered Chesapeake Bay, and were coming up towards the mouth of James River. It is much to be regretted that at this time there was no officer in Virginia to direct her military affairs; had there been, Richmond, the capital of Virginia, would have been rendered impregnable against assault. But General Nelson, who was in command of the Virginia forces, was striving to organize militia in the counties near the coast, and there was no one else who was efficient for the purpose.

**The means of defence in Richmond,** had there been any one to command, would have been amply sufficient. At the foundery, about six miles from the city, there were five tons of gunpowder and other military stores, and in the city there were five brass cannon and plenty of muskets; and the natural situation of the city is so strong, that a few resolute men, under an efficient leader who knew how to make use of the resources at command, could easily have defended the city. But unfortunately these were wanting, and Mr. Jefferson took another view of the situation and determined upon abandoning Richmond to the enemy. He ordered the five brass cannon to be thrown into the river, and set the teamsters and negroes to work loading arms and ammunition, which were driven off to Westham, seven miles from the city. Why it should have been thought a safer place than Richmond it is hard to understand, as nothing was easier for the enemy, if they reached the city, than to go to Westham.

**The Traitor Arnold.**—On the 4th of January news was received that the British had arrived at Westover. They were under the command of the wretched traitor Arnold, who had once been an officer high in rank in the American army, but who accepted a bribe of ten thousand guineas and the rank and pay of brigadier-general in the British army to betray his country and Washington into the hands of their enemy. His plot failed, but he received his reward.

This was the man who now approached the city at the head of nine hundred British soldiers. Nothing could exceed the terror and dismay all through the country when this was known. Families left their houses to the mercy of the enemy, and fled to some place of safety, out of reach of the traitor, the mere mention of whom filled them with terror. The whole country was thus left open to a ruthless enemy, and Arnold landed his forces at Westover and marched without opposition to Richmond. On the evening of the 4th of January, 1781, the governor left Richmond, and his example was followed by most of the inhabitants, and at one o'clock the next day the infamous Arnold entered it.

**Richmond at this time** contained about three hundred houses, and was rapidly extending in size and importance. Arnold at once despatched Lieutenant-Colonel Simcoe to Westham, who destroyed the foundery and military stores at that place. Two days were spent by the army in Richmond, in pillaging and destroying public and private property; the buildings were burnt, the warehouses broken open and emptied of all that they contained. Among other of their contents were a quantity of casks containing spirits; these were emptied into the streets, and the liquor ran down the gutters like water, and it is related that the cows and hogs drinking of it were seen staggering about the streets. What do you think of that as an argument against intemperance?

**Arnold pursued.**—The enemy found the five brass pieces which had been thrown into the river, which they, of course, rendered useless. After having in a few hours done all the injury possible, Arnold and his men leisurely left the city, reached their fleet, and embarked without having met with any opposition. This was a severe humiliation to the capital of the proud commonwealth, and one which was never forgotten. From this time

great exertions were made to place the State in a posture of defence. Arnold did not escape, however, entirely unmolested; some of the vessels ventured up the Appomattox River, and were fiercely attacked by General Smallwood with three hundred militia, armed only with muskets, whereupon they returned precipitately to City Point. General Smallwood pursued them to this place, and having obtained two small cannon, opened upon the ships and drove them down the river.

**Clarke's Ambush.**—There was in the American army a brigadier-general named Baron Steuben, who understood well the art of war. He had undertaken to drill the militia. With a party of these, he marched rapidly down James River, hoping to meet some of Arnold's troops, but he was disappointed, as Arnold was too quick for him. Now there was with Baron Steuben's command an heroic officer, George Rogers Clarke, who was called the "Conqueror of Illinois," as he had by almost incredible bravery and perseverance rescued the whole of that country from the French. He now stepped forward and entreated to be placed in command of two hundred and forty men, with whom he hoped to be able to strike a blow against the departing forces. His request was granted. Placing his men in ambush where Arnold and his troops were landing in the night, he gave them a close volley, which killed seventeen and wounded thirteen men. They were thrown into confusion, but soon recovered and returned the fire. Clarke's force was too small to make any further demonstrations, so Arnold marched on slowly towards Chesapeake Bay, destroying everything in his way except the tobacco, which he carried off with him. He was superseded in command by General Phillips, who made another expedition up the James and Appomattox Rivers, but not without opposition.

**The Virginia forces**, however, were not yet sufficiently

organized to make a successful resistance. Baron Steuben with his militia contested the way most gallantly, but they were obliged to retreat before the enemy, who took pos-



COLONEL CLARKE ATTACKING ARNOLD.



session of Petersburg, and burned the tobacco and some small vessels lying at the wharves. General Phillips despatched Arnold to Chesterfield Court-House, where he destroyed the barracks and burned a quantity of flour; he then rejoined Phillips, and they marched together to Manchester, which is on the opposite side of the river from Richmond, intending to pay that

city another visit. But they found this rather more difficult than they expected.

**La Fayette.**—You remember I told you, some time back, of two gallant noblemen who marched through Virginia to join the forces in the North. One of them, De Kalb, nearly one year before this time, had laid down his life on the fatal field of Camden; the name of the other, La Fayette, is from this period so closely connected with the history of the Revolution in Virginia that you will become well acquainted with him.



LA FAYETTE.

There is no name, except that of Washington, which is dearer to the heart of Americans than that of Marquis de La Fayette. It is hard to find terms of praise or admiration too strong for him. Born of the best blood of France, he early imbibed a love of those principles of liberty which actuated America in her struggles with England. His enthusiasm in her cause was so great that he

would have joined her in the beginning of the war but for the opposition of his friends; he yielded to their opposition, until those dark days when he heard of Washington and his brave troops being driven from State to State before the victorious arms of Great Britain; then this gallant hero determined no longer to allow himself to be controlled by others, but to link his fate, for good or ill, to that of struggling America.

**The Defence of Virginia.**—I have told you of the enthusiasm with which he and his companion had been received in Virginia, and this reception seems to have made a lasting impression on the young hero; for although he fought willingly by the side of Washington, he sought every opportunity to obtain a command in Virginia; and at this most important juncture, Washington, who had the greatest confidence in him, placed in his charge the defence of Virginia, towards which the eyes of both armies were now turning as the future theatre of war.

**Richmond saved.**—La Fayette arrived in Richmond on the 29th of April. Two days afterwards Phillips and Arnold made their appearance at Manchester; but hearing that La Fayette was in command of the city, they abandoned all thought of attacking it, and marched down the river, destroying tobacco, mills, and shipping on the way. Re-embarking at a point called Bermuda Hundred, they proceeded down the river towards Chesapeake Bay; but they were not to leave Virginia so soon as they expected. While they were still sailing down the James, General Phillips received despatches from Lord Cornwallis, the British general who had defeated General Gates at Camden, telling him that he was marching with his whole force as rapidly as he could to form a junction with him at Petersburg. Phillips therefore turned back again, and on the 9th of May re-entered Petersburg.

**Arnold again in Command.**—It was not designed by Providence, however, that General Phillips should any longer share either the triumphs or the defeats of the British army, as he died at Petersburg four days after entering it, and Arnold again assumed command. So great was the hatred of Virginians towards this man, that the governor issued a proclamation offering a reward of five thousand guineas to any one who should capture him; but the traitor, knowing his danger, never

trusted himself out of his quarters without a large body-guard.

**Cornwallis in Virginia.**—On the 25th of April, Cornwallis marched towards Halifax, sending before him the dashing cavalry officer Colonel Tarleton, with one hundred and eighty dragoons, to scour the country in front of him. They met with no opposition, and on the 20th of May, Cornwallis united the two armies at Petersburg. A few days afterwards he crossed the James River at Westover and proceeded towards Richmond; but Arnold, who had no idea of trusting his precious person within reach of the Governor of Virginia, applied for permission to return to New York. Cornwallis, glad to be relieved from the company of a man whom he despised, promptly complied with his request.

**Richmond evacuated.**—Exulting in the superiority of his numbers over those of La Fayette, flushed with hopes of a brilliant campaign, and confident of his triumph over the youthful officer who was opposed to him, Cornwallis wrote to England, "The boy cannot escape me;" but La Fayette, though young, brave, and impetuous, had also the prudence which was requisite for his position. Although he had only about three thousand men to oppose the immense force of Cornwallis, and he felt humiliated at being obliged to leave the capital of the State, his judgment nevertheless prompted him to act for the best interests of the people whose cause he had espoused. Accordingly he evacuated Richmond, retreating in such a manner as to protect the military stores in his rear, until he was reinforced by General Wayne, who, with eight hundred men of the Pennsylvania line, was rapidly approaching from the North. Crossing the Chickahominy, he retired towards Fredericksburg, and in Culpeper County was joined by General Wayne.

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. In what year did these events take place?
2. How was this year signalized?
3. What happened on the last day of the old year?
4. Under what disadvantages did Virginia labor?
5. What means of defence had Richmond?
6. What course was determined upon and adopted?
7. Who was in command of the British, and what was his story?
8. How was the news of Arnold's approach received?
9. Give an account of the evacuation of Richmond.
10. Give an account of Arnold's occupation of the city.
11. What was its effect upon the people of Virginia?
12. Did Arnold escape unmolested?
13. Who was Baron Steuben?
14. What was Colonel Clarke's history?
15. Tell of his attack on Arnold.
16. What did Arnold do afterwards?
17. Give an account of the expedition of General Phillips.
18. Of Arnold's expedition to Chesterfield Court-House.
19. What was Baron de Kalb's fate?
20. Who was La Fayette?
21. What was his course towards America?
22. What command was now conferred upon him?
23. What happened after his arrival in Richmond?
24. Give an account of the course of Phillips and Arnold.
25. How did Virginia show her abhorrence of Arnold?
26. What British general was now marching into Virginia?
27. What became of Arnold?
28. How did Cornwallis regard the situation?
29. What course did La Fayette take?

## CHAPTER XXVII.

1781.—CONTINUED.

LEGISLATURE AT CHARLOTTESVILLE ESCAPE FROM TARLETON—  
MONTICELLO—OUTRAGES OF THE BRITISH ARMY—CORNWALLIS  
RETIRES TO CHESAPEAKE BAY—HE FORTIFIES YORKTOWN—  
SIEGE OF YORKTOWN—SURRENDER OF CORNWALLIS—VIRGINIA  
HEROES.

**Lord Cornwallis**, finding his young enemy too wary to be entrapped, stopped the pursuit, and encamping on the North Anna River, in Hanover County, rested until he could take a full view of the situation. A large part of the State of Virginia lay open before him. The Legislature had withdrawn from Richmond to Charlottesville, and Mr. Jefferson, whose term of service as Governor of Virginia had just expired, was at Monticello, about three miles from the village. At a place called Point-of-Fork, now Columbia, at the junction of the Rivanna and James Rivers, the Virginians had accumulated a quantity of stores, leaving Baron Steuben with only six hundred raw militia to guard them.

**A Cavalry Raid.**—Cornwallis thought that if he could capture Mr. Jefferson and the Legislature at Charlottesville, and destroy the military stores at Point-of-Fork before La Fayette could interfere, he would by this double blow convince the Virginians of his power, and disgust them with a government which was too weak to protect them. Accordingly, he divided his cavalry into two parties, one of which he placed under the command of Colonel Simcoe, an officer of great activity and bravery, and the other under Colonel Tarleton. The latter with two hundred men was to proceed to Charlottesville, and after accomplishing his object there, was to join Simcoe and aid him in destroying the stores.

**Simcoe's Stratagem.**—The two forces started nearly at the same time. When Simcoe reached the Point-of-Fork, he found that Baron Steuben had received notice of his approach, and had removed all the stores across the river; seeing this, he had recourse to a stratagem which proved successful. He thought that if he could make Steuben believe that Cornwallis's whole force was with him, he would become frightened and abandon his stores. As night approached, he set his men to work to cut down timber and build camp-fires over a large extent of country. When it grew dark, Steuben, seeing the wide extent of the encampment, hastily packed up the lighter baggage and went off, leaving behind him all the heavy baggage, which Simcoe destroyed, and rejoined Cornwallis the next morning.

**The Legislature warned.**—Tarleton was not so successful. He dashed off through the county of Louisa towards Charlottesville, and had he gone straight forward would no doubt have accomplished his object; but he stopped to burn twelve wagons containing clothing for the Southern army, and then visited the house of Dr. Walker, where he captured a number of gentlemen of the county. This delay caused the failure of his main object, for one of the gentlemen, guessing Tarleton's object, mounted his horse, and taking a short cut across the country, did not draw a rein until he reached Charlottesville. Rushing into the midst of the legislative members, he announced that Tarleton was at his heels coming to capture them. They hastily adjourned to meet in Staunton on the 7th of June, and then scattered like a covey of partridges.

**Jefferson's escape.**—A few hours afterwards Tarleton, knowing nothing of the flight, came along at a sweeping pace, fully expecting to capture his prey, and great was his disappointment when he found the birds had flown. Before he reached Charlottesville he had detached a party



THE ANNOUNCEMENT OF TARLETON'S APPROACH.

under the command of Captain McLeod, with orders to capture Mr. Jefferson. Monticello,\* the residence of Mr. Jefferson, was built upon the top of a high mountain,

---

\* Monticello, the Italian for little mountain.

which could only be approached by a road which wound around it. Mr. Jefferson, not dreaming of danger, was entertaining some friends, when a servant rushed in and told him that the British were coming. No time was to be lost; in a few moments the carriage was at the door, and Mrs. Jefferson and her three children were put into it and sent off by a road opposite to that by which the enemy were approaching. She took refuge at a friend's house about six miles distant; and Mr. Jefferson, mounting his horse, plunged into the recesses of the mountain, and so made his escape. It is due to Captain McLeod to say that he did not allow anything to be disturbed at Monticello, and Mr. Jefferson found all of his books, papers, and other property just as he had left them. There is still shown at Monticello a subterranean apartment, into which two negro servants of Mr. Jefferson descended by a trap-door, bearing with them the family silver, over which they kept faithful guard while Tarleton was in the house.

**An Amusing Incident.**—Tarleton was a great boaster, and it was an intense mortification to him to be obliged to return to Cornwallis with his few gentlemen prisoners, for whose capture he had sacrificed the main object of the expedition. He allowed his men to depredate upon the country, and incidents of his progress are still preserved among the descendants of those who suffered from the license of his soldiery. At one house everything, in the way of poultry, was taken off except one old drake, and the family display a picture in which the angry housewife is sending this sole denizen of her poultry-yard after Tarleton as a present from her, as she had no use for it.

**Depredations of Cornwallis.**—Meanwhile, Cornwallis, advancing from the North Anna River, took possession of one of Mr. Jefferson's farms, called Elk Hill, slaughtered and drove off the cattle, appropriated the horses which

were fit for use, and with wanton cruelty cut the throats of all that were too young for service. Thirty thousand slaves, also, are supposed to have been carried off from the country, of whom twenty-seven thousand died of small-pox and other diseases in the course of six months. Altogether, property amounting to six millions of pounds sterling was either taken away or destroyed.

**La Fayette's Vigilance.**—But Cornwallis's reign of terror was nearly over. A fearful retribution awaited him. He had received information of a quantity of military property which was stored at Albemarle Old Court-House (now Scottsville). These he determined to destroy; but he was no longer to mark his course through Virginia with fire and sword without meeting an arm of defence raised against him, for the brave La Fayette was ready for him; he had been watching with an eagle eye his every movement, and now the time for action had arrived. Reinforced and in command of an ample body of troops, he moved cautiously from Culpeper to Boswell's Tavern, near the Albemarle line. Cornwallis was between him and Albemarle Old Court-House, where the stores were; there was but one way in which he could intercept him, and this La Fayette took. He set all of his men to work to open a road across the country, and the next morning Cornwallis saw, with astonishment and rage, the Americans encamped in an impregnable position, just between him and Albemarle Old Court-House. At the same time he received a despatch from Sir Henry Clinton, commander-in-chief of the British forces in America, ordering him to proceed at once to the sea-coast and to send him all the men he could spare, as there was reason to believe that New York would be the next point of attack.

**A Perilous Error.**—Cornwallis without delay set his face towards the sea, and now *he* was the pursued and La Fayette the pursuer. Cornwallis moved slowly, and La

Fayette watched keenly every step he took. Once, and only once, was La Fayette off his guard; but happily his want of vigilance was not attended with serious consequences. On the 4th day of July, Cornwallis was preparing to transport his entire army across James River, having selected Jamestown Island as the proper point. Inexperienced spies had informed La Fayette that the British army had crossed, leaving the rear-guard on the north side of the river. This he determined to attack, and did not discover his mistake until he had driven in the pickets and found himself in the midst of the full strength of the British army. Two field-pieces were captured, and had it not been for the darkness of the night, which enabled La Fayette to accomplish a retreat, the Americans must have been utterly ruined; as it was, there was little real damage done, and Cornwallis withdrew his forces across the river and continued his course towards Chesapeake Bay, followed by La Fayette. He soon received despatches from Sir Henry Clinton, informing him that his apprehensions about an attack on New York were relieved, and ordering him to retain his whole force in Virginia, selecting Yorktown as his base of operations. Of this place he took possession, and threw up intrenchments.

**Washington joins La Fayette.**—La Fayette saw at a glance the advantages of the situation, and lost no time in informing Washington of his view of the matter, in which the commanding officer concurred, and turned his face without delay towards Virginia, and with his combined French and American troops was far on his southward march before the British general had any idea of the contemplated movement. Before Washington joined La Fayette, he learned with joy that Count de Grasse had entered Chesapeake Bay with a fleet of twenty-five ships, on board of which were three thousand French troops. It was near the last of September when Wash-

ington joined La Fayette and immediately mounted cannon around Yorktown, which was soon, with the aid of the ships of De Grasse, completely invested, and the proud Cornwallis saw himself caught in a trap of his own setting, while the Americans determined that he and his army should never leave Yorktown except as prisoners of war.

**Cornwallis entrapped.**—General Washington knew that as soon as Sir Henry Clinton heard of the situation of Cornwallis he would make every effort to relieve him; his aim therefore was to prepare for a defence from an outside attack, as well as to secure the army in Yorktown. Cornwallis on his part was not idle, but strove in every way to escape from his precarious situation; but day by day his hopes grew fainter, until at length they rested alone upon the anticipated help from Sir Henry Clinton. After a while food became scarce, and still the Americans built their intrenchments closer and closer to the fated city. General Nelson, who was now Governor of Virginia, had his home in Yorktown,—he was the same gentleman to whom the captain of the “Fowey” had addressed his cruel epistle some years before. Observing, one day, that in compliment to him the gunners would not aim at his house while firing into the town, though it was known to be the head-quarters of the British officers, he remonstrated, and insisted that the guns should open fire in that direction. His wish was complied with; the first shot killed two officers, and the entire building was soon demolished.

**Escape prevented.**—Conscious of his desperate situation, and beginning to despair of help from without, Cornwallis made an attempt to cut his way through the American lines, but he was driven back. He then determined to abandon his sick and wounded and his materials of war, and to escape with his men across the river. The boats were in readiness, and some of the troops had actually embarked; but heaven armed against them. A storm

of wind and rain arose which drove the boats back on the shore, and the attempt was abandoned.



SURRENDER OF LORD CORNWALLIS.

**The Surrender of Cornwallis.**—The hopes of Lord Cornwallis were now at an end, and unwilling to sacrifice any more of the troops who had so bravely stood the hor-

rors of the siege, on the morning of the 17th of October he despatched a flag of truce with a letter to General Washington, proposing a cessation of hostilities for twenty-four hours, in order that the terms of surrender might be settled. Washington, fearing that reinforcements might arrive from New York and change the aspect of affairs, declined a longer delay than two hours. With this Cornwallis was forced to be satisfied; but two days elapsed before all of the preliminaries were settled, and at twelve o'clock on the 19th the surrender was made. The allied armies were drawn up in two lines more than a mile in length, the French on one side of the road and the Americans on the other. The Count de Rochambeau and his staff, handsomely mounted, occupied a position in front of the French, and Washington on a noble steed, with his staff, was beside the Americans. The French presented a brilliant appearance in their complete uniforms, and marched to the field with a band of music in full play. The Americans, in spite of their shabby dress, which bore the marks of hard service and great privations, wore a proud, soldierly air which was better than mere outside adornment, and made their countrymen who looked on very proud of them.

**The British Garrison.**—About two o'clock the British garrison sallied forth from Yorktown and passed through the two lines of their conquerors. They marched with slow, sad steps, their arms shouldered, their flags furled, and their drums beating a solemn march. They were led by General O'Hara, who at once marched up to Washington and apologized for the non-appearance of Lord Cornwallis on account of sickness. He then led his men forward to the field where they were to ground their arms. Their aspect as they followed their leader was sullen, which was very natural, the circumstances considered.

**Their Humiliation.**—The British had indulged in a

very bad habit; this was to parade a contempt for their American foe which probably they did not altogether feel, but which doubtless increased their mortification when they came to this final humiliation. Many of the men threw their muskets violently on the pile, as if unable to conceal their rage; and Colonel Abercrombie, one of the officers, as he stood by, compelled to witness the sight, bit the hilt of his sword, and turned away his head as if completely overcome.

**The importance of this surrender** was indeed inestimable. It was not only that it enriched America by the capture of men, guns, stores, ammunition, and ships, but it produced the happiest moral effect. Those who were disposed, through discouragement, to abandon the cause, soon became its most earnest supporters; enthusiasm prevailed everywhere, and Great Britain, conscious that her strength was being wasted on a people determined to be free, abandoned the contest. Peace was not formally declared for nearly two years after, but the independence of the republic was recognized, and the new country invited to trade, on equal terms, with the power which had ruled over her.

**Virginia's Roll of Honor.**—Thus ended the War of the Revolution, and Virginia may well be proud of her part in the struggle. On her soil independence first began, and on her soil the last great battle was fought. Her sons were always foremost in the field and the council-chamber. The voice of Patrick Henry was the first which sounded the cry of liberty; George Mason penned the Declaration of Rights, and Thomas Jefferson the Declaration of Independence; and George Washington, pre-eminent in all those qualities which constitute a man and a soldier, kept alive the courage of his countrymen in the darkest hour and led the American army to final triumph. Nor does the list of Virginia's heroes end here. There are

William Washington,\* Lee,† Mercer, Morgan, Stephen, and Clarke among her soldiers, and Mason, Page, Nelson, -Lee, Randolph, Bland, Pendleton, and Wythe among her statesmen, whose names should be cherished so long as Virginia has an existence.

---

### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. What is the date of these events?
2. What was the next step of Lord Cornwallis?
3. Where were the Legislature and Mr. Jefferson?
4. Where was Baron Steuben?
5. What did Cornwallis propose to do?
6. What part of the plan was given to Simcoe, and how did he accomplish his object?
7. What work was assigned to Tarleton?
8. What caused the failure of his object?
9. Relate the story of his raid upon Charlottesville.
10. How did the Legislature escape?
11. The command of what enterprise did McLeod undertake?
12. Was he successful?
13. How did Tarleton behave under disappointment?
14. Give an account of Cornwallis's reign of terror.
15. Who was waiting to oppose him?
16. What piece of military strategy did La Fayette accomplish?
17. What happened to change Cornwallis's plans?
18. What course did he pursue?
19. Describe the retreat of his army to Yorktown.
20. What did Washington do when he heard the news?
21. What was the situation of the two armies?
22. What was Cornwallis's only hope?
23. What did General Nelson do?
24. Tell of Cornwallis's attempt to escape.
25. What proposals did Cornwallis make, and how were they received?
26. Describe the manner in which the allied armies were drawn up at the time of surrender.
27. Give an account of the surrender.
28. What was the importance of this surrender?
29. What part had Virginia taken in the Revolution?
30. Give the names of some of her Revolutionary soldiers and statesmen.

---

\* Lieutenant-Colonel William Washington, a cavalry leader.

† "Light-Horse Harry," father of General Robert E. Lee.

## CHAPTER XXVIII.

1781-1800.

"CRAZY RUMSEY"—WASHINGTON AT MOUNT VERNON—CONVENTION AT PHILADELPHIA—VIRGINIA CONVENTION MEETS TO DISCUSS THE NEW CONSTITUTION—VIRGINIA JOINS THE FEDERAL UNION—WASHINGTON ELECTED PRESIDENT—KENTUCKY ADMITTED INTO THE UNION—FEDERALISTS AND REPUBLICANS—ALIEN AND SEDITION LAWS—"RESOLUTIONS OF '98"—PATRICK HENRY'S LAST SPEECH—JOHN RANDOLPH OF ROANOKE—DEATHS OF PATRICK HENRY AND WASHINGTON.

**A Virginian Invention.**—It is pleasant to turn aside for a moment from the turmoil of war and the difficulties which beset the ship of state, now being launched upon the waters of time, to narrate a simple story of a man whose name deserves a higher place than it at present occupies in history. There has been a great deal written about the invention of the steam-engine; you are all so accustomed to see it in common use that but few of you realize how wonderful was the genius which first conceived the idea of using steam as a locomotive power. There are records as far back as the year 1543 of the conception of some such idea, but no one had ever been able to put it in execution. This is the introduction to my story.

**James Rumsey** was a native of Maryland, and had his residence at Bath, Morgan County, Virginia, and afterwards in Shepherdstown. He was employed by the Potomac Company to improve the navigation of the Potomac River, and here his attention became directed to different modes of propelling vessels, and particularly to utilizing steam for this purpose. He was a simple man, but one of considerable inventive powers and great earnestness of purpose. In spite of the ridicule of his ignorant neighbors, who dubbed him "Crazy Rumsey," he built a

boat on the banks of the Potomac, and succeeded in launching it upon the waters of that river, propelling it by steam against the current at the rate of four or five miles an hour. This seems very slow to us, because we travel so much more rapidly now, but it was considered wonderful speed by the people of the country, who called it the "flying boat." It was about fifty feet long, and the whole machinery did not occupy more than six feet square. The boiler held about five gallons of water, only a pint of which was required at a time, and it used from four to six bushels of coal in twelve hours. Rumsey was working at his idea nearly four years before he developed it; and there is a path along the banks of the Potomac, near Shepherdstown, which was called Rumsey's Walk, because here the poor fellow walked up and down, day after day, meditating upon his project.

**The Trial Trip.**—At length the "flying boat" was ready for its trial trip, and among other distinguished persons who were on board, upon this its first voyage, was General Washington himself, who was convinced of the utility of the idea, and gave his certificate to that effect. •

**Death of the Inventor.**—Thus encouraged, Rumsey resolved to go to England for the purpose of obtaining skilful workmen and such machinery for the carrying out of his plans as he could not obtain in this country. But here the difficulty beset him which so often lies in the way of great projects,—want of money; and he was obliged to abandon his main scheme and turn his attention to something else until he could raise the means to resume it; he had even to sacrifice a large interest in his invention in order to escape a London prison; but still he struggled on, and at length completed a boat of about one hundred tons' burthen, and named a day for its public exhibition, and an evening before this appointment to be devoted to an exposition of his project, in order to solicit

help from the public. The evening arrived, and, to poor Rumsey's astonishment, the hall was filled to overflowing with the learning, fashion, and beauty of Liverpool. He was perfectly overwhelmed at the sudden prospect which presented itself for the fulfilment of his dearest hopes. When he arose to begin his lecture, he was so overcome that he could not control his feelings. A gentleman near, observing his agitation, handed him a glass of water. He thanked him incoherently, sank into his chair, and never spoke again. He died two days after, leaving his project to be completed by others; and, nearly twenty years after, Fulton succeeded in improving upon his idea, and is recognized as the great master of steam navigation, while poor Rumsey fills an unhonored grave, though no history of Virginia should neglect to record his name upon its pages.

**Forming a Government.**—Now that the sword was laid aside, you may think that this new country had nothing to do but to grow rich without being subject to English taxation, and to enjoy the independence she had so hardly won; but you are greatly mistaken. The people had succeeded, it is true, in throwing off an oppressive yoke, and in this they rejoiced; but an arduous task lay before them: the country had now to take her place in the family of nations, and to prepare herself to support that position with honor. The experience which her rulers had enjoyed of a monarchical form of government, which you know is one in which the king is the chief ruler, had not satisfied them; and they determined to make an experiment which had never yet been quite successful in the history of the world,—namely, to have a government in which all of the officers were elected by the people, and no office held for life; so that if the chief ruler did not prove a good one, his government could not be a lasting evil, for in a short time another election would take place, and another man fill the posi-

tion. It was also determined that each State should have a government of its own, consisting of a governor, judiciary, and legislature, which would render it entirely independent of the others; but that there should be a general government, in which all should unite, over which should be placed a president and congress, and that matters should be so arranged that the one would not interfere with the other. There were at that time thirteen different States: there are now a great many more; but it was agreed that each new State which was formed should join the Union subject to the same regulations. In the year 1784 Virginia gave to the United States her great territories in the North-west, out of which were afterwards formed the States of Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Michigan, and a part of Minnesota. For many years, however, it was not divided, but known as "the Territory of Indiana.

**Washington retires.**—And now the subject which engaged the attention of all was how these two governments should be constituted, so that the one would not interfere with the other; and this was an undertaking full of difficulty. The States had adopted their own forms of government, and they were not prepared to surrender the power entirely into the hands of the United States. General Washington, when peace was fully established, had taken a final leave of the officers and soldiers of the army which had so long acknowledged him as their leader, and at a meeting of Congress had surrendered his commission as commander-in-chief. After this he retired to Mount Vernon and engaged in domestic pursuits, but never for an instant did he lose sight of what he considered the best interests of the United States, and he keenly shared in the anxiety for the adoption of such a constitution as would promote this object.

**The Constitutional Convention.**—Years passed away before the matter was definitely settled. In May, 1787, a

convention met at Philadelphia, when a constitution or code of laws was prepared, which was presented to each of the different States for their discussion in convention. In Virginia this produced the greatest excitement. Nothing was

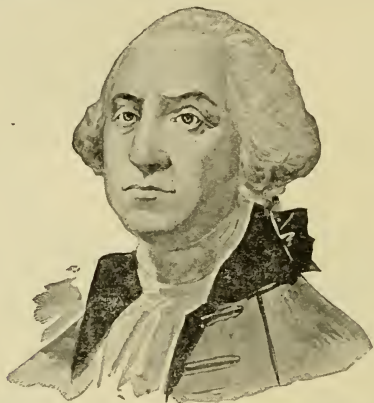


MOUNT VERNON.

talked of but the new Constitution and the election of members to the Convention which met at Richmond on the 2d of June of the following year, 1788.

**Virginia's Action.**—Never before or since, in the history of the State, was there such an array of talent and patriotism as met on that occasion. Of course Patrick Henry was there, and Pendleton and Wythe, Lee and

Randolph, Madison and Marshall, and many others, all of whom came to the Convention with the love of their State as the ruling passion of their hearts, but differing widely as to the best means of securing her good. Patrick Henry opposed the new Constitution with all the power of his great eloquence; he thought that Virginia ought not to give the general government so much power over her. Mr. Madison and Mr. Randolph and others opposed



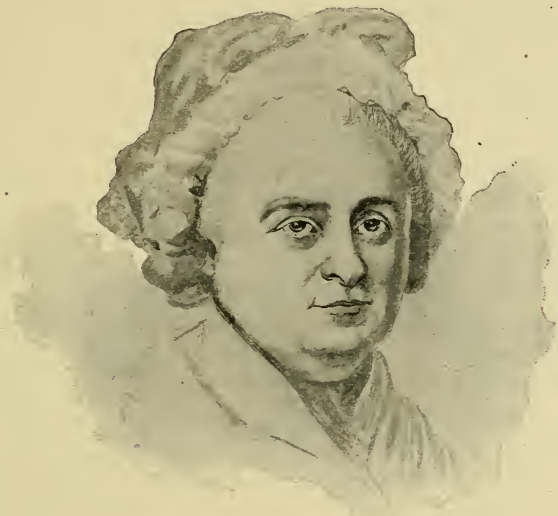
GEORGE WASHINGTON.

him. They thought that Virginia did not give away any power necessary to the existence of her State government, and she would be strengthened and elevated by a federal union with her sister States. The result of many stormy discussions was the adoption of the Constitution by a majority of only ten votes, and by this Virginia became a member of the Union of States.

Heretofore we have closely kept in view our plan of presenting Virginia alone to your view, but now, when she becomes united with the other States, through the Constitution which she and they had adopted, it becomes more difficult to give her a separate position, and for the

seventy years which remain for our consideration there are but few events which mark her history with any distinctness.

**Washington elected President.**—The year after the adoption of the Constitution, George Washington was elected to fill the office of President of the United States. He had been a great advocate for the Union, and a member



MARTHA WASHINGTON.

of the Convention which met at Philadelphia to frame the Constitution, but it was with the greatest reluctance that he accepted the post of Chief Magistrate of the new country. He was growing old, and was wearied with the life of toil which he had led, and only desired to spend the evening of his days in the quiet of his home at Mount Vernon; but he could not decline the call from the country of which he was the father, and so became the first Presi-

dent of the United States, while Patrick Henry was elected Governor of Virginia.

**Kentucky admitted.**—One of the first acts of the new government was the admission of a new State to the Union. This was Kentucky, a young daughter of whom Virginia was justly proud. Twenty years before the period at which we have now arrived, the whole of this beautiful land had been in possession of the Indians; but, like the rest of the country, it fell into possession of the white man. It would be very pleasant to me, and interesting to you, could I pause to tell you of how Daniel Boone entered this wild country, which, from the many terrible battles which were fought there, was known as the “dark and bloody ground,” and how, after a terrible struggle, it was rescued from the savages; but we can only tell the story in a brief sentence. As years passed away, the fertility of her soil and the healthfulness of her climate invited settlers within her boundaries, and she was soon known as “the Garden of the West,” and each year marked her progress in strength and vigor, until she was ready to take her place with her sisters as a State of the Union, which she did with honor and credit in the year 1792.

**Political Parties.**—About this time arose two great political parties in the country, which were known by the titles of “Federalist” and “Republican.” The Federalists were those who approved of a strong general government, and thought it ought to be powerful enough to keep under its power all of the State governments. The Republicans, on the contrary, looked with great jealousy and distrust upon the power already granted to the general government by the new Constitution, and zealously contended for the right of the different States to govern themselves. This last party was the strongest in Virginia.

**Measures of State Defence.**—In our day, when the youngest of you have some idea of the bitterness of feeling

which arises from a difference of opinion in politics, we can well understand the extent to which party spirit was carried upon these all-important subjects. The tongue and the pen were kept busy; and if we could have heard the speeches and read the opinions expressed on the different sides of the question, we would understand how curiously honest, patriotic statesmen, with the good of their country equally at heart, can differ about the means of attaining that good, and hate each other bitterly for the difference of opinion. I have said that the Republican party was the strongest in Virginia, and for this reason the Legislature of the State adopted every means to strengthen the State government by increasing her means of defence. Laws were passed for arming the militia, and an armory was built at Richmond large enough to store away ten thousand stand of arms; two hundred and twelve pieces of cannon were mounted around the yard, besides six beautiful brass siege-pieces and two mortars. These last were supposed to have been brought over in a French vessel during the siege of Yorktown, and presented, after the fall of Cornwallis, to the Commonwealth of Virginia.

**Alien and Sedition Laws.**—This same year (1798) events occurred which made the opposition between the two great political parties of the country more bitter than ever. Some laws were passed by the United States styled the "Alien and Sedition Laws." The first named gave the President the power to send any foreigner out of the country whom he regarded as dangerous to the peace of the United States; and if he remained in the country after the order to leave had been issued, he was to be imprisoned for a term not exceeding three years. The "Sedition Law" empowered the government to seize any one who should write, speak, or publish anything false, scandalous, or malicious against the government, Congress, or President of the United States, and fine or imprison them.

**Their Reception.**—When it became known that these two laws had been passed, it roused the greatest excitement all through the country. The Federalists contended that it was all right and necessary that the general government should thus act; and the Republicans said that it placed too much power in the hands of the President and Congress, and was sure to lead to tyranny, by bringing under punishment many who were only suspected, and ought to be tried before condemnation, and besides, it restricted the “liberty of the press,” by forbidding the publication of opinions, whatever they might be.

In Virginia the feelings of these two parties were particularly bitter, and the discussions in the Legislature were stormy enough, and a great deal of talent and eloquence were arrayed on both sides. Patrick Henry, although he had opposed the adoption of the Constitution, yet after Virginia had agreed to bind herself to the Union, thought her best interest lay in doing everything to strengthen the tie. Mr. Madison drew up some resolutions, which have ever since been celebrated as the “Resolutions of '98.” These, full of patriotism both to the United States government and to the State, declare the intention of Virginia to maintain and defend the Constitution of the United States against all opposition, but at the same time avow her purpose to oppose anything which went beyond this Constitution and endangered the liberty of individuals and of the States, which were sovereignties independent of the general government, and particularly to guard the liberty of the press and of conscience. The Alien and Sedition Laws were declared to be aimed against such rights, and therefore were opposed. Even before this action by Virginia, Kentucky passed resolutions which were written by Thomas Jefferson, and which were even stronger than those which were passed by Virginia. But these were the only two States that took open ground against the Federal government.

**Patrick Henry**, though a very old and feeble man, allowed himself to be brought before the people of Charlotte County as a candidate for the Virginia Senate, in order that he might once again raise his voice for what he considered the best interests of his beloved State. Before his election, a day was appointed for him to make a speech to the people of Charlotte Court-House, in order that he might tell them what course he intended to pursue should they elect him to the Legislature of Virginia. He mounted the stand fixed for him, and the tears gathered in many eyes as they saw the sad change wrought by years and ill health upon his honored form. But soon his eye lighted up, and his voice gave forth such eloquent words as none had ever heard from him before. He said he had opposed the adoption of the Constitution, and the Alien and Sedition Laws were but the fruits he expected; but it was too late for Virginia to set herself against the government. Then clasping his hands, and waving his body backward and forward, he said, "If we are wrong, let us all go wrong together." The crowd was so excited that the entire mass of people *waved* with him, and as he fell exhausted into the arms of the crowd, a friend exclaimed, "The sun has set in all his glory!"

**John Randolph.**—The applause over Patrick Henry's speech was still at its height when a young figure, of ungainly and unprepossessing appearance, stepped forward and took his place upon the stand which the great orator had just left. Every one looked in amazement as they recognized John Randolph, who had grown up in the county, and now presented himself as a candidate for the Congress of the United States. Many laughed at the temerity of the daring youth who thus made his appearance after Mr. Henry, and one old man said, "Tut! tut! it won't do. It's nothing but the beating of an old tin pan after hearing a fine church organ." But they

soon found that the tin pan sounded notes which claimed their attention. Patrick Henry's sun had set, but here



PATRICK HENRY AND JOHN RANDOLPH AT THE HUSTINGS.

was another rising, the token of a bright day. John Randolph became the most celebrated orator, after Patrick Henry, in the history of the State.

Both candidates were elected, Mr. Henry to the Virginia Legislature and Mr. Randolph to Congress; but the first did not live to take his seat, as he died on the 6th of June, 1799, mourned by all, for the propriety and dignity of his character, as the great orator, the friend of liberty, and the true Christian.

**Death of Washington.**—The last year of this century, which had been so eventful to America, also saw the fall of



TOMB OF WASHINGTON.

the most distinguished of all the sons of Virginia. On the 14th day of December, at Mount Vernon, died George Washington. This event plunged the whole country in mourning. Upon hearing the sad news, Congress adjourned, after resolving that all of the members should wear crape during the session, and that a committee be appointed to consider the best means of honoring the man "first in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his countrymen."\* Every

---

\* The resolution adopted by Congress ran "first in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his fellow-citizens." Richard Henry Lee in his oration changed it to "first in the hearts of his countrymen."

State of the Union hastened to take steps to testify its grief at this public bereavement. Nor was the recognition of the sad event confined to America. When the news reached Europe, Bonaparte, First Consul of France, issued an order that black crape should be suspended from all of the standards and flags in the army of France for ten days, and even the English government honored the man who had fought against her; sixty ships lying at Torbay lowered their flags to half-mast at the reception of the news; and for a time, throughout America, passion was calmed and party spirit extinguished, while all mourned Washington as the "Father of his Country."

---

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. The history of what years is included in this chapter?
2. For what purpose does our history turn aside from the difficulties which beset Virginia?
3. What about the invention of the steam-engine?
4. Who was James Rumsey?
5. What first turned his thoughts to making use of steam?
6. How was his idea looked upon?
7. What success did he meet with?
8. Tell of the launching and trial trip of the "flying boat."
9. Tell of Rumsey's trip to England.
10. What difficulties did he encounter?
11. What is the end of his story?
12. What was the condition of Virginia?
13. What duties lay before her?
14. What kind of government was determined upon?
15. What was the general government?
16. What the State government?
17. What had Washington done when peace was declared?
18. When and where did the Convention meet, and what did it accomplish?
19. What was the effect of these events upon Virginia?
20. When and where did her Convention meet, and what great men were there?
21. What difference of opinion existed among these patriots?
22. What was the result of these discussions?

23. How has Virginia heretofore been presented to you, and what change now becomes necessary?
24. Who was the first President of the United States, and how did he regard the honor?
25. Who was elected Governor of Virginia?
26. What of Kentucky?
27. When was she admitted as a State?
28. Who were the Federalists and the Republicans?
29. What is said of the political feeling?
30. What laws were passed in 1798?
31. What was the Alien Law?
32. What was the Sedition Law?
33. What was their effect upon the different States?
34. How did Virginia receive them?
35. What position did Patrick Henry occupy?
36. Who drew up the "Resolutions of '98"?
37. What did they declare?
38. What had Kentucky done?
39. For what position did Patrick Henry become a candidate?
40. Tell of his last appearance before the people.
41. How did he close his speech, and with what effect?
42. Who occupied the stand after Patrick Henry?
43. Who was he, and how was he received?
44. What reputation did he afterwards gain?
45. What success did the two candidates meet with?
46. Where and when did Patrick Henry die?
47. What sad event happened near the close of this same year?
48. What was the effect upon the whole country?
49. How was the event recognized in Europe?

---

## CHAPTER XXIX.

\*  
1800-1813.

CALLENDER'S "PROSPECT BEFORE US"—INSURRECTION OF SLAVES  
—BURNING OF THE RICHMOND THEATRE—WAR OF 1812.

**Party Spirit.**—The mourning for George Washington and Patrick Henry, in Virginia, soon received a diversion by the revival of party spirit. This had its immediate cause

in the enforcement of one of those very laws which she had so opposed, and which, with her own concurrence, was carried into effect on her very soil.

**One James Thompson Callender**, a foreigner, who had his home in Virginia, published a pamphlet called "The Prospect before Us," in which he took occasion, in the most outrageous manner, to load with coarse, profligate abuse and false accusations not only Mr. Adams, the President of the United States, but even the lamented Washington. So infamous was this paper that the public indignation was aroused. Judge Chase, who had been one of the signers of the Declaration of Independence, and was now one of the judges of the Supreme Court, read the pamphlet, and declared his intention of taking it with him to Virginia,—where he was soon to hold a circuit court,—and that if a jury of honest men could be found in the commonwealth, he would punish Callender. He did so; and presenting the pamphlet to the grand jury, insisted upon the arrest of Callender as a "seditious libeller." It was done; and very much frightened at "the prospect before" him, Callender was brought before the court. Three celebrated Virginia lawyers undertook his defence. They were Mr. Wirt, Mr. Hay, and Mr. Philip Norborne Nicholas. Judge Chase, in his anxiety to enforce the law, showed a little too much ardor, as he refused to grant the counsel of Callender a longer time to summon witnesses, and in the end so offended the three gentlemen that they left the court. Callender was condemned; and so great was the disgust of all parties for his pamphlet, that although the proceeding was contrary to the ideas entertained by Virginians of the liberty of opinion which should be allowed to all, no one was sorry that he suffered fine and imprisonment.

**Judge Chase** was afterwards brought before the bar of Congress for his action in this case and others, and John Randolph was very earnest in his efforts to convict him.

The trial was a long one and full of interest, but the efforts failed: he was cleared.

**An attempted Slave Insurrection.**—In this same year the State of Virginia was startled by the discovery of an intended insurrection of slaves. You remember, very early in the history of the colony, that a Dutch vessel brought to the young colony a cargo of Africans, who were used as slaves. This proved to be the beginning of a train of evils for the State. For many years English ships continued the practice thus introduced, until the different colonies abounded with them. During the Revolutionary War, Virginia made a law that no more Africans should be brought into the State; but still she was obliged to care for those who were already there. Generally speaking, the negroes proved a harmless and affectionate race, easily governed, and happy in their condition; and history records but two attempted insurrections in Virginia during the existence of the institution. The first happened, as I have said, in the first year of the new century, in the neighborhood of Richmond.

It was headed by a man named **Gabriel**, and about one thousand negroes were concerned in it. So well was their secret kept, that not a suspicion of it existed until the very night appointed for the execution of the plot. It was then divulged by a slave named Pharaoh, whose heart failed him at the last moment, and making his escape, he presented himself before the authorities at Richmond and disclosed the whole plot. Steps were instantly taken to defeat it; and it was found that an organized plan had been laid to surprise Richmond, exterminate the male inhabitants, and take the women for wives for themselves. The conspirators were convicted and condemned to meet the fate they so justly deserved.

**The Nat Turner Massacre.**—Though it does not properly belong to this period, as it happened thirty years after,

I will tell you, in connection with this incident, of the only other insurrection which soils the fair page of the history of Virginia. It was headed by a negro named Nat Turner, a religious fanatic and a preacher; he also claimed to be a prophet, and by the interpretation of some signs obtained a great influence among the ignorant, superstitious negroes. By this means he succeeded in inducing numbers to join him in his plot. On the 21st of August, 1831, accompanied by twenty of his followers, he entered the house of his master, one Mr. Travis, in Southampton County, during the night, and murdered the entire family before they were sufficiently awake to offer defence. He next went to the house of a Mr. Waller, and left his wife and ten children a bleeding heap on the floor. Near by this last-named place there was a school of little girls, all of whom were butchered in cold blood except one, who made her escape and was found by her friends hidden in a hedge. In giving an account of the horrors through which she had passed, the little thing said, "but God watched over me."

**Retribution.**—For one entire day did these wretches revel in blood; but, fortunately, their courage was not proof against resistance, and this they encountered at the house of Dr. Blount, where that gentleman, his son, a youth of fifteen, and three white neighbors were on the lookout for them, and when they came within twenty yards of the house, opened fire upon them from the windows. One of the negroes fell dead, a second was wounded, and the rest betook themselves to flight. From this time the warfare was at an end. The whites turned out and hunted the murderers down through the swamps. The first who were captured were killed on the spot, but when the first heat of passion had cooled, justice resumed her sway, and they were taken to the county town of Southampton and tried for their crimes. It was some weeks before Nat Turner was found, but at length he was dis-

covered under a pile of fence-rails, and being brought to trial, met the punishment he deserved.

**A Terrible Event.**—I will now tell you of a circumstance which occurred in the city of Richmond in the year 1811, that spread the mantle of sorrow over the whole State of Virginia. The prosperity of the State, after the Revolutionary War, was steadily progressive; her wealth and population had greatly increased. Richmond, you will remember, at the time it was chosen as the capital of the commonwealth, was but a village; it had now spread its boundaries over the neighboring hills, and was the centre of wealth, fashion, and gayety. During the memorable winter of this year, the young, the gay, and the beautiful had flocked to the city; brilliant entertainments followed each other in rapid succession, and night after night crowds gathered at the theatre, where the best actors in the country were performing.

On the evening of the 26th of December an immense crowd assembled to witness a favorite play, in which the principal character was sustained by a very celebrated actor. While every eye was fixed upon the performers, and the interest was at its height, sparks of fire were seen to fall from the scenery at the back of the stage, and at the same moment one of the actors rushed forward and, throwing up his hands excitedly, exclaimed, "The house is on fire! the house is on fire!" Instantly the cry of horror was repeated through the building in various accents of terror and despair, and a scene of confusion followed which language is inadequate to describe. The crowd trod upon each other in their efforts to reach the doors, which they found tightly closed, as they unfortunately opened on the inside of the room, and the pressure against them only kept them more tightly barred. Behind, the flames gained ground, and the suffocating smoke spread over the doomed mass of human beings like a pall. Strong men, frantic

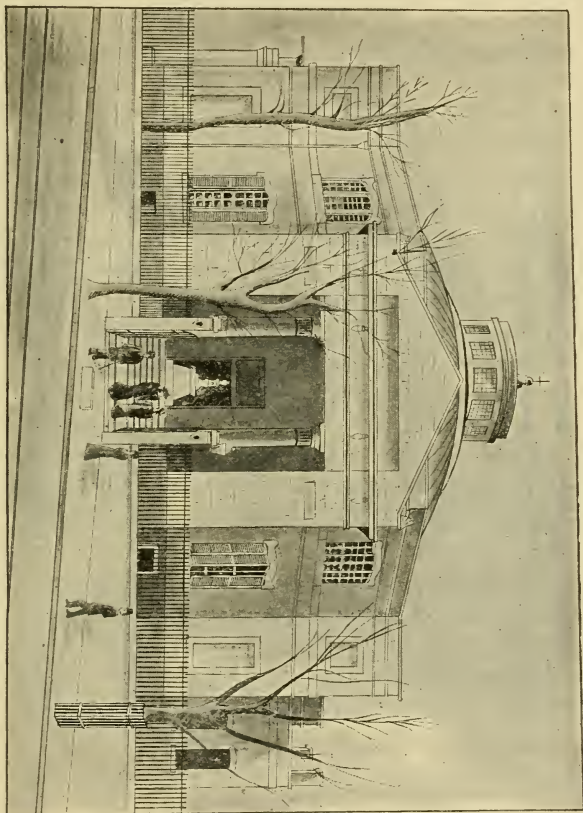
with fear, passed over the heads of the dense crowd in their efforts to reach the doors; the groans of the crushed and dying mingled with the labored respiration of those who were smothered by the smoke; many threw themselves from the upper windows, exchanging one violent death for another.

**Affecting Scenes.**—In the midst of the scene, touching instances are narrated where love triumphed over the fear of death. Parents rushed back into the flames to rescue their children, and perished in the attempt; and children refused to be saved at the expense of a parent's life. Husbands and wives chose death together rather than separation. An old lady, still living, tells with the eloquence of an eye-witness of her own rescue by one who afterwards became her husband. With admirable presence of mind, he bore her to an upper window, and fastening his foot in some way in the shutter, let her down as far as his arms could reach, and dropped her into those of the watching crowd below. When her safety was assured, he saved himself by climbing down one of the pillars. Seventy persons lost their lives on this eventful night, and this number comprised the wealth, the fashion, and the talent of the metropolis. The governor of the State was among the lost, besides many distinguished and valuable citizens. Richmond was shrouded in mourning; there was scarcely a family in which there was not one dead. When the news of the calamity reached Washington, it was resolved, in both Houses of Congress, that the members should wear crape on the left arm for a month. The Monumental Church now covers the site of the old theatre, and at the door is a monument bearing upon it as an inscription the names of many of those who perished in this disaster.

**The War of 1812.**—The year following this sad event, dissatisfaction arose between the United States and the British government, the cause of which belongs so entirely

to the history of the United States that it need not be detailed here. A war was commenced between the two powers which is known as "the War of 1812." The scene

MONUMENTAL CHURCH, RICHMOND.



of the conflict was, for the most part, far removed from Virginia, but her borders were not to escape invasion entirely.

**Cockburn's Outrages.**—An infamous admiral of the British navy, named Cockburn, in the month of May of

this year entered Chesapeake Bay and committed the most shocking depredations along the coasts of Maryland and Virginia. He had under his command a large fleet of ships and about twenty-six hundred men. A heavy fight took place near Norfolk between this fleet and the American gunboats. The battle was fought at Craney Island, which stands at the entrance of Norfolk harbor, and the Americans defended the position so bravely that the enemy were forced to abandon their designs on Norfolk. In rage and shame at their unexpected defeat, they turned their attention to Hampton, a comparatively unimportant post, and which was only defended by a few men under Colonel Crutchfield. These kept back the enemy with determined bravery for a time, but were at last obliged to retire before overwhelming numbers. The British entered Hampton and committed every species of outrage. One aged man was brutally murdered in the presence of his wife, who herself was desperately wounded. The infamous Cockburn refused to protect the defenceless women who remained in the town from the negroes who followed in his train, answering one who applied to him for protection, that he "took it for granted that all the ladies had left" before his arrival. Happily, their stay was of short duration, as the militia gathered in such numbers that Cockburn retired to his ships. The war lasted three years, and ended triumphantly for the United States, but this was the only occasion upon which Virginia suffered invasion.

---

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. The events of what years are included in this chapter?
2. What was the next cause of public excitement in Virginia?
3. What was Callender's crime?
4. Who was Judge Chase, and what did he declare?
5. What steps were taken against Callender?

6. What lawyers defended him?
7. What difficulty arose between the lawyers and judge?
8. How did it end?
9. Give a short account of the history of slavery in Virginia.
10. Give an account of the Gabriel insurrection.
11. Give an account of the Nat Turner insurrection.
12. What was the condition of the city of Richmond in 1811?
13. Describe the burning of the theatre.
14. What effect did this event have through the country?
15. What did Congress do?
16. What happened the next year?
17. Was the principal scene of conflict in Virginia?
18. Where was she invaded, and by whom?
19. Give an account of the battle of Craney Island.
20. Give an account of the occupation of Hampton.
21. How long did this war last, and who was victorious?

---

## CHAPTER XXX.

1818-1859.

VIRGINIA THE "MOTHER OF PRESIDENTS"—UNIVERSITY OF VIRGINIA—DEATH OF THOMAS JEFFERSON—THE VIRGINIA CONSTITUTION AND THE MEN WHO MADE IT—TROUBLES BETWEEN THE STATES—JOHN BROWN'S RAID.

**Presidents from Virginia.**—And now follows a series of years undisturbed by the horrors of war, and in this peaceful interval Virginia had time to give her attention to matters of essential importance to her permanent peace and prosperity. Of the first five Presidents of the United States, four were from Virginia. General Washington held the office eight years and declined re-election. He was followed by John Adams, of Massachusetts, who served one term; next came Thomas Jefferson, of Virginia, who served eight years; next Mr. Madison, also eight years; and then Mr. Monroe, also from Virginia, for eight years.

**Jefferson at Home.**—At the close of Mr. Jefferson's second term of office he retired to his beautiful home at

Monticello, in Albemarle County, where he devoted the remainder of his life to literary and agricultural pursuits. It is not to be supposed that one so alive to the welfare of



JEFFERSON.

his State as he had ever been, should lose sight of it even in his retirement to private life. He had always taken a keen interest in the cause of education, rightly concluding that in promoting the educational advancement of her youth, Virginia planted the seeds for her surest and best advancement. For years past he had indulged the hope of enlarging the college at Williamsburg into

a great university, which would afford the same advantages as could be furnished by a European education. For reasons not necessary to detail, he had been obliged to abandon his scheme in its relation to Williamsburg, though he still cherished the idea of a great Virginia university.

**His Grand Purpose.**—As he cast his eye over the beautiful country which lay around his mountain home, his imagination pictured a grand institution growing out of the bosom of these plains. An idea once conceived with him was not easily abandoned, and although years elapsed before he was able to accomplish his design, he at length induced the Legislature to appropriate a sum of money for the erection of the necessary buildings. About two miles from Charlottesville, in the county of Albemarle, there was already an institution incorporated, called Central College. This was purchased by the State of Virginia, and Mr. Jefferson had the gratification of seeing the good

work really commenced in earnest under his own superintendence. Six years passed away before the work was sufficiently advanced for the commencement of college exercises. It has ever since been a favorite resort for the youth of the South.

**Mr. Jefferson** did not live to witness the established success of the University of Virginia, as his death occurred in 1826, only one year after it went into operation.

**The Constitution revised.**—In 1776 the young State of Virginia had formed for its government a constitution, which had been, on the whole, satisfactory. But still there were changes required, and the patriots of the State never ceased talking of such a change in it as would meet the wishes of all and secure harmony and good will for the future. The country was now quiet and prosperous, and there was more time to think of matters of this nature. The vote of the people was taken, and members appointed to a convention which met in the Capitol at Richmond, October 5, 1829. Very few of the great statesmen, with whom we have been acquainted in the past, were there. The voice of Patrick Henry and the pen of Mr. Jefferson and the sword of George Washington were buried with them in their graves, but their patriotic spirit still lived in many who had succeeded them. Mr. Madison, Mr. Monroe, and Mr. Marshall were still alive and present, to tell the younger men of the “spirit of ’76” and of ’98, and to hold up the “Bill of Rights” and the “Resolutions of ’98;” and do you remember John Randolph, whose sun rose just as that of Mr. Henry set, in 1799? Well, he was there too, and many others, whose names, which you will be proud to know as you grow older, swelled the list of the members of this Convention; and after a discussion which lasted three months, the changed and improved Constitution was adopted and the Convention adjourned.

**The Slavery Question.**—As years went on, the ques-

tion of slavery was a constant source of trouble between the different States of the Union. The difficulties to which it gave rise make up so large a portion of the history of the State that it is necessary to review the subject before we go any further.

**England supports Slavery.**—You will recall the fact that very early in the history of the State a Dutch vessel brought to the young colony a cargo of Africans, who were used as slaves. This proved the beginning of a train of evil for the whole country, for England took up the traffic, and in the face of the remonstrances of Virginia insisted upon her receiving and employing the slaves. Queen Anne owned one-fourth of the stock of the Royal African Company, as it was called, and it is computed that under the fostering care of England three hundred thousand slaves were brought to America.

**Virginia,** to check its growth, imposed a tax on all Africans brought into the colony, but the queen, the Parliament, and the merchants of England would not agree to give up a traffic which was bringing them enormous profits, and the repeal of the law was obtained. In 1775, the year before her separation from Great Britain, Virginia made an earnest remonstrance against the importation of African slaves, and was answered that nothing should be done to check a traffic so beneficial to the nation.

**Slaves in all the Colonies.**—At the time of the formation of the Union of States slavery existed in them all, with the single exception of Massachusetts, and there it had only ceased a short time before. With the exception of Massachusetts, the New England States were strong advocates for carrying on the trade, because they were largely engaged in it, and made a great deal of money by bringing slaves into the Southern ports and selling them to the planters, who also favored it because the negroes, being from a warm climate, could stand the work in the

cotton-fields under the Southern sun so much better than the whites, and they were glad to buy all that New England would bring. So important did the States of Georgia and South Carolina consider this institution that they would not agree to join the Union unless there was a law made that it should not be interfered with. Thus it was that the interests of the cotton States and New England were the same, and in the discussions in Congress they always furnished its strongest advocates for continuing the trade; but Virginia, on the contrary, always raised her voice against it, and was the first of the States to forbid it by law. Her ablest men—Jefferson, Madison, Monroe, Mason, Wythe, Lee, Page, Marshall, and others—considered it a great curse, and all expected that in a short time Virginia would be a free State.

**Abolition of the Slave-Trade.**—In 1778 Virginia and other States, north and south, brought a bill before Congress for the abolition of the slave-trade through the whole country. New England and the cotton States objected for reasons already given. A Mr. John Brown, of Rhode Island, argued that every country in the civilized world had the privilege of bringing slaves from Africa, and there seemed no reason why New England should not have the same advantages, especially as there was no doubt that the condition of the Africans themselves was bettered by the change. It was further argued that the loss to New England would be very heavy, as she had so much money invested in her slave-ships, so it was agreed to defer it for twenty years on this account. Thus in 1808 it became a law of the land that no slaves were to be brought into the country, but the traffic was for years secretly carried on. While New England became the most bitter abolition section, the cotton States held on to the institution, because it was guaranteed to them under the Constitution, and because they considered it to their advantage.

**The Northern States**, cleansed from what they now considered a great crime, looked with horror upon their Southern sisters who dared to hold their fellow-creatures in bondage; while the Southern people, having a large part of their property invested in this way, and deeming the negro necessary to the cultivation of their crops, contended for their rights under the Constitution to keep their slaves.

**A Bitter Animosity.**—The feeling upon this subject grew in bitterness, many individuals at the North regarding it as a religious duty to purge the Union from this great evil, and the South holding to it more obstinately from this interference with their legal rights. The question was continually discussed in Congress; abolitionists came South and enticed the slaves from their masters; books were written giving false or exaggerated pictures of the condition of the slave in the South, representing the masters as cruel tyrants. And thus a bitter animosity grew up between the two sections. Visitors from the North were looked upon with suspicion; books from the North were banished from Southern territory; Southern Legislatures made laws forbidding the master to teach his slave to read, because of these dangerous books which they would be supplied with. Travellers going North dared not take their servants with them, for fear of being subjected to trouble and loss.

**Virginia**, occupying a middle position between these opposing sections, was influenced by contact with both. Slavery had been entailed upon her almost against her will; and we have seen how she paused, even in the midst of the bloody scenes of the Revolution, to make laws that no more slaves should be brought within her boundaries. From that time the question of freeing them was constantly discussed in her Legislature, and a large number of her statesmen advocated it. It became a common occurrence for slave-holders, at their death, to leave their

slaves free and provided for. John Randolph of Roanoke did this, and appropriated a large portion of his property for their support. Thus the gradual banishment of slavery was looked upon as a certainty. Owing to this condition of affairs, slavery ceased to be regarded in the State as a matter of profit; the buying and selling of slaves was at least rare. Slave-dealers were looked upon with disgust. Families of negroes were retained in the same household for generations, passing down from father to son, until the affectionate connection between the Virginia master and his servant, who had shared his boyish sports, and now performed the duties of a mild servitude, became proverbial.

**The Feeling in Virginia.**—We have seen from this history, both in her contests with England and under other circumstances, that Virginia never willingly conceded to another what she considered her rights; so it happened that when she found that her Northern sisters were attempting to force her to emancipate her slaves, the spirit of the Old Dominion rose. She remembered her Declaration of Rights, she recalled her State sovereignty, and tightening her grasp upon her property which she was beginning to hold so loosely, she declared her intention to act for herself in the matter, made stricter laws with regard to her slave population, and joined hands with her Southern sisters upon the disputed question.

**New Parties.**—The breach now went on widening. The political parties of the country were no longer "Federalist" and "Republican," "Whig" and "Democrat," but Slavery and Antislavery. New States were constantly being made, and the question constantly discussed was whether slave-holders would be permitted to carry their property into these new States. The Constitution of the United States permitted this, and many Southerners in-

sisted upon their rights; but when they attempted it, they were beset by determined men, their property taken away, and many of the new States became the scenes of violence and bloodshed.

**John Brown's Raid.**—One of the fiercest of the Free-soilers, as they were called, was John Brown, of Kansas. His whole life had been one of adventure, and now, in his old age, the idea of freeing the slave seems to have taken full possession of his thoughts. He seems to have been utterly destitute of fear, and although his life had been a very wicked one, on this one point I think he believed himself right, and was perhaps not so much to blame as many intelligent men at the North who encouraged him in his violent course of conduct. Encouraged by these, John Brown laid a deep scheme for freeing the negroes, first in Virginia, and then carrying his victorious arms into the other Southern States. For two years did he prepare for this object. Silently and secretly he purchased arms. Those he intended for the use of the negroes were simple pikes, but capable of doing deadly work in the hands of a skilful workman. He had with him only eighteen men, but he expected to have his numbers swelled by the slaves as soon as his presence was known.

**Harper's Ferry captured.**—On Sunday night, the 16th of October, 1859, he crossed the Potomac from Maryland, and entered Harper's Ferry, captured the United States Arsenal at that place, and sent out armed men to capture the prominent slave-holders in the neighborhood and to announce liberty to the negroes. So silently was all this done that even the citizens of the town remained in perfect ignorance of the invasion until the next morning, when every one who left his house was at once captured and imprisoned in an engine-house very near to the arsenal. In the mean time the armed parties returned, bringing in some gentlemen prisoners and many slaves, in whose hands the

pikes were placed, and they were ordered to "strike for freedom;" but the poor creatures only looked frightened to death, and showed little disposition to take advantage of their opportunities, and John Brown found that he had nothing to hope from their assistance.

**The Invaders defeated.**—Soon the news of this invasion of Virginia spread through the country, and the excitement surpassed anything ever known there before. The people flocked towards Harper's Ferry from all directions, with arms in their hands, and before night Brown and his party were shut up in the engine-house and surrounded by indignant Virginians. As soon as the news reached Washington, the government ordered a party of marines to proceed to Harper's Ferry under the command of Colonel Robert E. Lee, and Brown was summoned to surrender; he refused, and the engine-house was stormed by the marines, and in less than thirty-six hours after he had entered Virginia, John Brown and his party were either killed or captured, and the insurrection which he had taken two years to prepare came to nothing; not a negro volunteered to join him. Ten of his men were killed, and all the rest wounded, including Brown himself. The first blood they shed was that of a free negro named Heyward, and besides, they killed five of their opposers and wounded nine. The criminals were brought to trial at Charlestown, Virginia, and were executed by the laws of Virginia; and all over the North meetings of approval were held.

Thus ended the "John Brown raid," as it was called; but this was the commencement of a series of events which constitute a new era in the history of Virginia.

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION

1. From what year to what year does this chapter include?
2. What period followed these events in the history of Virginia?
3. Name the first five Presidents of the United States, the length of time they served, and from what States they came.
4. What did Mr. Jefferson do at the close of his Presidential term, and how did he employ his advancing years?
5. To the accomplishment of what idea did he devote his thoughts?
6. Where did he propose building the University of Virginia?
7. Tell of his difficulties, and how he accomplished his design.
8. When did Mr. Jefferson die?
9. What next engaged the attention of the statesmen of the United States?
10. Tell of the Virginia Convention.
11. What three great patriots do we miss at this Convention?
12. Who were there, and what of the past did they recall?
13. Where have you known John Randolph before?
14. What was accomplished by the Convention?
15. What institution now became a source of trouble?
16. What made the difference of feeling on the subject?
17. How did the two sections regard it?
18. What position did Virginia occupy?
19. What effect did opposition have upon her, and why?
20. What were the two political parties in the country now?
21. Who was John Brown, and what was his history?
22. What scheme did he form?
23. Tell of his raid into Virginia.
24. How did it end?
25. What period does this mark in the history of Virginia?

## EXPLANATORY LETTER.

---

MY DEAR YOUNG FRIENDS:—When I wrote the thirtieth chapter of this book, I said to you: The John Brown raid was the beginning of a series of events which constitute a new era in the history of Virginia,—too new to be described with that spirit of calmness and impartiality which should characterize the historian. So here our history of the old commonwealth closes. I have held up before you a truthful portrait of the Virginia of the past,—a mother of whom all of her children may justly be proud. May her record in the future lose none of its brightness; may she always be found standing firm on the side of truth and right; and may her children ever live worthy of the examples set them by their forefathers; and thus, by their moderation and wisdom, pilot the old ship of state through the sea of troubles which now threatens to overwhelm her.

The years which have passed since then have given time for the passions of men to cool, and it is right that the children of Virginia should have a true history of the part the State took in that period which “tried men’s souls” as in a furnace of fire. This is the more necessary, because most of the histories of the war which have been written for the schools have been compiled by those who were victors in the conflict, and they naturally give their side of the question, and fail to do justice to the motives which influenced the Southern States in their action. And while I feel that every one who has anything to do with forming the opinions of the rising generation should do all he can

to heal the wounds of the past, cultivate that patriotism which is one of the highest elements of our nature, and cherish that kindliness of feeling between the different sections of our country which will prevent in the future a repetition of the woes of the past, yet it is only justice that the descendants of those who laid down their lives in the war should know that they laid them down, not as "Rebels" against the government to which they had sworn allegiance, but with the truest loyalty and obedience to the commands of their States, to which they honestly believed they owed their first obedience.

The object which I have set before me in preparing this supplement is to show you that Virginia never, in her whole history, occupied a prouder position than when, with patience, wisdom, and moderation, she placed herself between the two sections and exhausted every means to preserve the Union and avert the war, and, when all failed, threw in her lot with the side which fought for the principles which she had always advocated. She was the battle-ground; her fair fields were desolated; her groves were levelled, and her soil stained with the blood of her sons. She was left desolated, impoverished, and bleeding, but with her honor unstained, the crown of her fame untarnished.

In order that you may understand the questions which gave rise to the war, it is necessary that we review some facts which I have already told you; and it has occurred to me that I might make this more interesting if I gave it the form of a letter, writing as one friend to another; and I want each one who reads it to feel that the letter is intended for *you*, from a friend, and to try and understand every word, and I will, on my part, strive to be as simple and clear as possible.

You know that when the government of England became so oppressive to her colonies in America, they deter-

mined to throw off the yoke of England and govern themselves. There were thirteen different colonies which made this determination, and they became thirteen different States, each with a governor and legislature of its own. But their interests in many things were the same; for instance, though separate, they were one in their resistance to England; and thus, fighting all together for an object of mutual interest, they were bound to each other with ties of affection; so they all signed the Declaration of Independence, and formed a government in which they united as the United States of America. Now, when they joined in this united government, there were many of the great and wise men of all the States who were very much afraid that the Union might interfere with the State governments. So, in framing the laws, or Constitution, of the United States, they tried to make it as plain as possible that each State was to have its own government, and that the United States government was not to interfere in anything in which there were no common interests. You remember, in chapter twenty-fourth, the words in which Virginia instructed her delegates to the General Congress in Philadelphia.

But, as time went on, there arose controversies over this very matter, particularly on the subject of slavery; those who were opposed to it contending that the general government should interfere to prevent its extension into the Territories and new States, and some of the more extreme opponents going so far as to advocate interference with it in the localities where it already existed. The South contended that the general government had nothing to do with it, and that it was a domestic institution which each State should be left to manage for itself, with the right on the part of its citizens to carry their slaves into the Territories that belonged alike to all the States. Every year this question was discussed in Congress, and, as is always the

case when people quarrel, bitterness grew between the sections, and the John Brown raid, in October, 1859, gave the finishing stroke to the matter. Then the Southern States began to talk of withdrawing, or seceding, from the Union.

During the fall of 1860 there was an election to be held for President of the United States, and there were four candidates brought out. The one who was elected was Abraham Lincoln, and he was chosen by that party which was opposed to slavery and was pledged to prevent its extension beyond the limits it then occupied, and whose extreme members even wished, as I have said, to interfere with it in the States. So most of the Southern States determined to withdraw, believing that the success of the party which was bitterly opposed to slavery would lead to a violent interference with their domestic affairs. South Carolina seceded on the 20th of December, and was followed in two months by six others. Great anxiety was felt that Virginia should join the Southern Confederacy, both on account of her influence in the Union and the fact that from her position between the two sections she would necessarily be the battle-ground. But it was not the way with Virginia to act hastily. She loved the Union, and knew that war would bring sorrow and loss to her. So she proposed a peace congress to meet in Washington on the 4th of February, and at the same time the Legislature called a convention of the people of Virginia to meet in Richmond, on the same day, to decide what course Virginia should take. The Peace Congress met and accomplished nothing, and the Convention sat until May, watching the course of events.

On the 15th of April, President Lincoln issued a proclamation for seventy-five thousand troops to suppress the action which the people in some of the Southern States had considered it proper to take in order to maintain their

rights. The Southern people considered this proclamation as a declaration of war, and as a violation of the Constitution, which declared Congress the war-making power; and when, in the same proclamation, the President called upon Virginia and all the other States to raise large armies to subdue the South, there remained nothing for Virginia to do but to pass an ordinance of secession, and throw in her lot, for better or worse, with those States which were about to fight to the death for those principles which she had always advocated. The Convention, which had been sitting in Richmond since the 4th of February, passed the ordinance of secession on the 17th of April, three days after the Lincoln proclamation. Always, however, particular to do things lawfully, Virginia decided to submit the ordinance to the vote of the people, who, as sole sovereigns, had the right to decide. This would take some time, in the condition of the country at that juncture. So the 23d of May was fixed upon. There was no doubt as to their decision. As the whole country was in a state of dissatisfaction about the "slowness of Virginia," as they termed it, they declared that her Commissioners had been "kicked out of Washington," and many other things natural in the excitement and eagerness of the times.

But, while it was necessary to take the vote of the people before Virginia could be properly said to be out of the Union, it was also necessary, as she thought, to take possession of the government workshops at Harper's Ferry, Norfolk, and other points. So the Virginia troops were called out and ordered to seize these points. About this I will tell you more in my next chapter.

Maryland was quite as earnest as Virginia for the Southern cause, but, because of her position, it was harder for her to join the Southern States, and the North determined that she should not do so, and they did succeed in preventing her secession, but her brave soldiers fought shoulder to shoulder

with Virginians. And when the Northern troops passed through Baltimore to go against the South, they were met by a mob of the citizens, who declared that this should not be. Blood was shed on both sides, and the governor, who acted in the interests of the North, notified the United States government that the people could not be controlled if troops were brought through the city; so they were taken through Annapolis, and Marylanders were assured that the troops were only to be used to defend the Capitol, at Washington. Maryland suffered greatly at this time; her prominent citizens were arrested and imprisoned, and troops were raised on her soil; but she was true at heart all through the struggle, and spared nothing of men, money, and stores to help the cause she loved.

And this brings me to the war, and to the end of my letter. I hope it has been simple enough for you all to understand, and that you are prepared to listen to the story of one of the most wonderful struggles the world ever saw, with the interest it deserves, and the intelligence which will enable you through life to judge candidly of the issues involved, so that you may be able to appreciate the true patriotism of those who gave up everything for what they believed to be right. It remains for your generation to save from that dishonor which is apt to surround an unsuccessful struggle, the cause for which your fathers died. Accept this duty as a sacred trust, and hold it in perfect consistency with the truest patriotism to the government to which we all belong.

I am your true friend,

MARY TUCKER MAGILL.

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. What was the condition of affairs when the former portion of this book was written, that prevented the author from continuing the history?
  2. What change has taken place in men's minds?
  3. Why is it necessary that the history of the war should be written?
  4. Why did the colonies separate from England?
  5. What is meant by State rights?
  6. What difference of opinion existed on this point?
  7. What was the great subject of difference between the States?
  8. Was slavery the cause of the war? If not, what was the real question?
  9. What do you mean by secession?
  10. Upon what grounds did the South think that she had a right to secede?
  11. Which State seceded first?
  12. What course did Virginia take?
  13. What decided her to pass an ordinance of secession?
  14. What was the course pursued by Maryland?
  15. What duty should this generation accept as a sacred trust?
- 

## CHAPTER XXXI.

1861.

DESTRUCTION OF GOVERNMENT PROPERTY IN VIRGINIA—RICHMOND MADE THE CAPITAL OF THE CONFEDERACY—LEE APPOINTED COMMANDER-IN-CHIEF OF THE TROOPS IN VIRGINIA—"STONEWALL JACKSON"—PLAN FOR THE INVASION OF VIRGINIA—COUNTER-PLANS—JOHNSTON—BEAUREGARD—"JEB STUART."

When Virginia seceded she was entirely without preparation for war. Her only standing army was a company of soldiers who guarded the public property at Richmond. There were throughout the State a number of volunteer companies, many of which had been organized under the feeling of alarm caused by the John Brown raid.

The Armory of the State was in a neglected condition, and contained only a few thousand antiquated and almost worthless muskets. But the authorities set to work in

earnest. The manufacture of cannon and fire-arms was commenced and the State was in a blaze of excitement with military preparations. It was deemed important to take possession of Harper's Ferry, at the junction of the Potomac and Shenandoah Rivers, where the United States government had military workshops and a great number of arms. The governor ordered some volunteer companies from Staunton and Winchester to capture the place. The militia of the neighborhood commenced assembling for the same purpose. The United States officer in command, hearing of these hostile movements, without awaiting orders from Washington, on the night of the 18th of April attempted to destroy the factories and arsenal and military storehouse by setting them on fire. Before the work of destruction was completed the Virginia troops arrived and rescued a large quantity of machinery, cannon, and small-arms of great value to the new government. These were removed south.

**The navy-yard and shipping at Norfolk** were also set on fire and abandoned; but, as was the case at Harper's Ferry, the work was too hastily done to be fully accomplished. The valuable dock, costing many millions of dollars, was saved. Fortress Monroe was garrisoned by Federal troops under General Butler.

**War was now fairly begun.** The Confederate government removed from Montgomery, where it had been organized, after the secession of Alabama, to Richmond, which was chosen as the permanent capital of the Southern Confederacy. Colonel Robert E. Lee, who had given up his position in the United States army on the secession of Virginia, was offered by the governor, with the consent of the Convention of Virginia, the command of the forces of the State. He was the son of "Light-Horse Harry," Lee, a famous Revolutionary officer, and had himself won a high reputation in the Mexican War. The esteem in

which he was held would have insured him the principal command in the armies of the United States if he had remained in the service of that government. But he determined to share the fortunes of his native State, Virginia. He was soon afterwards put in chief command of the Confederate troops in Virginia.

**Military Proceedings.**—Of course the army was perfectly undisciplined. This happy land knew nothing of the arts of war; so a military camp of instruction was established near Richmond, which was called Camp Lee. It was determined to bring some of the cadets from the military school at Lexington to drill the soldiers, and Major Thomas J. Jackson, then a professor in this school, afterwards renowned as the Christian hero, "Stonewall Jackson," was ordered to bring them to Richmond. Major Jackson wrote to his wife from Richmond that he had never seen anything like the military ardor through the country. At every station where they stopped petitions were presented to him to let them have a cadet to drill the men in the neighborhood. The greatest enthusiasm prevailed everywhere through the South; every branch of business was deserted for the army; even the boys in the schools thought the time spent in study was time thrown away when the South was to be defended.

**"Stonewall Jackson."**—The camp of instruction was in charge of another officer, but Major Jackson during his short stay there informally aided in the drill and discipline of the new levies that were flocking in from the Southern States, using the cadets whom he had brought from the Military Institute as assistants. While he was thus engaged, the Governor of Virginia nominated him for colonel of volunteers. This appointment excited some surprise, for, although he had distinguished himself in the Mexican War, that was long enough ago for it to be forgotten, and he was only known to the world generally as an unpre-

tending professor at the Military Institute, who was laughed at by the boys for his eccentricities. When Governor Letcher nominated him for the position of colonel of volunteers, some one asked, contemptuously, "Who is this Jackson?" The answer came promptly from one who knew him, "He is one who if ordered to hold a post will never leave it, so long as he has life to defend it!"

He received the appointment, and was ordered to Harper's Ferry on the 27th of April to take command of the troops who were assembling there. These were the holiday days of the war. The army was made up principally of young men who had been reared in luxurious homes and knew nothing of the hardships which lay in their paths. Full of military ardor, and lacking the wisdom which only comes with experience, they expected to conquer their foes in the first battle and live heroes ever after. But it was not long before they learned that war is not all enjoyment. Sickness attacked them; the measles and dysentery were enemies which overcame hundreds and laid them low before they even heard the sound of cannon. Oh, how sad it was to go through the hospitals and see those young boys, hardly more than children, with all their longing for military glory, dying on their hard pallets before they had been able to strike even one blow for the cause in which they had enlisted! General Joseph E. Johnston was appointed by the Confederate government to take command at Harper's Ferry on the 23d of May, and Colonel Jackson was appointed to a brigade consisting of four regiments of infantry, or foot-soldiers, who were Virginians, and constituted the "Stonewall Brigade" afterwards so celebrated in the annals of the war.

**The First Bloodshed.**—On the 24th of May the Fire Zouaves, U.S.A., marched across the Long Bridge at Washington, and proceeding to Alexandria, took possession of the place in the name of the United States. This was the first

invasion of the State by the enemy. No opposition was expected to this, as there were no Southern troops at Alexandria; but it was not a bloodless victory, and the war was fated to begin with a citizen of the State giving his life in defence of his home. As the troops entered the city they saw floating from the top of the Marshall House—a small hotel—a Confederate flag. Colonel Ellsworth, the officer in command, at once declared his intention to take it down, and entering the house, he ascended the stairs to the roof and took down the flag, and commenced his descent. At the first landing he encountered Mr. Jackson, the owner of the house. He was half dressed, having come out in great haste upon hearing of the invasion of his premises. "This is my trophy," said Colonel Ellsworth to him, holding up the flag. "And this is mine!" answered Jackson, firing a pistol-ball into his breast. He fell dead instantly, and in another second Jackson fell across his body, pierced by the bayonets and bullets of Ellsworth's followers.

**The Federal Plans.**—The great object intended to be accomplished by the invasion of Virginia was the capture of Richmond, which, as the capital of the State and the Confederacy, would strike a blow at the whole cause and place the State again under Federal rule. Four armies were to invade Virginia: the first by way of Fortress Monroe up the Peninsula between the James and York Rivers; the second, of which the regiment under Ellsworth was the forerunner, by way of Manassas to Gordonsville, and so on to Richmond; the third was to enter the State at Williamsport and march up the Valley of the Shenandoah; and the fourth was to come from the northwest towards the same point. If you will take a map of Virginia you will understand the whole plan perfectly, and thus will follow the story of the war with fuller interest.

**Confederate Movements.**—Of course the Confederate government had so to divide the Southern forces as to

prevent the success of this plan. So an army was sent to the Peninsula under the command of Generals Magruder and Huger. Another was sent to Manassas under General Beauregard, a gallant soldier who had fired the first gun of the war at Charleston, South Carolina. The third army was at Harper's Ferry under General Johnston, another Virginian, whose reputation and experience made him well fitted for the important command to which he was assigned; and under him was Colonel Jackson. The first of the four lines to strike was in North-western Virginia, where the Confederates met with a great disaster. The army was destroyed, six hundred captured, and their general (Garnett) killed. This encouraged the victors and discouraged the Confederates very much. On the 10th of June there was a battle at Big Bethel, on the Peninsula, where four thousand Federals were defeated by eighteen hundred Confederates, which, though a much less important affair than the West Virginia defeat, served to encourage the army, which at this period was very easily depressed or elated.

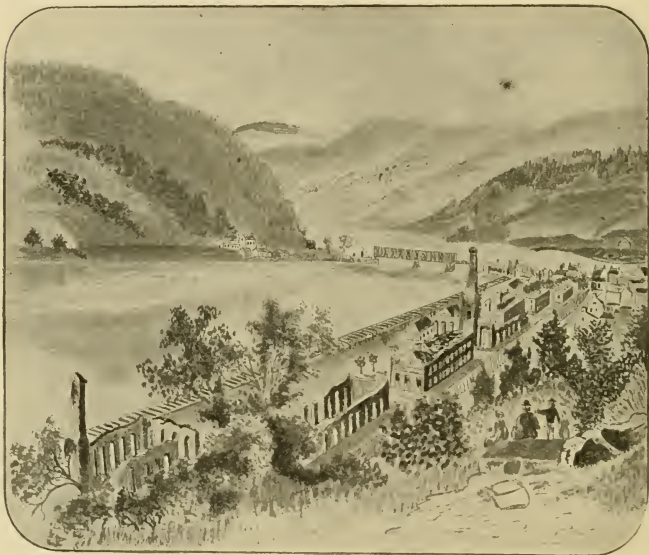
**The Confederate army** was very much smaller than that of the United States, for this reason: the South had been divided into large plantations, and had few large cities; the population, therefore, was much smaller, and besides, the North could draw from the whole world. The North also had the treasury of the United States, and the South was poor. Thus it required a great deal of management so to use these small armies as to meet the great forces opposed to them. But they were wisely placed in positions where they could be thrown together quickly if any one point was attacked. A great deal of strategy and watchfulness were required to make up the difference in numbers. So while General Beauregard kept his whole attention fixed upon the daily increasing army between him, at Manassas, and Alexandria, General Johnston was watching an army

of eighteen thousand men which had crossed the Potomac River at Williamsport, and was moving towards the Valley of the Shenandoah. The army under General McClellan, which had defeated General Garnett in the north-west, having nothing opposed to it, was advancing, twenty thousand strong, while the Confederates did not have one-fourth of their number to oppose them. Couriers were kept going with despatches between the armies all the time, and the cavalry was untiring in its vigilance.

**"Jeb Stuart."**—Among the Virginia cavalry officers (and we are obliged to confine ourselves to them for want of space and because this is a history of Virginia and of Virginians) there was one who was connected with Johnston's army who merits especial mention: General J. E. B. Stuart, familiarly known as "Jeb Stuart," who by his indefatigable energy and youthful ardor infused into his service a dashing boldness which made him like a guardian spirit to the army. He was educated at West Point and had fought the Indians on the prairies, so that all of his experience served to fit him for his present task. He appeared to know every movement of the enemy by instinct. He seemed to be in a dozen places at once. Riding into camp at a full gallop, he would hastily report his knowledge of affairs to the commanding officer, and then, without taking time for rest, he was off and away to join his trusted comrades in dogging the steps of the enemy, running incredible risks and laughing over his hair-breadth escapes. General Johnston said he was like a "yellow-jacket;" he was no sooner brushed off than he was there again.

**Harper's Ferry** was a most important post to the Federal government, as it commanded the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad, which crossed the Potomac at this point, and was the shortest route for soldiers and provisions to pass to and from Washington. For this reason the Confederate government was very anxious to hold it; but the Secretary of War

had such confidence in General Johnston that he told him that he must do as he thought best. So when General Stuart brought in the news that Patterson was advancing towards Martinsburg, and that McClellan had reached Romney (find these places on the map), he thought it was best to move farther in the Valley, so as to keep these two



HARPER'S FERRY.

armies from joining and crushing him and then going down to Manassas to join the Army of the Potomac against Beauregard. So he made his preparations to move by burning the great railroad bridge over the Potomac at Harper's Ferry, so that the United States would have no way of transporting troops and provisions. Then he withdrew to Bunker Hill, about twelve miles from the little city of Winchester. There he offered battle to General Patterson;

but Patterson did not want to fight, and retired. Johnston then fell back to Winchester, threw up fortifications, and waited for news from Stuart. He did not wait long, for Stuart soon reported that Patterson was again on the move towards Martinsburg, and Jackson, on the 20th of June, was sent with his brigade to Martinsburg.

**Thirst for Battle.**—The writer of this was in Winchester at this time, and will never forget the enthusiasm of the soldiers at the prospect of a fight. They had been in camp so long that they were impatient for some activity, and they knew that they were apt to have it if they followed Jackson. Jackson paused at Martinsburg long enough to destroy all of the rolling stock of the railroad at that place which he could not send to Winchester, and then he joined Stuart in front of Patterson's army, near Williamsport. There could not be a better combination than that which was made by these two officers. This was the first of many occasions when they served together. With Stuart to watch, and Jackson to take advantage of his information, there was no possible opportunity lost. Jackson had orders not to fight, but to "feel the enemy." But this "feeling" amounted to a sharp little skirmish at Falling Waters; just enough to give the hungry boys a taste of battle. Jackson then fell back slowly to Darkesville, about four miles from Martinsburg, where he was joined by Johnston. Patterson took possession of Martinsburg, where he was reinforced. Johnston continued to offer battle, but when he found that Patterson did not intend to fight he returned to Winchester, leaving Stuart in front of the enemy.

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. What orders were issued when the news from Virginia reached Washington?
2. Give an account of the changes that were made.
3. From what point and to what point was the Confederate government removed?
4. Who was appointed commander-in-chief of the forces in Virginia?
5. Who was appointed to drill the soldiers at Camp Lee?
6. Where was Colonel Jackson next sent?
7. Who took his place at Harper's Ferry?
8. Give an account of the taking of Alexandria.
9. What was the plan for the invasion of Virginia?
10. How did the Confederates prepare to prevent the taking of Richmond?
11. Which line of approach was struck first, and what was the result?
12. Which was struck second, and with what result?
13. Who was the cavalry officer with Johnston in the Shenandoah Valley?
14. What was Beauregard's position at Manassas?
15. How did the Confederates make up the difference which existed in the size of the armies?
16. Why was Harper's Ferry regarded as so important, and why did Johnston retire from it?
17. Give an account of Jackson's advance to meet Patterson.

---

CHAPTER XXXII.

## 1861.—CONTINUED.

MANŒUVRES OF JOHNSTON AND PATTERSON—JOHNSTON CHANGES HIS BASE—LINE OF BATTLE—BATTLE OF MANASSAS—FLIGHT OF THE FEDERAL ARMY—CHANGES IN THE ARMY—JACKSON'S FAREWELL TO HIS BRIGADE—BATTLES OF LEESBURG AND THE ALLEGHANY.

The manœuvring between Generals Johnston and Patterson continued for about two weeks after Johnston returned to Winchester. Each knew that the great battle would be fought at Manassas, and the object of Patterson was to prevent Johnston from reinforcing Beauregard by keeping near enough to make him believe all the time that

he would meet him in battle. The author remembers well the excitement which arose every day among the young soldiers, so eager for the fight, when in the morning they would advance to offer battle to Patterson, who was only twelve miles away at Bunker Hill, and how cast down they were when they would have to return with the news that Patterson had refused to fight. But although the soldiers could not tell the reason of all these strange movements, the officers in command knew all about it, and were not at all surprised when a despatch was received on the 19th of July to the effect that General McDowell, who was in command of the Army of the Potomac, was marching to attack Beauregard.

**Johnston's March.**—There had actually been, on the 18th of July, a slight engagement at Bull Run with the advance of his army, and Johnston was ordered to join Beauregard as soon as possible. General Jackson had just received his commission as brigadier-general, with an important addition to his command. Johnston lost no time in obeying instructions. Leaving Stuart to bring up his rear, and so to act as to prevent Patterson from suspecting his (Johnston's) departure, away he went across the mountain at Ashby's Gap, and was at Manassas, fifty miles away, before Patterson suspected the movement.

**The battle of Manassas** was the first general engagement of the war, and both armies were entirely inexperienced. The Federal army was fifty-two thousand strong, while the Confederates had thirty-two thousand men. The equipments of the Federal army—by which you must understand the fire-arms, artillery, uniforms, teams, and tents—were magnificent. The commissary department was perfect. They had every preparation made for their comfort possible for an army in the field. The Northern newspapers had been preparing the country for this move for weeks. It was expected that the Confederates would

be crushed at the first blow. So confident were the Federals of success that a large number of citizens, including ladies, came from Washington and waited in the rear of their army, prepared to welcome the victors with feasting and rejoicing. The Confederates, on the other hand, were poorly equipped and wretchedly clad. Their artillery and fire-arms were of the greatest variety of old-fashioned patterns. Few of the cannon were over six-pounders, while a large number of the infantry were armed with common muskets, and many of the cavalry with shot-guns which they had used in hunting game in the woods. The long lines of army wagons with their snow-white covers, drawn by well-fed, strong horses, on the Federal side, contrasted strikingly with the coverless vehicles and the meagre horse-flesh in the Confederate rear. But the odds in other respects were all on the Confederate side, for they fought on their own soil, to repel the invader and defend their homes; and these incentives more than counterbalanced the superior numbers and equipment of their foe.

**Positions of the Troops.**—It is not in my power to give a detailed account of the battle. That is an oft-told tale that does not need repetition. I confine myself to the history which you will not find elsewhere. The Confederate line was eight miles long, extending along the southern bank of Bull Run, which was fordable at various points; and at these fords were placed the different divisions of the army. The Federal army was about three miles away, extending along the road from Centreville to Alexandria. In the artillery fight of the 18th, the effort was made to cross two of the fords of Bull Run, but Beauregard drove them back, and now the plan was changed, and it was determined by the Federal commander to march a portion of his army around the head of the Confederate line, which was near a stone bridge, and by

getting in the rear of the Confederates, crush them between the two Federal lines, or force them to retreat. This brought the heavy fighting just to that point,—the stone bridge. There the fight raged hour after hour with varying success. At one time all seemed lost to the Confederates, when reinforcements arrived, under Generals Bee and Bartow, to the assistance of Colonel Evans, who was outflanked and sorely pressed. Here for two hours the Confederate left wing resisted the assault of the enemy, but despite its heroic efforts it was steadily forced back by overwhelming numbers. The shattered ranks were exhausted and dispirited, while the Federal army was exultant.

**At this critical moment** General Jackson reached the scene with his brigade of two thousand six hundred men. These he quickly disposed upon the crest of a ridge, and posted seventeen pieces of artillery along his line. On the right of this brigade General Bee formed the remains of the forces under him and Evans. The whole numbered about six thousand five hundred. Against these a Federal column of twenty thousand, mostly fresh reserves, with twenty-four pieces of artillery, made impetuous charges from eleven till three o'clock, when again it seemed as if the day was about to be lost to the Confederates. General Bee rode up to Jackson and said in despairing tones, "General, they are beating us back." "Then," replied Jackson, "we will give them the bayonet." This inspired Bee with fresh resolution, and hurrying back to his dispirited men he exclaimed, "There is Jackson standing like a stone wall. Rally behind the Virginians." This circumstance gave to Jackson's brigade the name of the *Stonewall Brigade*. A bayonet charge was made before which the enemy recoiled and fled. The gallant Bee fell pierced by a ball. But fresh regiments continued to pour in, and the Federals extended their line still farther to the

right. It was now four o'clock in the afternoon, and the Federals, who had been repulsed but not routed, were preparing for another determined effort.



JACKSON AT MANASSAS (BULL RUN).

**Johnston's Troops arrive.**—At this critical juncture the reserves from the Confederate right, nine miles distant, arrived under Generals Early and Holmes, and arrested the flank movement of the Federals, while at the same time General Kirby Smith reached the field with the remainder of the army from the Valley, who had arrived at Manassas Junction on the cars while the battle was raging, and following the sound of the cannon and musketry, assaulted the right wing of the Federal army. Consternation seized the ranks of the enemy from this unexpected attack, and giving way they fled in confusion from the field, and did not stop until they were across the Long Bridge and within the defences of Washington. General

Bartow was killed while rallying his brave Georgians. While his life was ebbing away he exclaimed, "Yes, they have killed me, but never give up the field." General Kirby Smith was dangerously wounded. Thus ended one of the most remarkable battles of the world's history,—the baptism of the nation in blood. The Confederates captured twenty-eight cannon and five thousand muskets. General Jackson, seeing the demoralization and panic-stricken rout of the enemy, remarked that he believed with ten thousand fresh troops he could go into Washington.

**The "Stonewall Brigade."**—After the battle of Manassas, General Jackson was again promoted, and ordered to a new command in the Valley of the Shenandoah. This command was made up from the army which had been doing a great deal of hard fighting in West Virginia; but it had accomplished very little on account of the nature of the country, and it was determined to make the army more compact by bringing the different parts of it nearer together. In taking command of this division General Jackson was separated from the "Stonewall Brigade," which was ordered to remain under the command of General Johnston. This was a great trial to him and to the brigade, as he had led them from the beginning of the war and the warmest affection existed between them. But orders must be obeyed, and it only remained for him to take leave of them, which he did in words too full of interest to be omitted. After speaking to them with the tender pride of a father of the record that they had already made, and assuring them of the interest with which he would watch their future, his calm self-control gave place to the most profound emotion; his lips quivered, and, throwing the bridle on the neck of his horse, he rose in his stirrups and, extending his arms towards them, said, "In the Army of the Shenandoah you were the First

Brigade! In the Army of the Potomac you were the First Brigade! In the Second Corps of the army you are the First Brigade! You are the First Brigade in the affections of your general; and I hope by your future deeds and bearing you will be handed down to posterity as the First Brigade in this our second War for Independence. Farewell!" May we not say that this invocation has been fulfilled? But the separation between Jackson and the First Brigade lasted only a few weeks, for, much to the delight of all parties, they were ordered to join his command in November.

**The only battles** that were fought on the soil of Virginia during the remainder of the year 1861 were one near Leesburg, where eighteen hundred Confederates under Colonel Evans defeated eight thousand Federals with dreadful slaughter, and another in which General Edward Johnson with a very small army met a larger force of Federals in the Alleghany Mountains, and after fighting for six hours compelled them to leave him in possession of the field.

**Thus ended the year 1861**; and although the Confederates had no reason to be discouraged (for they had gained many more battles than they had lost, and that against fearful odds), yet they had learned that war is a grave and sorrowful business, and both sides now knew that the final victory could only be gained by either side after hard fighting.

---

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. What was the real object of the movements of Johnston and Patterson?
2. What happened on the 19th of July?
3. Give an account of the change of base.
4. Describe the Federal army.
5. Describe the Confederate army.
6. What made up the difference between them?

7. What was the position of the two armies?
  8. Describe the battle of Manassas.
  9. Give instances to illustrate the spirit of the men.
  10. What changes were made?
  11. Give an account of Jackson's farewell to the "Stonewall Brigade."
  12. What other battles were fought on the soil of Virginia during the remainder of the year 1861?
- 

## CHAPTER XXXIII.

1862.

SITUATION OF CONFEDERATE FORCES—EXPEDITION TO ROMNEY—  
JACKSON RESIGNS—"ON TO RICHMOND"—BATTLE OF KERNSTOWN  
—CHANGE OF BASE FROM MANASSAS TO RICHMOND—JACKSON IN  
THE VALLEY.

**McClellan in Command.**—The year 1862 opened for the Confederacy with much to encourage, and yet with some discouragements. They had held their own and had inflicted some severe blows upon the enemy. They had gained valuable experience in the art of war. The United States, on the other hand, so far from being discouraged by their reverses, were determined on the conquest of the South. New armies were raised and money flowed into the treasury in a steady stream. General Scott had been superseded as commander-in-chief of the army by General McClellan, who, from his successes in West Virginia, was extolled as the greatest hero the world had ever known. At the head of the "Grand Army of the Potomac," consisting of fifty thousand men, it was confidently expected that he would "walk over Johnston" and his forty thousand men at Manassas without difficulty, and thus wipe out the stain of the great defeat there, which had been a stinging mortification to the people of the North.

**Jackson held the Valley** with ten thousand men, having been reinforced by Generals Loring and Henry Jackson with their forces from West Virginia. From his post in Winchester he kept his eagle eye flashing from one point to another, watching the columns of the enemy that were waiting the proper moment to swoop down upon him and drive him from the face of the earth. He well knew that each of the three columns that were threatening him largely outnumbered the forces under his command, and that if they succeeded in making a junction he could never resist them, and that without his protection to Johnston's flank the latter would be utterly destroyed and Richmond and the whole State placed at the mercy of the enemy.

**The armies were in winter-quarters** and there was not much fear of an advance before spring opened. How could the time be best utilized when there was so much to be done? There was a large force in Northwest Virginia wintering at Romney and Bath, and Jackson determined, as the weather was very fine, to drive these out of Virginia and leave a detachment of his army to protect that part of the country, and thus break up the plans of the enemy. Accordingly he started from Winchester on the 1st of January, on the road towards Romney. Unfortunately, the fine weather came to an end the day after they started and a most terrible winter storm set in. (The account of the sufferings of the men remind one of the story of Napoleon crossing the Alps.) But still Jackson pressed forward, in the face of murmuring, dissatisfied officers and suffering soldiers, and through the most incredible difficulties succeeded in his purpose, and returned to Winchester in two weeks, leaving Loring in command at Romney and not a Federal soldier in that part of the State.

**Romney abandoned.**—Unfortunately, however, some of the dissatisfied officers who were left at Romney signed

and sent a petition to the government at Richmond asking to be relieved from their present position, representing Romney as of no importance in comparison to the outlay required to defend it. Their petition was granted and Romney abandoned. Upon hearing that his action had been thus set aside, General Jackson resigned his command and requested to be ordered back to the Military Institute at Lexington. This created the greatest consternation in Richmond, and every effort was made to convince him that full confidence was reposed in him by the government, and with much difficulty Jackson was induced to resume his command. But it was with bitter mortification that he soon heard that the enemy had returned in full force to Romney, and that all his efforts and the sacrifices of his army had availed nothing. But he was a true Christian soldier, and determined to do his duty and leave the event to God.

**The plan for taking Richmond** was the same as that laid down the year before. But while the Federal army operating against Virginia had been increased to one hundred and eighty-five thousand men, the Confederate army was comparatively very little larger than at the end of the campaign of 1861, and, to add to the embarrassment, the time of the men who had enlisted only for a year was out, and they insisted on their right to go home, at least on a furlough. Everything was done to prevent this, and the patriotism of the men was sufficient in most cases to induce them to stay at their posts. But the army was disorganized and much anxiety was felt about the spring campaign. Johnston knew that an attack on him by McClellan's great force would bring defeat to his army, and he determined to shorten his lines by falling back nearer Richmond, where he could defend it with fewer men. In order to accomplish this without McClellan's finding it out and preventing it by making an attack, it was necessary

that Jackson, in the Valley, should be very active and keep the army opposed to him fully engaged.

**A Dashing Officer.**—You remember what good service General “Jeb” Stuart did for Johnston’s army in the Valley at the beginning of the war. He was still with Johnston and as active as ever, while Jackson had for his cavalry general a young Virginian hardly inferior to Stuart, whose adventures read like a romance. His name was Turner Ashby. He seemed incapable of fear and played with danger as if he loved it, and for a time his men and the enemy thought he bore a charmed life. He was invaluable to Jackson; ever on the alert with his men scouring the country in every direction.

**Jackson falls back.**—It was on the 26th of February that General Banks, with thirty-five thousand men, crossed the Potomac at Harper’s Ferry, and General Kelly moved down from above with eleven thousand men, while Jackson had less than four thousand to meet them. He was expecting reinforcements, and was determined to do and dare all things to protect Johnston’s retreat and to save the Valley from invasion. But the reinforcements did not come. Still, Jackson hoped by a night surprise to overcome Banks, who had now advanced to within a few miles of Winchester. This was the situation on the 11th of March; Jackson hopeful of success over an enemy of ten times his number. But it was not to be. Late in the evening he made a reconnoissance with Ashby, and they found that the foe had extended his folds about the devoted little army until it was almost enclosed, but one small avenue of escape being left,—the road running southwest towards Staunton. Any one who knew Jackson’s determined nature will be able to understand the terrible trial it was to him to give up his cherished plans. But the danger to the cause from the capture of his army was too great, and most reluctantly he fell back. The next day

Banks entered the devoted little city, which received him with closed doors and windows, looking like a city of the dead. Jackson slowly fell back to Mount Jackson, about forty-five miles from Winchester, where he went into camp and waited, like a tiger ready to spring, for the first news of a movement of the enemy towards Johnston's army, which was now falling back towards Richmond.

**The Battle of Kernstown.**—He did not have long to wait. On the 21st of March, Ashby reported that a portion of Banks's army had left Winchester and marched in the direction of Johnston's army; and the next thing Jackson was up and away with his faithful soldiers at his heels, making forced marches in the direction of Winchester. He had not been reinforced, and had only about three thousand soldiers in his command. With these he fought the battle of Kernstown, just outside of Winchester, in which there were at least eight thousand Federals arrayed against him. (The writer was in Winchester at the time, and can never forget the continuous roar of musketry and artillery during that battle.) Jackson always said that it was the hardest fight of the war. The Federals had actually given the order to retreat when they discovered that the Confederates were falling back. Jackson said that the battle was won, when one of his generals (Garnett), whose ammunition was exhausted, ordered his command to retreat. Of course the Federal order was countermanded and a pursuit ordered, and many of the Confederates were captured. Jackson fell back slowly, turning at every step to offer battle to his pursuers.

**Jackson's Object gained.**—But although he had to retreat, he gained the object he had in view; for the fifteen thousand men who had started towards Manassas, hearing the sounds of the battle, returned to Winchester, and Johnston withdrew his army in safety to their new lines. McClellan moved his army down to the Peninsula, from

which direction he was determined to advance on Richmond; while General McDowell, at Fredericksburg, with another large force, was in position either to protect Washington should it be attacked or to advance on Richmond from that side. I hope that you will study out this position on the map and understand it, so as to comprehend fully the interesting series of events of which I am going to tell you.

**Jackson's army** was very far from being discouraged by the result of the battle of Kernstown. The men knew that they had made a splendid fight and that they had the entire approval of their general, who they were convinced was the greatest man in the world. Their confidence in him reached its greatest height on that battlefield. Even Loring's troops, who had never been entirely friendly to him before, were his enthusiastic admirers from this time. His men used to laugh and say that the only rest they had was when they were retreating before the enemy. He always led them by forced marches when going towards the foe, but never fast enough on a retreat to lose the chance of a fight.

**The Situation.**—They returned to their old camp at Mount Jackson for a few days, and General Jackson employed the interval in taking a view of the situation. Certainly it looked hopeless. But so far from dismaying Jackson, it was the very situation he enjoyed. The object he set before him was to prevent these bodies of troops who were around him on every side from reinforcing McClellan on the Peninsula, and to accomplish that he must keep them occupied, and must defeat them so effectually that they would be in no condition to do such service. But how was this to be done? It was a question which would have puzzled any general less skilful than Jackson. Look at the map and try and take in the situation. Banks and Shields were at Strasburg; Fremont and Milroy were

coming from the west to join them, and had reached Franklin and the village of McDowell, which is some distance west of Staunton, while the Federal commander at Fredericksburg was ordered to send twenty thousand men to assist in the great work of utterly destroying Jackson. What made this the more important was the fear which possessed the government at Washington, that Jackson would whip out the Valley army, and come down through Maryland and capture Washington while McClellan was fighting for Richmond. So it was upon this little army in the Valley that everything depended. McClellan was calling for more troops, or for General McDowell to advance from Fredericksburg, while President Lincoln declared that McDowell must protect the capital against the "Rebel Jackson," who must be utterly destroyed. Now, Jackson knew that he could not resist all of these armies, each one larger than his own, if they were united; so he formed the daring plan of fighting them one by one and so preventing their union.



GENERAL THOMAS J JACKSON.

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. Describe the situation of the armies at Manassas.
  2. Where was Jackson, and what part had he to perform?
  3. What was the object of the Romney expedition?
  4. What was the result?
  5. Why did Jackson resign?
  6. What was the Federal plan for taking Richmond?
  7. What was the greatest difficulty which the Confederates had to contend with?
  8. What did Johnston determine to do?
  9. What was Jackson's army to do?
  10. Why did he retreat from Winchester?
  11. What made him advance?
  12. Describe the battle of Kernstown.
  13. What was gained by it?
  14. What change was made in the situation of Johnston's and McClellan's armies?
  15. Were Jackson's men discouraged by the retreat from Kernstown?
  16. Describe the situation of Jackson's army.
  17. What determination did he arrive at?
- 

## CHAPTER XXXIV.

1862.—CONTINUED.

## THE CAMPAIGN OF THE SHENANDOAH VALLEY.

“**The Rebel Jackson.**”—Jackson stayed in camp at Mount Jackson until the middle of April, while Banks advanced sometimes within a few miles of him, but did not offer battle. But at the time mentioned Banks was reinforced and advanced for the purpose of attacking, and Jackson broke up camp and continued his retreat, crossing the Shenandoah at Port Republic, with the enemy so close to his heels that Ashby was nearly captured while attempting to burn the bridge there. He crossed the Blue Ridge Mountains at Swift Run Gap, and could have been quite

out of the reach of Banks if he had chosen; but at that point he halted and waited the approach of the enemy. But Banks was satisfied at having him out of his sight, and telegraphed to Mr. Lincoln, "The Rebel Jackson has abandoned the Valley permanently," and then retreated to Harrisonburg well satisfied with his work.

**Milroy defeated.**—But the "Rebel Jackson" had not finished his course yet. General Ewell joined him at Swift Run Gap. Leaving Ewell to watch Banks, Jackson with the rest of his army made a hurried march through Staunton, met Milroy and defeated him at McDowell, a little mountain village, and having forced him to retreat, he hastened to rejoin Ewell. As soon as Banks heard of the defeat of Milroy he made all haste to get back to Winchester. He halted at Strasburg and waited the attack of the "Rebel Jackson," who, contrary to his expectations, was back again in the Valley. Now it was necessary for Jackson to move rapidly, as McDowell, at Fredericksburg, was ready to advance on Richmond on one side with forty thousand troops, while McClellan was besieging it on the other side with one hundred thousand. He knew that as long as he could keep the United States government alarmed for the safety of Washington, McDowell would be kept at Fredericksburg to be within reach.

**Jackson's Route.**—Now if you will look again at the map you will find that the Valley of Virginia from Swift Run Gap, where Jackson now was, is cut in two by a chain of mountains running lengthwise as far down as Strasburg and Front Royal, two little villages situated a few miles apart. This short range is called the Massanutten Mountain. You will readily see that for the full distance from Swift Run Gap to Strasburg and Front Royal there are two valleys: the short one is known as the Massanutten Valley, which terminates at Front Royal, while Strasburg, where Banks was, is in the Shenandoah Valley. Now it

must be admitted that General Banks does not seem to have had any talent for military strategy. Apparently he had never heard of this short valley, or at least had made up his mind that the troublesome "Rebel" would attack him from the Shenandoah Valley, and he had prepared to destroy him then and there. He was somewhat astonished, therefore, on the afternoon of the 20th day of May, to hear firing at Front Royal. Jackson had made a forced march down the Massanutten Valley from New Market to Front Royal, completely surprising the army there and capturing a quantity of stores and prisoners. Unfortunately, his army was so exhausted by its long marches and frequent battles that a night's rest at Front Royal was necessary, and this gave Banks time to commence his retreat to Winchester.

**The Battle of Winchester.**—Early the next morning, however, Jackson was on his heels, and captured half of his wagon-train and killed and captured many of his men before they reached the fortifications at Winchester. Still, Banks was not safe from Jackson. The next morning, May 22, the battle of Winchester was fought, and again the Confederates gained a great victory, and Jackson, after a few hours' fighting, entered Winchester at the heels of the flying, panic-stricken army. The scene in the city beggars description. The citizens were as much surprised as the Federals. When the ladies saw the dingy gray uniform that they so loved, they rushed out into the streets, though the bullets were flying thick and fast, crying and laughing together as women are wont to do when excited. At one time the streets had to be cleared before the fighting could go on; but later, when dead and wounded lay in the streets and the victorious army had swept on in pursuit, the women came out with lint and bandages and tenderly bound up the wounds of friend and foe alike.

**Jackson did not stop the pursuit** until he had driven

Banks's army across the Potomac at Williamsport. There was a force at Harper's Ferry, and he advanced to that place; but when he had invested it he learned that the government at Washington had determined to sacrifice all other plans to capture him and his army. Shields was coming from Fredericksburg with a large army; Fremont from the west with another; Banks, largely reinforced, was ready to make another venture; while the army in his front was larger than his own, since to meet all this he had only fifteen thousand men. But, so far from being dismayed, he only thought of the pressure which was thus taken off of the army before Richmond. He moved from Harper's Ferry without delay, and succeeded in saving the two thousand three hundred prisoners and the immense amount of stores he had captured at Winchester. He met and defeated Fremont at Strasburg, and, leaving him behind him, retreated rapidly up the Valley.

**But Jackson was not yet safe.** Shields was at Front Royal, and, following the course that Jackson had taught him, he advanced up the Massanutten Valley for the purpose of intercepting him before he could escape through the mountain gap. Fremont was pressing on his rear, and he was encumbered with his captured stores and prisoners. Steadily and swiftly the little army moved along the Shenandoah Valley while Ashby and his men kept watch and guard in every direction. Now on the top of the Massanutten range they marked the hurrying column of Shields's army, and next in the Shenandoah Valley attacked the advancing columns of Fremont, while the commander in faded gray uniform kept on his steady way with undisturbed visage, because his heart within him was lifted above the present danger by resting on the God of battles in whom was his trust.

**Death of Ashby.**—On the 6th of June a sharp skirmish occurred near Harrisonburg on the road leading

to Port Republic, and while it resulted in another triumph for the Confederates, the brave Ashby fell pierced to the heart, leading his troops, with the cry upon his lips, "Virginians, charge!" It was his last utterance; he expired instantly, with the shouts of victory ringing in his ears. Thus died, with his face to the foe, as brave a soldier, as gallant a leader, and as true a son to Virginia as was ever born upon her soil. It is related of him that when, at Harper's Ferry, in the beginning of the war, a friend asked him what was the flag the armies would fight under, that he took from his hat a Virginia flag and replied, "This is the banner I intend to fight under!" His perfect fearlessness and vigilance, coupled with his love of adventure, made him a leader especially suited to act as Jackson's aide. The brave officers who filled the vacancy his death made tried to follow out the many lessons which he had taught them.

**The Positions of Jackson and the Federals.**—In the positions of the opposing armies of the Valley there are several points of interest, and again would I ask you to look at your map and obtain an intelligent understanding of the situation. Jackson was at Port Republic, a little village at the forks of the Shenandoah River. Fifteen miles away to the north-west, at Harrisonburg, was Fremont, and at the same distance to the north-east, at Conrad's Store, was Shields. These two last-named generals were also about fifteen miles apart; the space between the three forming the sides of a triangle. Due east from Port Republic is Swift Run Gap, now quite familiar to you, and Shields was nearer to this outlet than Jackson. But ten miles farther south in the same chain is Brown's Gap, to which Jackson was much nearer than the Federal armies, and through this they could not now prevent his retreat. But he had no idea of leaving without a parting blow; so he placed a portion of his army under General Ewell to watch out for Fremont while he attacked Shields.

**A Surprise and Recovery.**—Jackson, leaving Ewell at Cross Keys to watch Fremont, who was advancing from Harrisonburg, himself, with two brigades and his reserve artillery, occupied the heights overlooking the bridge over the Shenandoah at Port Republic. Early on the morning of the 8th of June a detachment of Shields's cavalry, with a section of artillery, dashed into Port Republic and were near inflicting a serious disaster upon the surprised Confederates; but with heroic fortitude and alacrity, Jackson in person led the Thirty-seventh Virginia Regiment and dislodged the enemy from the bridge, and hurrying up the remainder of his force, speedily drove off the enemy's cavalry and averted the threatened disaster.

**The Victory at Port Republic.**—Later in the same day firing was heard on the Harrisonburg road in the direction of Cross Keys, five miles distant, between Ewell and Fremont. The latter had twenty thousand men, while Ewell had not over six thousand. The fighting for some hours was very heavy, with decided advantage to the Confederates. During the height of the engagement Jackson rode to the field from Port Republic and for a brief time observed the progress of the fight; then returning to the command posted at the river to watch Shields, he sent General Taylor with his Louisiana brigade to Ewell's assistance. At nightfall, both sides lay down exhausted upon their arms, on the field. The next day, June 9, Jackson determined to strike Shields, and at the break of day ordered Ewell to march his command with all possible despatch and secrecy to Port Republic. His forces being now united he assailed Shields, and the desperate battle of Port Republic ensued. For hours the result was doubtful, but at last victory again crowned the banners of those who fought on their own soil, and the invader retreated utterly broken to pieces, with fearful sacrifice of life and the loss of nearly five hundred prisoners. Jackson had burned the bridge over the river,

which was so much swollen that Fremont could not get across to make a junction with Shields, and fuming with rage, he was forced to look on at the defeat without being able to render the least assistance. The Confederate cavalry under Colonel Munford, who commanded that branch of the army after the death of Ashby, crossing the river above Port Republic, pursued the retreating Federals to Harrisonburg, which he occupied on the 12th, Fremont having retired precipitately down the Valley, leaving behind his hospitals and a large number of arms, which fell into the hands of the Confederates.

**End of the Campaign.**—This ended the celebrated Valley campaign, which for strategy and daring will stand side by side with the notable campaigns of the world's history. In three months Jackson, with a comparatively small force, had marched six hundred miles, utterly defeated four armies each outnumbering his own two to one, and captured thousands of prisoners and millions of dollars' worth of stores and arms, all of which he succeeded in getting safely away. He had, besides, completely disarranged the plan laid down by the government at Washington for the conquest of the South, delaying McClellan's advance against Richmond, while large armies were detached to operate against him in the Valley. Jackson did not leave the Valley until several weeks after the defeat of Shields and Fremont. His men were very much worn out and were permitted a period of rest. Colonel Munford, Ashby's successor, took Harrisonburg, with prisoners and stores, and the army camped between that place and Staunton. General Jackson moved his camps here and there to give the enemy the idea that there were a great many Confederates in the Valley. In consequence of this display of strength the Federal commanders were constantly expecting an advance from an overwhelming force, and troops were concentrated and fortifications thrown up. Jack-

son's cavalry took care that there should be no communication between the armies to contradict the exaggerated reports of the large force under his command. When Jackson was quite satisfied that the large army in front of him was fully occupied in making preparations for his reception, with the greatest secrecy he broke up camp, and the next news which the Federals in the lower Valley heard of him was that he was down on the Chickahominy fighting McClellan.

---

### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. Give a statement of the position of the armies in the middle of April.
2. What change did Jackson then make?
3. Who did he leave to watch Banks?
4. What did Banks telegraph to Washington?
5. What did Jackson do at McDowell?
6. What armies were threatening Richmond?
7. How did Jackson, in the Valley, relieve Richmond?
8. How was the Massanutten Valley formed?
9. What two villages were at the entrance of these two valleys?
10. Where did Banks expect the advance of Jackson?
11. How did he advance, and with what result?
12. Describe the retreat on Winchester.
13. Describe the battle of Winchester.
14. How were the Confederates received in Winchester?
15. Describe the pursuit. What news came to Jackson while besieging Harper's Ferry?
16. Tell of his retreat.
17. Where did he meet Fremont, and with what result?
18. What made Jackson's retreat so difficult?
19. Tell of the fight on the Port Republic road.
20. Who was killed there, and what of him?
21. What points of interest do you find in the situation of the three armies?
22. What narrow escape did Jackson make?
23. Describe the surprise at Port Republic. Describe the battle of Cross Keys.
24. Tell of the battle of Port Republic.
25. Who captured Harrisonburg?
26. How did Jackson contrive to keep the enemy busy while his soldiers rested?
27. Where did they hear of him next?

## CHAPTER XXXV.

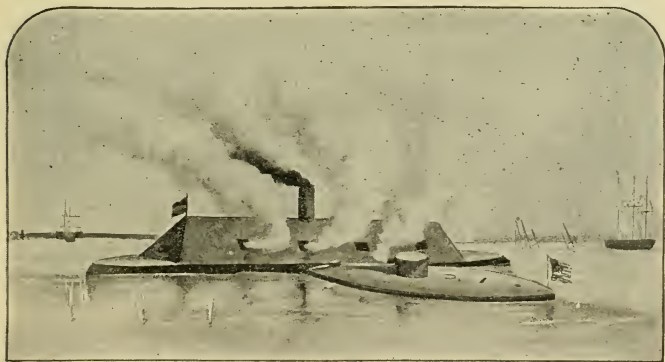
1862.—CONTINUED.

McClellan at Yorktown—The "Virginia"—Yorktown evacuated—Battle of Williamsburg—The White House—Battle of Hanover Court-house—Battle of Seven Pines.

**McClellan's Movement.**—We will now go back to that 1st day of April, 1862. When McClellan, in the government steamer "Commodore," which constituted his floating headquarters, steamed down the Potomac on his way to Yorktown, he passed through long lines of transports, their decks rising one above another, and crowded with splendidly-uniformed soldiers. No wonder McClellan felt a pride in their appearance, and contrasting them with the undisciplined rabble which ran from Manassas, felt that he had done good service in the organization of the Grand Army of the Potomac. Long lines of sailing-vessels had preceded them, laden with every comfort and luxury which an army in the field could possibly desire. At Fortress Monroe vast army stores, and guns of a size never made before, greeted his eyes. McClellan was very anxious to overcome and drive General Magruder from Yorktown before General Johnston could reinforce him; but he met with a difficulty at the very outset.

**The "Merrimac" and the "Monitor."**—He had expected a great deal of assistance from the navy, but it happened that a short time before a curious-looking monster, not unlike a huge terrapin, had made its appearance in the midst of the United States navy. It was the ironclad Confederate gunboat "Virginia," better known as the "Merrimac," as she was constructed out of the old United States vessel the "Merrimac," which had been sunk in the harbor when Norfolk was evacuated by the Federals. The Con-

federates raised her, and Lieutenant John Brooke, a Virginian, constructed out of her this steam-galley. He cut her down to the water's edge and covered her with heavy iron plating. She was armed with ten guns. It was on the 8th of March that she made her first appearance. She ran into two vessels and sunk both with about two hundred men. She created the greatest consternation. The heaviest shot bounded from her sides without injuring her, and she retired triumphantly. The Confederates were overjoyed to believe that in their feebleness they had a war vessel with which the enemy could not cope. But this idea was of short duration; for the very next day when she steamed out of Hampton Roads she was met by the "Monitor," a Federal ironclad which had just arrived. It was not at all



BATTLE BETWEEN THE "MERRIMAC" AND "MONITOR."

like the "Merrimac," and was armed with two one-hundred-and-sixty-eight-pounder Dahlgren guns. They had a famous battle, and both sides claimed the victory. But the "Merrimac" succeeded in inspiring the greatest dread of her appearance. The first sight of her was enough to clear the harbor of vessels, and she so effectually guarded the

entrance to the James River that McClellan could have no assistance from the United States navy in his campaign against Richmond.

**Magruder defends Yorktown.**—Johnston had no idea of holding the lines at Yorktown. His plan was to draw McClellan as far as he could from his base of supplies, and also to make his own lines as short as possible, as his army was so much smaller than McClellan's. But he was not ready yet to fall back; so General Magruder, who was in command at Yorktown, fortified himself in a line extending thirteen miles; and as he had only eleven thousand men all told with whom to repel ninety thousand, you may imagine that there was not much chance for him even behind strong fortifications. But it was a fortunate circumstance that McClellan thought he had a large army opposed to him, for he began to apply for reinforcements at once. Magruder was protected on the river side by strong batteries erected on both sides of the York, so that no vessel could pass. He knew that what he had to do was to continue a great show of preparations, and so make the enemy believe that he had a large army until Johnston should be ready for him to fall back. So when an attack was made on his fortifications at Lee's Mills, all the troops possible were concentrated there, and made so good a resistance that the Federal general (Keyes) reported to General McClellan that the works could not be taken by assault. So General McClellan commenced throwing up intrenchments and laying siege to Yorktown as Washington had done nearly a hundred years before.

**Yorktown abandoned.**—He continued to work hard, making roads and drawing closer every day to the besieged army, and was very confident that in a short time he would capture the whole of them as Cornwallis had been captured. This went on until the 4th of May, when a dense smoke was seen rising from Yorktown, and the sentries reported that

they saw no signs of any living being along the line of fortifications. It was soon discovered that Magruder had retreated in the night, and was as far as Williamsburg on his way to Richmond. McClellan followed, and the next day there was a battle at Williamsburg; Magruder had been reinforced and inflicted a check upon the enemy, which enabled the Confederates to retreat to their new lines in safety, while the Federals halted at Williamsburg for a few days.

**Evacuation of Norfolk.**—The Confederate army, when they drew back to Richmond, were obliged to evacuate Nor-



GUNBOATS ON THE JAMES RIVER.

folk, as it was too far in front of their new lines to be defended, and in doing so it was thought necessary to blow up the ironclad "Merrimac," as she could not be taken up the James River. This was a great loss to the Confederates, as it left the James undefended, and the Federal gunboats at once ascended the river to a point about six miles from the city of Richmond. There they found their way barred by obstructions which were sunk in the channel, and by the guns of Fort Darling, at Drury's Bluff, which thun-

dered out such a welcome that the gunboats found it best to retire out of their reach.

**The White House.**—McClellan made West Point, at the junction of the Pamunkey and Mattaponi Rivers, his base of supplies, and he took for head-quarters the White House, where General Washington had been married, and which now belonged to the wife of General Robert E. Lee. When he entered the house he found on the table a letter from Mrs. Lee, who had stayed there as long as possible, begging that the Federal army would spare from destruction this house so full of historical interest to all Americans; and nobly did General McClellan respond to the appeal, for he placed a guard over everything and would not allow anything to be injured. For this act of courtesy he was much blamed by violent politicians at the North, who thought that everything should be destroyed which came in the way of the army. The question was brought before Congress, and some of the members denounced McClellan as a traitor who desired the success of the Confederates.

**The Situation at Richmond.**—By the middle of May the two armies were concentrated around Richmond. The Federal army was nearly twice as large as the Confederate; but the Confederates had the great advantage of fighting on the inner circle. Indeed, McClellan felt that his force was insufficient and constantly applied for reinforcements, and especially urged that McDowell might advance from Fredericksburg and attack the city on that side. But Jackson was on his Valley campaign, and McDowell must remain where he was in order to cover Washington. McClellan was urged to advance with the army he had. Mr. Lincoln wrote that he must attack or “give up the job.” So on the 27th of May he pushed forward to Hanover Court-House with eight thousand men and gained a victory. The Federals then advanced to Ashland with a view

of destroying the railroad; this the Confederates tried to prevent, but were defeated with a loss of two hundred killed and seven hundred wounded.

**Battle of Seven Pines.**—The Confederates held the line of the Chickahominy River, over which there were a number of bridges, and it was in the neighborhood of one of these crossings that the battle of Seven Pines, or Fair Oaks, was fought on the 31st of May and 1st of June. General Johnston being wounded very severely on the 31st, General Robert E. Lee took command in the field, and from this time we find him at the head of the armies in Virginia. Both sides claimed the victory in this battle, and both sides had reasons for the claim. The Confederates lost more heavily because they made the assaults on fortified positions, while the Federals had to retire from their position with heavy losses in guns, property, and prisoners. Really it was a battle which, with great loss of life, accomplished nothing. The result might have been very different if McDowell could have advanced from Fredericksburg and attacked Richmond from another point at the same time. But these two days of fighting were days of great dismay in Washington, as Banks had just been driven out of Winchester, and McDowell had to send a large part of his army to assist in capturing Jackson and so save Washington, which was deemed even more important than taking Richmond.

**The Work of Pestilence.**—After the two days' battles before Richmond both armies intrenched themselves; but there could not possibly have been a more unfortunate place for an encampment. Among half-buried dead and swamps teeming with corruption, drinking water filtered through graves, and breathing the tainted atmosphere of death, what wonder that an enemy arose more terrible than the artillery of war! Men died by thousands, and General McClellan had to call for more troops to fill the vacancies

made by battle and pestilence. The Federal army suffered far more than the Confederates, who had Richmond behind them and who could thus escape from the pestilential vapors. On the 12th of June, General McClellan moved his head-quarters to Mechanicsville, through which a turn-pike road led into Richmond.

**Stuart's Daring Raid.**—The very day after this move, General J. E. B. Stuart, with Colonel Fitzhugh Lee, a nephew of General R. E. Lee, afterwards Governor of Virginia, and Colonel W. H. F. Lee, a son of the general, with twelve hundred cavalry and two guns, started on a raid around the Federal army. Everything was done with the greatest secrecy, as ignorance of their movements by the enemy was the only thing which made success possible. No trumpets were sounded, and even talking was done in whispers. At Hanover Court-House they met and routed the Fifth Cavalry, U.S.A. They then pursued their course to a point on the Pamunkey River, where they burned a quantity of Federal vessels and stores. They next pushed forward to the White House, captured a train of forty wagons, and burned a railroad bridge; then off they dashed to New Kent Court-House, where they refreshed themselves from the abundant sutlers' stores of the Federal army, and then turned their faces homeward, and reached Richmond, after an absence of two days, with one hundred and sixty-five prisoners, two hundred horses and mules, and a long wagon-train of stores, besides having destroyed an immense amount of Federal property, and with the loss of only one man, the brave Captain Latane, of Virginia.

The raid was successful in another particular. Stuart had found out the exact position of the enemy, and reported a weak point at Cold Harbor where he was certain an important blow could be struck the Federal army. This decided General Lee to send at once to Jackson to operate at that point while he struck in front.

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. Describe McClellan's start from Washington.
2. What did he find at Fortress Monroe?
3. Why could not McClellan use the navy?
4. Describe the "Virginia," or "Merrimac."
5. What effect did her appearance have?
6. What was the name of the Federal ironclad?
7. Tell of the fight between them.
8. Did Johnston intend holding the Yorktown line?
9. Describe Magruder's position.
10. Who had besieged Yorktown before?
11. How did McClellan's siege of Yorktown end?
12. Who gained the battle of Williamsburg, and what was the result?
13. What caused the loss of the "Merrimac"?
14. Why did not the Federal gunboats reach Richmond?
15. After leaving Williamsburg where did McClellan make his headquarters?
16. Relate the incident.
17. Did McClellan protect the place?
18. How was his action regarded at the North?
19. Describe the situation around Richmond.
20. Why did McClellan delay his advance?
21. Who gained the victory at Hanover Court-House?
22. What line of battle did the Confederates hold?
23. When was the battle of Seven Pines fought?
24. Who was placed in command of the Confederates, and why?
25. What was the issue of the battle?
26. Why did not McDowell advance?
27. What dreadful enemy attacked McClellan in his camp?
28. What expedition did Stuart undertake?
29. Who went with him?
30. What success did they meet with?
31. Whom did Lee send for, and why?

## CHAPTER XXXVI

1862.—CONTINUED.

BATTLES BEFORE RICHMOND—McCLELLAN'S CHANGE OF BASE—  
POPE'S CAMPAIGN.

**Positions of the Armies.**—About the end of June a rumor reached McClellan that Jackson was at Gordonsville and was preparing to attack his rear. He telegraphed the rumor to the authorities at Washington, and received for reply that no one in the Shenandoah Valley or out of it could form any idea of what Jackson was doing or going to do. But McClellan was right, for Jackson was on his way to take the part assigned to him in the great seven days' fight before Richmond, which part was to strike McClellan in the rear, at Cold Harbor. It is not my plan to give all of the details of the battles, only the results. But to make you understand this great struggle I must, in as few words as possible, state the respective locations of the two armies at this time. The Confederate army was on the south side of the Chickahominy River and the Federal on both sides, having extensive fortifications where the battle of Seven Pines had been fought. On the north side of the river the Federals had fortifications at Beaver Dam Creek, and just behind these was Cold Harbor. The strongest works were on the Mechanicsville road, on the north side of the river. General Lee determined to force these works, and sent General A. P. Hill to cross the river at Meadow Bridge, some distance above, and attack the works there and at Beaver Dam, while at the same time Jackson was to go to the rear of the army at Cold Harbor, and Generals D. H. Hill and Longstreet were to cross the Mechanicsville bridge as soon as General A. P.

Hill had uncovered it,—Longstreet joining A. P. Hill and D. H. Hill joining Jackson.

**The Seven Days' Fight begins.**—At three o'clock on the 26th of June, A. P. Hill crossed the river, and after a severe fight drove the enemy from his intrenchments at Mechanicsville and forced him to take refuge in his works on Beaver Dam Creek, about a mile distant. Then Hill and Longstreet crossed the Mechanicsville bridge and attacked these works. Night fell before anything was accomplished. At daybreak the fight was resumed, D. H. Hill joining Jackson in an attack on the rear at Cold Harbor. After terrible fighting the Federals abandoned their works and retreated; then a general advance was made, and the Federals gave way all along the line. Their cavalry tried to stop the flight, but in vain. The two armies were now in a strange position. Lee in crossing to the rear of McClellan left him nearer to Richmond than he himself was. But he knew that McClellan would not cut himself off from his supplies, for if he should take the city he could not hold it. In fact, McClellan's sole idea was to change his base to the James River, where he could supply his army without difficulty. But this was not an easy matter to accomplish with Lee's victorious army ready to strike him at every move. On the 28th, General Stuart was sent to the White House to destroy the enemy's stores. He found that the work had been accomplished by themselves, and as he dashed up he saw the house which was the scene of Washington's marriage burning to the ground.

**McClellan's Retreat.**—During the afternoon of the 29th, General McClellan commenced his retreat, leaving behind vast amounts of stores and many pieces of heavy artillery. He halted for the night about half-way between his former camp and his destination on the James River. His baggage and field-pieces had passed White

Oak Station, and so far the retreat had been successful. In the mean time Longstreet had crossed the Chickahominy, while Magruder, Huger, and McLaws were advancing from Richmond. They encountered a division of the Federal army at Savage's Station, on the Williamsburg road. The Confederates had with them a battery propelled by steam, which they called the "Railway Merri-mac." It was coated with iron, and as it moved poured shot and shell into the Federal lines. Night closed in before any advantage was gained by either side. During the night Jackson's command crossed the river and advanced to Savage's Station. The fight raged fiercely all the next day, and in the darkness of the night the Federals retired, abandoning their pontoon-train and most of their guns.

**The Federal army** crossed White Oak Swamp and were comparatively safe, as they destroyed the bridge behind them. Jackson came up with them there, but could not get over the stream. He planted his artillery and kept up a steady cannonade. While this was going on Longstreet and A. P. Hill were fighting the battle known as Frazier's Farm,—a fierce and bloody conflict, in which both armies lost heavily. While the Confederates can be said in one sense to have gained another victory, yet they were defeated in their attempt to prevent the further retreat of McClellan's army. The Federals fought desperately, and held their ground till night, when they resumed their retreat to the James River.

**The pursuit was continued** on the 1st of July, and here, but for an error on the part of the Confederates, McClellan's army would have been utterly destroyed. Strange as it may seem, the Confederates had no maps of the country, and had to depend upon what information they could glean about roads and routes from the country people. They made a mistake about the route that McClellan was taking to gain

his new base, and while they were waiting to intercept him at one point he succeeded in gaining the commanding height known as Malvern Hill; General Casey (Federal) said in his report, "Had the enemy come down and occupied those heights they would have captured our whole army."

**The battle of Malvern Hill** was fought on the 1st of July. The Confederates failed to drive the enemy from their position, and after fearful carnage were obliged to retire. McClellan had reached his new base with the loss of a large part of his army. Another "on to Richmond" had failed, and the Federal army was completely demoralized by the fearful sufferings and losses it had endured. It had fought its way for the distance of thirty miles in the face of a victorious enemy, and had left its dead and wounded at every step.

**General Pope's Manifesto.**—After the events just related there was a complete change made in the organization of the Federal forces. While McClellan was retained as commander of the Grand Army of the Potomac on the James River, General Pope was appointed to the command of the Army of Virginia, which included all the forces in the State except those under McClellan. General Pope did not approve of McClellan's course in protecting property in the country through which he passed, but issued an order that his army was to subsist on the country. He also said that he thought there was quite too much talk about lines of retreat and officers' head-quarters; that "his head-quarters would be in his saddle," and that he did not intend to have any lines of retreat: that they were to go forward all the time and only see the backs of their enemies. These were brave words; let us see if his actions corresponded with them.

**A New Campaign.**—Pope chose the same route "on to Richmond" that McDowell had chosen in the beginning of the war, by Manassas and the Orange and Alexandria Rail-

road to Gordonsville. His line extended from Gordonsville to Fredericksburg, where McDowell was still in command, and back to Manassas, where he had an immense depot of army stores. The first battle of this campaign was between Jackson and his old adversary General Banks, at a place called Cedar Mountain. In this engagement Banks was defeated with heavy loss. If you will look on the map you will see that the Confederates still had the advantage of fighting on the inner lines within reach of each other, while McClellan, in order to join his forces with those of Pope, would have been obliged to go back to Washington and thence a hundred miles before he effected his object. But after the battle of Cedar Mountain, McClellan was ordered to join Pope by this roundabout route; so on the 17th of August, with the fragment of the splendid army which had left Washington four months before, he returned to Washington, having accomplished nothing by the expedition, except the barren occupation of the Peninsula; and even that had been given up to him by a successful strategy.

**Lee's Advance.**—As soon as General McClellan withdrew his army from before Richmond, General Lee was at liberty to join the army which was facing Pope. When Pope found that out, he decided that he had better think about his "lines of retreat;" so he fell back to the Rappahannock River, and while doing so his army, in obedience to his order to subsist on the country, committed such dreadful depredations, that in order to prevent their demoralization he had to interfere and explain that he did not intend all that he said.

**Stuart's Dash.**—Now took place one of those strategic movements for which Jackson was so celebrated; for while Lee followed Pope to the Rappahannock, and by advancing every day and pretending to be trying to cross the river so occupied that general that he had no time to look elsewhere, Jackson and Stuart were off on an expedition to the rear of

his army. Jackson made one of his rapid marches through the mountains on the right flank of Pope's army, while Stuart with a small body of cavalry repeated his former exploit of dashing to the rear, and on the night of the 22d of August galloped into Catlett's Station, where Pope had his head-quarters. The guard was completely surprised; the horses and baggage were captured and the wagons burned. Among other articles, a military coat belonging to General Pope was captured and sent to Richmond, where it was displayed with a label attached, on which was written, "Mistaken: never expected to see anything but the backs of his enemies."

**This incident** carries with it a valuable lesson against boasting. The Bible says, "Let not him that girdeth on his harness boast himself as he that putteth it off." Pope will always be held up in history as a man of big words and small deeds, though no doubt he was a brave man and a good soldier. He had now been joined by McClellan's army and was sending flaming despatches to Washington of his great successes in driving Lee back on the Rappahannock, when news reached him that Stuart had burned a wagon-train on its way to his army, and next that the great depot of stores at Manassas had been captured and burned. But still he thought it was only a cavalry raid, and the Northern papers spoke of it as "bold, desperate, unparalleled in the history of the war;" but they knew it was no mere raid when they learned that the dreaded Jackson had passed through Thoroughfare Gap with his whole division, and that the Federal army was between Lee in the front and Jackson in the rear. Jackson's men, who had been living on parched corn in their rapid march, were permitted to refresh themselves from the captured stores. Only a hungry soldier can appreciate how they enjoyed it. They destroyed all that they could not use and also burned the telegraph station and cut the Federal army's communications with Washington.

**Jackson's Position.**—It is true that General Jackson was in a most critical position; but, fortunately for him, the enemy were so dismayed by the surprise that they were in no condition to take advantage of the opportunity. General Jackson took up his position on Bull Run not far from where the battle was fought the preceding year. He had with him three Virginia generals,—Ewell, Taliaferro, and A. P. Hill. He knew that Pope had changed his base to Warrenton, and that General Lee would soon join him; so he planted himself on the old field of victory and determined to defend himself until he was reinforced. He did not have to wait long, for Longstreet's corps was nearing Thoroughfare Gap on its way to him. Pope suspected this and ordered an advance against Jackson, whose defeat was absolutely necessary, and as soon as possible. They fought on the old battle-field on the 28th, and although the loss to Jackson's army was heavy, including both Generals Ewell and Taliaferro, who were severely wounded, yet it was a decided victory for the Confederates.

**The Second Battle of Manassas.**—When news came to Jackson that Longstreet's corps was close at hand he knew that the cause so dear to his heart had secured another victory; and soon the clouds of dust in the direction of the mountain gap told Pope a truth which filled him with despair, for Lee had joined forces with Jackson. The next day the great battle of Second Manassas was fought. The woods and mountains which had witnessed the great victory thirteen months before echoed to the Confederates' shouts of victory once again. It was not until after a long day's struggle that General Lee, looking anxiously towards the Federal lines, saw the confusion and dismay he had so long waited for and ordered a general advance. It was the signal for another panic-stricken flight over the same old route. General Lee is said to have parolled seven thousand prisoners on the battle-field; and the

once brilliant army with their confident commander retreated behind the intrenchments at Centreville. The next day (September 1) General D. H. Hill threatened the direct road to Washington. Pope, who could not accept battle on account of the demoralization of his army, commenced a retreat. A severe storm was in progress and Hill was assaulting him; but night closed in, and the defeated army was glad to take refuge behind the fortifications at Washington. In the greatest dismay, President Lincoln begged McClellan to take command and defend Washington. Once more the "on to Richmond" was changed to an "on to Washington" by the gallant sons of the South.

---

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. What report reached McClellan, and what did he do?
2. What movements were made by the Confederates?
3. Where was Jackson to strike?
4. What was the position of the two armies after the fight at Mechanicsville?
5. What did McClellan determine to do?
6. Give an account of the retreat.
7. When was the battle of Malvern Hill fought, and with what result?
8. What change was made in the Federal army after the fights around Richmond?
9. What orders did General Pope issue to his army?
10. Describe the position of his army.
11. Describe the battle of Cedar Mountain.
12. What advantage of position did the Confederates have?
13. What orders did McClellan receive?
14. What had been the result of his Peninsula campaign?
15. When McClellan left the James where did Lee go?
16. What move did Pope make?
17. What strategic movement did Lee make?
18. Describe Stuart's expedition.
19. What lesson does Pope's career teach us?
20. Describe Jackson's movements.
21. Where did the armies meet?
22. What was the situation of the two armies?
23. Describe the first fight.

24. Who joined Jackson?
  25. Describe the second day's fight.
  26. To what point did Pope retreat?
  27. What happened the next day?
  28. What did President Lincoln do?
- 

## CHAPTER XXXVII.

1862.—CONTINUED.

### THE FIRST MARYLAND CAMPAIGN—BATTLE OF FREDERICKSBURG.

**Inaction.**—For a short time after these events both armies remained inactive. They were too much exhausted to attempt any forward movement. General Lee was urged to advance into the Northern States. He hesitated about this, because he knew the great danger of going so far from his base in the face of an army so much larger than his own. At the same time he saw, as did many other wise men at the South, that while our men had fought nobly and gained many victories, it was at the expense of many valuable lives. In each battle scores of gallant men were killed, the army was getting smaller every day, and there was no source from which to draw fresh men, while the North had plenty of men, and besides, could, and did, fill up their ranks with foreigners. There was another reason. All of the white men in the South being in the army, there was no one to work the ground, and it was becoming more and more difficult to supply food for the armies in the field and for the women and children at home. In Virginia the fair fields were laid waste. If the army could be transferred to Pennsylvania for a while, it might relieve Virginia and show the Northern people what war really was. It was also hoped that if the Southern army went into Maryland many would join it from that

State. Urged by these considerations, General Lee determined to cross into Maryland.

**The Advance into Maryland.**—The time to make the attempt was certainly the present, as the Federal army had never been so demoralized as after Pope's disaster, and it was hoped that personal experience of war would induce the Northern people to think of peace. Accordingly on the 5th day of September, General Lee crossed the Potomac, and the day after a portion of the army under Jackson entered Frederick City. The army was in fine spirits. The Maryland boys who had been away from their homes so long believed that they were going back again, and all rejoiced at the exchange of the ruin and desolation of poor Virginia for the plenty and beauty of Maryland. The soldiers marched to the tune of "Maryland, my Maryland," but they were doomed to disappointment in the hope that the army would be recruited by Marylanders. The first enthusiasm was over, and although they found many friendly to the cause, yet the appearance of the poor ragged Confederates after a toilsome march did not offer much temptation to them to leave their comfortable homes even for military glory. If General Lee could have gone to Baltimore it might have been different, as that city was always a stronghold of Southern sentiment.

**At Harper's Ferry** there was a Federal force of eleven thousand men, and as this was in the rear of General Lee's army, he decided that before farther advance it was necessary to capture or destroy it, and General Jackson's corps was chosen for the duty. He crossed into Virginia, capturing a quantity of stores at Martinsburg. He then proceeded to Harper's Ferry, and with Longstreet on the Maryland shore and his command on the Virginia side they invested the place and forced the whole army to surrender. As soon as it was known in Washington that Harper's Ferry was in danger, McClellan started out from

that city with one hundred thousand men to relieve the garrison. General McClellan gives an incident which contains a lesson for all. On the march towards Harper's Ferry one of his soldiers picked up a letter from General Lee to General Hill giving him his entire plan of operation that there might be no confusion. This letter must have been carelessly dropped or lost (General Hill says he never received it), and thus fell into McClellan's hands and put him in possession of the key to the movements of his adversary, which was information of the greatest value to him. When Lee found that McClellan was marching to the relief of Harper's Ferry he placed his army so as to cover the place, and before a blow could be struck by McClellan the garrison surrendered to General Jackson. There were taken ten thousand men, seventy-five pieces of artillery, and thirteen thousand stand of small-arms, besides valuable stores. But there was only a short time to rejoice over these treasures, as the guns of McClellan were booming, and Jackson must go to the help of General Lee.

**An English Opinion.**—There was a lieutenant of the British army in this country at this time who was much in both camps and has written a book of the war, from which I have gathered many of the facts which I have narrated in these latter pages. This lieutenant (Fletcher) says, "As men reached Baltimore and Washington and New York from the places occupied by the Confederates, they astonished their hearers with accounts of the discipline maintained among these ragged and shoeless soldiers. They had seen men who had long fed on the roughest and most scant fare enter towns and refrain not only from pillage, but even from the harshness of authority common to soldiers. They had beheld the gentlemen of the South changed indeed in outward appearance,—the officer as poorly clad as the men,—yet retaining their courtesy and refinement, and combining deep-seated hatred of the Northern

nation with kindness and forbearance towards individuals composing it. It was not without mixed feelings that the better classes at the North heard of the exploits of their former fellow-countrymen. They could not but admire the military qualities and personal character of their leaders; and although bitterly ashamed that their own well-equipped troops had been beaten by men who possessed few of their advantages, yet they received comfort from the fact that they were Americans. Even if a portion of the Democratic party could scarcely help feeling that union under President Davis and General Lee would be better than discord under President Lincoln, who can blame them?"

**The Battle of Sharpsburg.**—While Jackson was completing his work at Harper's Ferry, General Lee was fighting McClellan at the passes in the mountains which led to that place. It was one of those battles in which it was impossible to say who gained a victory. It may better be called a drawn battle, since at the end of the day McClellan had gained the passages which Lee held until the capture of Harper's Ferry was accomplished. Jackson made all haste to join Lee, and on the 17th of September the battle of Antietam, or Sharpsburg, was fought. The conflict raged fiercely all day, and night closed with the balance of success for the Confederates. The next day the Confederates waited for an attack, but none being made, General Lee, convinced that the gain of taking his army into the enemy's country was not equal to the risk of fighting a force more than double his own so far from his base of supplies, returned to Virginia. He established his army at Martinsburg and Shepherdstown, where they enjoyed for a brief period the rest they so greatly needed.

As a summing up, of the results of this campaign I cannot do better than to insert General Lee's address to his troops a few days after its termination, October 2, 1862:

"In reviewing the achievements of the army during the present campaign, the commanding general cannot withhold the expression of his admiration of the indomitable courage it has displayed in battle and the cheerful endurance of privation and hardships on the march.

"Since your great victories around Richmond, you have defeated the enemy at Cedar Mountain, expelled him from the Rappahannock, and after a conflict of three days utterly repulsed him on the plains of Manassas and forced him to take shelter within the fortifications around his capital. Without halting for repose you crossed the Potomac, stormed the heights of Harper's Ferry, made prisoners of more than eleven thousand six hundred men, and captured upward of seventy pieces of artillery, all their small-arms and other munitions of war. While one corps of the army was thus engaged, the other insured its success by arresting at Boonsboro' the combined armies of the enemy, advancing under their favorite general to the relief of their beleaguered comrades.

"On the field of Sharpsburg, with less than one-third his numbers, you resisted from daylight until dark the whole army of the enemy, and repulsed every attack along his entire front of more than four miles in extent.

"The whole of the following day you stood ready to resume the conflict on the same ground, and retired next morning without molestation across the Potomac.

"Two attempts subsequently made by the enemy to follow you across the river have resulted in his complete discomfiture and his being driven back with loss. Achievements such as these demanded much valor and patriotism. History records few examples of greater fortitude and endurance than this army has exhibited, and I am commissioned by the President to thank you in the name of the Confederate States for the undying fame you have won for their arms.

"Much as you have done, much more remains to be accomplished. The enemy again threatens us with invasion, and to your tried valor and patriotism the country looks with confidence for deliverance and safety. Your past exploits give assurance that this confidence is not misplaced.

"R. E. LEE,  
"General Commanding."

**The inactivity of General McClellan** permitted General Lee to rest his soldiers in camp near Winchester for several weeks, and General Stuart (J. E. B.) improved the time by making a swoop into Pennsylvania, where he captured a thousand horses, made a circuit of the entire Federal army, and returned with the loss of only three missing and three wounded.

While occupying this camp several distinguished British officers visited General Lee, among them General Garnet Wolseley, who has written a most interesting account of his visit. He says, "Every possible injury that it was possible to inflict the Northerners have heaped upon him (Lee). Notwithstanding this, in speaking of them he neither evinced any bitterness of feeling nor gave utterance to a single violent expression, but alluded to many of his former friends and companions among them in the kindest terms. He spoke as a man proud of the victories won by his country and confident of ultimate success under the blessing of the Almighty, whom he glorified for past successes, and whose aid he invoked for all future operations."

**General Long**, in his life of General Lee, dwells upon this merry camp in the Valley of Virginia. He says such was the enthusiasm of the soldiers for their general that "his appearance was always greeted with the well-known Confederate yell, which called forth in other quarters the exclamation, 'There goes Mars Robert, Ole Jackson, or an ole hare.' "\*

**McClellan Relieved.**—General McClellan meantime entered Virginia, and had advanced as far as Warrenton on the often-travelled road to Richmond when to his amazement he received an order from Washington relieving him of his command and appointing General Burnside in his place. This was, as many believed, due to po-

---

\* "Memoirs of Robert E. Lee," by General A. L. Long.

litical reasons, McClellan being a Democrat. As his army was devoted to him and the elections were approaching, it was feared that he would use his popularity to gain votes for his party. General Lee regarded General McClellan as the ablest general in the Federal army.

**The March on Fredericksburg.**—General Burnside chose his “on to Richmond” by the way of Fredericksburg, and flattered himself that he had the start of Lee in the race. But General Lee knew what he was about, and when the Federal army, with Burnside at its head, arrived at Falmouth, which is across the Rappahannock River from Fredericksburg, lo! there was Longstreet behind his batteries at Fredericksburg ready and waiting for him; so nothing remained for him to do but to concentrate his army at Falmouth and drive the Confederates out of his path. While he was getting ready for this, Lee, Jackson, and all the rest of the army reached Fredericksburg, and there from the summit of the Virginia hills looked down upon the invaders of her soil, like the sand upon the sea-shore in number.

**The Battle of Fredericksburg.**—Burnside well knew that if he did not accomplish something speedily his reign would be short. He had over one hundred thousand men and Lee about sixty thousand;\* but Lee had greatly the advantage of position, as he occupied the heights back of Fredericksburg, and to make the attack Burnside must cross and storm the heights. Fredericksburg being directly between the two armies, the citizens knew that it must suffer from the impending battle, and the women and children left their homes for places of safety. Lee’s army rested with its right on the Massaponax River, five miles below Fredericksburg. There General J. E. B. Stuart was posted, and General Jackson was next to him. A. P. Hill

---

\* “Memoirs of Robert E. Lee,” by General A. L. Long.

and Longstreet were on the left, and the artillery was so placed that it could sweep the front. On the 11th of December the Federal army commenced to cross the river on their pontoon bridges. The Confederates opened fire on them, upon which Burnside gave the order to mass his artillery on the city, and it was done with great vigor for two hours, and when the mists of smoke lifted from the devoted little city it looked a perfect ruin. Many of the houses were in flames and others battered down, and after all it accomplished nothing, since the Confederates held their position unchanged.

**The Assault and Repulse.**—Matters remained thus until the 13th, which dawned bright and warm, and with the dawn Burnside crossed the river under cover of a heavy fog. Soon all parts of the two armies were engaged. In vain the Federal hosts pressed forward and tried to storm the heights. At every point they were driven back with dreadful slaughter, and night closed with another overwhelming victory for the Southern army. Lee expected the battle to be renewed the next day. Burnside had utterly failed, and during the night of the 15th withdrew his troops across the river. He lost thirteen thousand seven hundred and seventy-one soldiers. Lee lost one thousand eight hundred. Thus ended Burnside's "on to Richmond."

---

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. What followed the second battle of Manassas?
2. What course was urged upon General Lee, and why did he hesitate about it?
3. Tell of the advance into Maryland.
4. How were they received?
5. Where was Jackson sent?
6. What army was sent to the relief of Harper's Ferry?
7. How did McClellan learn of Lee's plans?
8. How did the Confederates conduct themselves in Maryland?

9. What was the result of the first fight between Lee and McClellan?
  10. Tell of the battle of Sharpsburg.
  11. To what point did Lee retire after the battle?
  12. Tell of his address to the army.
  13. Who visited Lee, and what account did he give?
  14. Where did McClellan go?
  15. What interfered with his progress?
  16. Who superseded him?
  17. What was General Lee's opinion of General McClellan?
  18. What road did Burnside try to Richmond?
  19. What stopped him? Describe the situation of the two armies.
  20. What ruthless order did Burnside give?
  21. Describe the battle of Fredericksburg.
  22. What was the result and the loss on both sides?
  23. What year of the war closed with this battle?
- 

## CHAPTER XXXVIII.

1863.

HOOKER SUPERSEDES BURNSIDE—BATTLES OF CHANCELLORSVILLE AND THE WILDERNESS—JACKSON'S FALL—ADVANCE INTO MARYLAND AND PENNSYLVANIA—MEADE SUPERSEDES HOOKER—BATTLE OF GETTYSBURG—RETREAT OF THE CONFEDERATES TO THE RAPPAHANNOCK.

**General Hooker** was appointed to supersede Burnside. He chose the road to Richmond, with some variations, which had been so fatal to three of his predecessors. The winter of 1862-63 was a very wet one and an advance on either side was impossible; so both armies went into camp and looked at each other over the mud hills of Spottsylvania. With the exception of cavalry raids, no fighting was done. But with the opening of spring General Hooker began his preparations to take Richmond, with the greatest confidence in his success. And really it did seem as if the Federals must succeed this time. Hooker had over one hundred thousand men, and in addition Richmond was

threatened by armies from the southern department. General Lee had to send Longstreet with one-third of his army to meet this advance from the south, leaving him with only forty thousand men. On the 27th of April, Hooker commenced his march, his advance being made in three columns, each one nearly as large as General Lee's whole army. So confident was Hooker of success that he issued a congratulatory order to his troops in which he told them that "the rebel army is the legitimate property of the Grand Army of the Potomac." But he found his claim disputed when he came to take possession.

**The Battle of Chancellorsville.**—The scene of the battle of Chancellorsville lay in an angle made by the unfinished line of a railroad and the Rappahannock and Rapidan Rivers. On the 27th of April three corps of the Federal army crossed the Rappahannock at Kelly's Ford, twenty-five miles from Fredericksburg, while three corps at the same time crossed the river at a point three miles below the city. They met with no opposition. Only a few Confederate scouts watched them and galloped away. On the 1st day of May, General Hooker had massed his entire army at Chancellorsville, ten miles from Fredericksburg. Up to this time General Lee had been uncertain from what point an attack would be made; but now that there was no doubt he moved his army so as to confront the enemy. It must have been a time of terrible anxiety. But General Lee was calm and composed; and the soldiers trusted so fully in their leaders that they believed that under them they would overcome their foe though numbering three to one. General Hooker, on his side, was equally confident.

**Jackson's Flank Movement.**—As usual, Jackson was chosen for a dashing flank movement to Hooker's right and rear. Silently and quickly he led his men around the Federal lines, and reached the desired point on the right without the enemy having the least suspicion of the movement,

all of the enemy's attention being fixed upon the army in front of him, the numbers of which he imagined to be many times as great as they really were. During the whole war there was no more daring piece of strategy



CONFERENCE OF LEE AND JACKSON AT CHANCELLORSVILLE.

than this. In the face of an enemy three times as large as his own, and with a force threatening his rear, Lee dared to send away his ablest general with the largest part of his army to strike a blow in the rear of the un-

suspecting foe. On the morning of May 2 the booming of Jackson's guns announced that his part of the plan was accomplished. He fell suddenly on Howard's corps, which was camping with no preparation for an attack. Jackson's men rushed forward with a yell, and the Federals, completely surprised, fell back in the greatest confusion. Nearly the whole army corps fled in dismay towards the Chancellorsville House. In vain Hooker and Howard in person tried to check them. The very name of Jackson struck them with terror. It was not until reinforcements arrived, and the artillery commenced their firing, that the flight was checked.

**A Fatal Loss.**—Then occurred that terrible catastrophe which plunged the whole South into mourning and from which the Confederate cause never recovered. General Jackson with his staff rode forward in the dusk of evening to reconnoitre. A portion of the army had been placed on a road where an advance of the enemy was expected, and orders were issued that they were to fire at any body of cavalry which appeared from a certain direction. Then, heart-rending to relate, as Jackson and his staff returned they were mistaken for the enemy, and a volley was poured into the party, and the brave soldier who had so often led his troops to victory fell pierced by the men who would have given their lives for him. Almost at the same moment the Federal forces advanced, and the fighting over the wounded soldier was so heavy that for a time it was impossible to take him from the field, and he was struck twice as he lay on the ground. At last they succeeded in getting him to a place of safety, where, after a week of suffering, he died.

**Lee and Jackson.**—The battles of the Wilderness and of Chancellorsville lasted five days, recording a series of victories for the Confederates. Hooker seems to have been stunned by accumulated defeats. After the first attack he seemed bewildered, while General Lee in person,

calm amidst his victories, led his men on to new conquests. But his heart was heavy over the loss of Jackson. He wrote to him while he lay wounded, "Could I have directed events I should have chosen for the good of the country to have been disabled in your stead. I congratulate you on the victory, which is due to your skill and energy." Jackson said when he read it, "General Lee should give the glory to God." On the next morning Stuart led Jackson's men to the fight with the battle-cry, "Remember Jackson!"

**Sedgwick repulsed.**—Hooker had left Sedgwick with twenty-two thousand men on the heights opposite Fredericksburg, intending with this force to close in on General Lee's rear. General Early with eight thousand men had been left by Lee in the vicinity of Fredericksburg to watch and keep back Sedgwick. After the disaster created by Jackson's flank movement and impetuous assault, Hooker made every effort to hurry Sedgwick to his assistance; but although Sedgwick crossed the river in the effort to reach Hooker, the vigilant Early held him in check until, with the co-operation of two divisions sent down from Chancellorsville on the 4th, he drove him across the Rappahannock at Banks's Ford, four miles above Fredericksburg. Lee having thus disposed of Sedgwick, prepared to renew his assault upon Hooker. But on the evening of the 5th of May a mighty thunder-storm broke over the two armies, and the thunder of nature made feeble the thunder of the artillery. A deluge of rain swelled the river and threatened the only retreat open to the Federal army. General Hooker, in the midst of the tempest, ordered a retreat over the United States Ford, and by the morning of the 6th all of the army were at Falmouth in their old camps.

**Thus another "on to Richmond"** had come to a disastrous end, but, as usual, the Federal general issued a congratulatory order to his army, and the President and Sec-

retary of War issued one to the people, assuring them that it was no disaster, only a failure; but the stubborn facts were a contradiction to this assertion.

**In the Shenandoah Valley.**—For several weeks after these battles the two armies watched each other from the opposite sides of the river; but in the month of June the Confederate army made ready for a move. Longstreet was recalled from North Carolina. In compliance with the request left by General Jackson, General Ewell was put in command of his old division, and the whole strength of the army, outside of the cavalry, amounted to seventy thousand men. The necessity of feeding this army was each day becoming a harder task to the exhausted South, and again General Lee determined to make an advance into the enemy's country. So leaving A. P. Hill in Hooker's front to deceive him with an appearance of activity, away went Lee with Ewell in the advance across the mountains into the Shenandoah Valley, and they were knocking at Milroy's doors in Winchester before Hooker was convinced that there had been a movement. Milroy had treated the citizens of Winchester with the greatest tyranny, and he was despised by all; so of course when the Confederates appeared there was great joy. A battle took place on the 13th of June. The result may be guessed, as Milroy was no general and was in fear of his life, as he knew how he was hated. Half of his army was captured, and the rest, including their general, escaped singly or in small detachments.

**Lee in Pennsylvania.**—The news of this disaster reached Hooker the day that it occurred. The government at Washington was, as usual, in a great panic about the safety of the city, and Hooker lost no time in breaking up camp and moving towards Washington. In a very short time the entire Confederate army crossed into Maryland and Pennsylvania, and the cavalry were levying con-

tributions on the farmers of Pennsylvania. President Lincoln issued a call for one hundred and twenty thousand men to "repel the invasion," and there was the greatest alarm and indignation at the news that the Pennsylvania farmers were being pillaged. They forgot that for three years the Federal armies had been taking everything from Virginia and filling her with the dead bodies of her people, and that they were only tasting a morsel of the bitter food they had themselves administered. But although the Pennsylvania farmers did have to give of their stores, the supplies were taken by military authority. The men committed no outrages, although their suffering and want were great, and they had left behind them homes desolated and women houseless. We find from the testimony of their own people that the crops and private property were everywhere protected.

**Gettysburg.**—By the end of June the entire army under General Lee was concentrated at Gettysburg, in Pennsylvania, and there a great battle was fought. General Hooker had been superseded by General Meade, and he it was who commanded the Federal army on the field of Gettysburg. The battle lasted three days. In the first two the Confederates were victorious, but the third was disastrous to the Southern army, and General Lee was obliged to retreat back into Virginia with his wounded, bleeding army. Such is the fickle fortune of war. General Lee stopped for a few days to rest his soldiers in the Valley. But this inaction did not last long, as Meade was trying to cut him off from Richmond by seizing the mountain passes. In this he was unsuccessful, and in a short time both armies were confronting each other and manœuvring on the old ground on the Rappahannock and Rapidan.

**A Virginia Campaign.**—These stirring events were followed by a period of comparative quiet, only broken by cavalry raids on both sides. The Federal army had

learned much from the brilliant movements of Stuart, Fitzhugh Lee, and others, and many daring and romantic deeds were performed in the mountains of Virginia. In October, Lee moved towards the old battle-field of Manassas. He crossed the Rapidan and threatened the Federal right flank, but Meade declined to fight and retreated to Centreville and Alexandria, with the loss of fifteen hundred prisoners. The Confederates, in their turn, suffered a reverse in an affair at Bristoe Station, where they lost a number of men and five guns. In November, also, the Confederates were surprised at Kelly's Ford and lost fifteen hundred men. Again, on the 26th day of November Meade crossed the Rapidan and tried to cut the Confederate army in two, but met with entire failure. General Lee was posted at Mine Run and in so favorable a position that Meade said in his report that he could not have taken it without the loss of thirty thousand men. As he did not attack, General Lee determined to attack him on the morning of December 1, but Meade had retreated during the night. Both armies fell back to their original positions, and this ended the campaigns of 1863.

---

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. Who was appointed to succeed Burnside?
2. What road to Richmond did he choose?
3. What seemed to be the chances of reaching there?
4. Was Hooker confident of success?
5. Describe the ground of these battles.
6. What duty was assigned to Jackson?
7. Was he successful?
8. What is said of this stratagem?
9. Describe the battle. Tell of Jackson's fall.
10. How did General Lee regard his loss? What was Stuart's battle-cry?
11. Describe Hooker's retreat.
12. Did Hooker acknowledge a defeat?
13. When did the Confederates begin to move?

14. Give an account of the condition of the Confederate army.
  15. Tell what followed.
  16. Describe the advance into Maryland and Pennsylvania.
  17. How did the Confederates behave?
  18. Tell of the battle of Gettysburg.
  19. Where do we next find the army?
  20. Give an account of the rest of the campaigns of 1863.
- 

## CHAPTER XXXIX.

1864.

CONDITION OF THE CONFEDERATE ARMY—POLICY OF THE UNITED STATES GOVERNMENT—GRANT APPOINTED COMMANDER-IN-CHIEF—HIS PLAN FOR TAKING RICHMOND—BRECKENRIDGE AND SIGEL IN THE VALLEY—THE LEXINGTON BOYS—CAMPAIGNS OF HUNTER, CROOK, AND AVERILL—SECOND BATTLE OF THE WILDERNESS—BATTLE OF SPOTTSYLVANIA—FIGHT AT YELLOW TAVERN—DEATH OF J. E. B. STUART.

**Virginia's Noble Record.**—We have tried faithfully to follow the history of Virginia through three years of bloody war, in which we have seen her fighting bravely in defence of her soil and domestic rights and her desire for political independence. We have seen her victorious over fearful odds, and whether in victory or defeat bearing herself worthy of her great past, and we have now reached the saddest point in her history, when with her great heroes filling bloody graves she stands with diminished armies, barren fields, and empty treasury, submitting as bravely to the inevitable with a courage greater than that which sustained her on the battle-field.

**The United States government** had, during the whole war, followed the idea that the only test of merit is success, and whenever a general failed to gain a victory he was superseded by another. But the obstacles to the taking of Richmond had proved so insurmountable that

we have seen no less than six Federal generals fall from the high office of commander, in their attempts to capture this city. One army after another had fallen, and their ranks had been filled from the nations of the world, which the North could command. But a valuable lesson had been learned by the government; this was that it was best to allow the defeated officers to learn from experience, which could not be done if they were changed so often.

**General Grant Commander-in-Chief.**—When it was determined to place General U. S. Grant at the head of the armies of the United States the people of the North resolved not only to give him all the men and means he asked for, but to put their faith in him. General Grant had gained his reputation in the West, where he had shown that obstinate determination never to abandon an enterprise, which was the secret of his final success. He knew that the North could raise as large armies as it pleased, while, on the other hand, as he wrote to a member of Congress, “the rebels have their last man in their ranks; they have robbed the cradle and the grave to get their present force. The little boys and old men are doing garrison duty and guarding prisoners.” He argued that with an army of five to one the North could afford to lose four to one and still have an army in the field if every soldier in the Southern army were killed. Not that he desired or expected such a terrible issue; but the “Union must be preserved” at all hazards. This reasoning was unanswerable, so a draft was ordered. But in some sections the men who had seen so many thousands of their comrades march away to Southern battle-fields never to return, and who were now expected to fill their places, offered the stoutest opposition to it. In New York the attempt to enforce the draft produced a fearful riot, which raged for days, and many lives were lost.

**The Federal Armies.**—An army of eight hundred thousand men was raised and General Grant was placed in command of the whole, though he gave his personal attention only to that part of it which was appointed to the task of taking Richmond. This consisted of three columns: one, under Butler, of thirty thousand men, which was to move from Gloucester Point up the south side of the James at the same time that the Army of the Potomac advanced from the Rappahannock. This latter army was one hundred and twenty thousand strong, commanded by General Meade, with General Grant by his side. These two armies were to meet at Richmond, which, thus surrounded, must necessarily fall an easy prey. Still a third army was to advance up the Valley of the Shenandoah in two columns. A large force of infantry and cavalry under Crook and Averill was to go up the Kanawha Valley and destroy the Tennessee and Virginia Railroad, while Sigel with fifteen thousand men would advance from Winchester. These two forces were to unite at Staunton in time to join Grant and Butler in their triumphal entrance into Richmond.

**Lee's Resources.**—These were undoubtedly well-laid schemes; but the difficulty was that they did not comprehend General Lee, who to oppose these mighty forces had with him in front of Grant fifty-four thousand men, and at Richmond a few old men and boys in the trenches. These were afterwards reinforced by Beauregard from the South with eight thousand, and three thousand under Breckenridge in the Shenandoah Valley. All of the Federal columns were to march on the 1st of May.

In order that you may have a better understanding of these last great struggles I will describe in a few words the fate of the smaller columns before taking up the wrestling of the two main bodies under Lee and Grant in their progress to the capital of the Southern Confederacy.

**The Boys at New Market.**—The army under Sigel moved up the Valley to New Market, where he met Breckenridge, who after a severe engagement defeated him with heavy loss. An incident of peculiar interest in connection with this battle must not be omitted. There were at the military school at Lexington a number of boys who had been placed under the training of Colonel Ship, as a preparation for taking their places in the Confederate army. When General Breckenridge learned that Sigel with fifteen thousand men was advancing against his little army of three thousand five hundred, he called upon Colonel Ship to come to his assistance with his little band of boys; there were two hundred and thirty in all, ranging from the ages of fourteen to nineteen years. They reached New Market after a long march and a night bivouac in the rain and mud, just in time to take part in the battle. When General Breckenridge saw them, so young and gallant, he wished to shield them by placing them in a safe position; but with all the ardor of youth they begged to be allowed a place in the advance, which was given to them, and they maintained their position in the hottest of the fight with the steadiness of veteran soldiers. Colonel Ship himself led them forward under a heavy fire; their color-bearer fell, and his colors were caught up by a companion, and on they went. Colonel Ship was wounded, but still continued the command. They advanced through the rain and mud and some of the boys lost their shoes, but this did not cool their enthusiasm. Colonel Ship ordered a bayonet charge. The brave boys responded gallantly, leaped into the battery, killed the cannoneers, and drove back the infantry supports. They called upon the Federal colonel to surrender, but he refused to give up his sword to a "parcel of children," and they bayoneted him. They captured the guns and gained a brilliant victory, though at the expense of over fifty of the gallant band killed and wounded. Well did General Grant

say the Confederates were robbing the cradle and the grave to fill up the ranks of their armies.

**Crook and Averill**, Federal commanders of cavalry, had in the mean time inflicted great damage upon the Virginia and Tennessee Railroad. General Sam Jones, C.S.A., was sent against them and compelled them to retire, when they joined the main column operating in the Valley.

**Hunter's March in the Valley.**—After the battle of New Market, General Sigel had been superseded in his command by General David Hunter, who was ordered to proceed to Staunton, to Charlottesville, and to Lynchburg. General Breckenridge had been withdrawn from the Valley, leaving only a very small force of between three and four thousand undisciplined troops under General W. E. Jones to oppose Hunter's large army. General Imboden, C.S.A., with a few cavalry opposed his advance, retreating towards General Jones, who thought it best even with his unreliable army to attack Hunter before he was joined by Crook and Averill. They met near Port Republic, where the Confederates were defeated and their gallant leader, General W. E. Jones, was killed. After his fall General McCausland opposed Hunter with gallantry and vigor, but his handful of men were no match for the force against which they contended.\*

**Opposing Movements.**—When it became evident to General Lee that it was the object of General Hunter to reach Lynchburg and destroy the railroad at that place, and so complete the cordon around his army, he ordered General Breckenridge to proceed to Rockfish Gap in the Blue Ridge, with an army of two thousand five hundred men, to oppose Hunter, and General Early was also ordered to watch any movement of that general on Lynchburg.

---

\* "Memoirs of Robert E. Lee," by General A. L. Long.

**Sheridan and Hampton.**—In the mean time, General Grant had detached Sheridan with a large force of cavalry to break up the railroad between Gordonsville and Richmond, to destroy the James River and Kanawha Canal, and to co-operate with Hunter in his movement against Lynchburg. General Sheridan was met on the 12th of June by General Wade Hampton at Trevilian's Station, where one of the most masterly cavalry engagements of the war took place, resulting in the defeat of Sheridan, who was forced to make a night retreat to Grant's army south of Richmond.

**The Valley devastated.**—Hunter proceeded to Rockfish Gap, but finding it defended by Breckenridge with his small force, he decided not to risk an engagement, but changed his course and approached Lynchburg by another route. Upon which Breckenridge and Early, who was at Charlottesville, both hastened towards the same city by different routes. Hunter was reinforced by Crook and Averill near Staunton, and proceeded by Buchanan and Lexington, burning and destroying everything which came in his way. His name will ever be remembered in Virginia by the track of desolation which marked this march; not only were dwelling-houses and crops unnecessarily destroyed, leaving homeless and starving people all along his course, but even the Military Institute and the houses of the professors at Lexington were burned to the ground. General McCausland, with a nominal force of cavalry, did all he could to oppose Hunter's progress, but was not able to accomplish much.

**Before Hunter reached Lynchburg,** however, both Early and Breckenridge had arrived, and the hero who had been so successful in burning and laying waste where there was no one to oppose him, as soon as he saw himself confronted by a large force relinquished his attack on Lynchburg, and made a rapid night retreat to the mountains

of Virginia. Early overtook him at Salem, defeated him, and drove him through the mountains to the Ohio River.

**Early's March up the Valley.**—Having thus relieved the Valley, Early proceeded to make a diversion in order



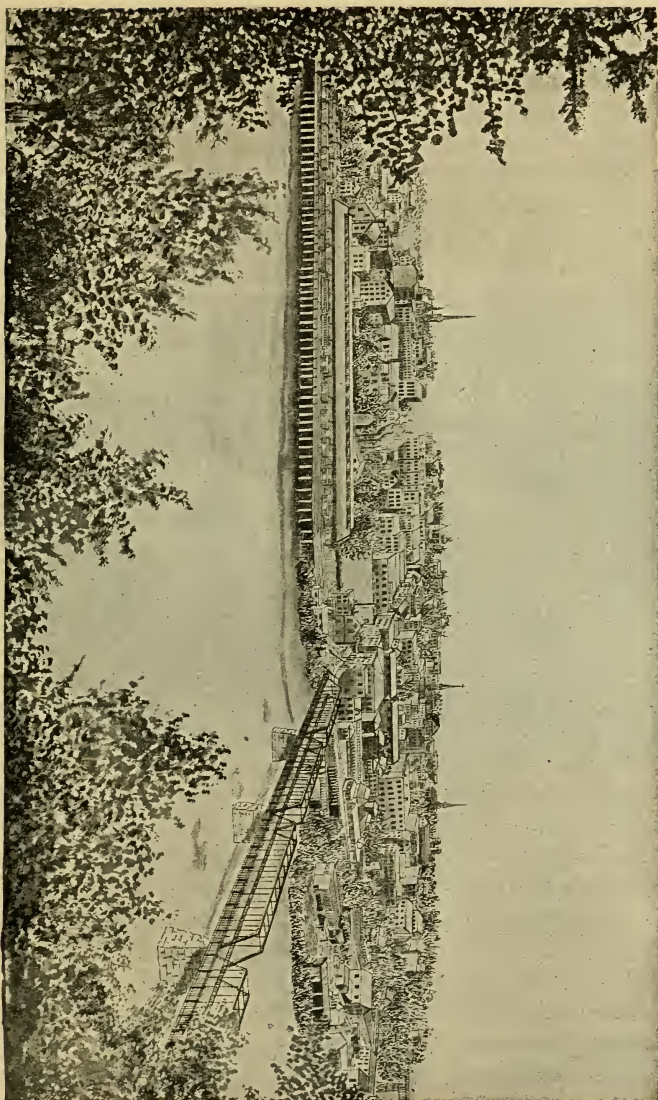
GENERAL JUBAL A. EARLY.

to draw away some of the force which was confronting Lee. He took the course which had become so celebrated for its successes during the war, through the Shenandoah Valley, into Maryland, threatening Washington City. To accomplish his purpose he had only about twelve thousand men, but none knew better than General Early what had been done in the past with

small armies moving rapidly and striking boldly. He reached Staunton on the 27th of June, and halted for a few days to lay in supplies for his army, and then made a rapid march to Winchester, about one hundred miles distant. Before the 4th of July he had driven a force from Martinsburg and one from Harper's Ferry.

**Lee Wallace defeated and Washington threatened.**—He then crossed the Potomac at Shepherdstown into Maryland and advanced to Sharpsburg. So rapid had been his movement that it struck consternation to the hearts of the Federal authorities, and the most exaggerated estimates were made of the size of his force, which their

VIEW OF THE CITY OF LYNCHBURG.



fears multiplied to three or four times its real number. With the greatest alacrity troops were gathered to defend Washington and Baltimore, among them being three army corps from the army before Richmond, while General Lew Wallace with ten thousand men was sent to prevent the passage of the Monocacy River near Frederick City. Here a bloody fight took place, resulting in the utter rout of the Federal army, which fled to Washington, spreading dismay everywhere by the news that Early with thirty or forty



SCENE IN THE SHENANDOAH VALLEY.

thousand men was advancing on the capital. The Confederates actually did advance within cannon-shot of the city; and having accomplished what he intended, in causing the concentration of a large force for the defence of the capital, Early returned to Virginia, encamping at Berryville, in the Valley of Virginia, about the middle of July. Thus in a little over a month "he had with a force not exceeding twelve thousand men marched over four hundred miles, defeated and dispersed two Federal armies of an aggre-

gate strength of more than double his own; had by his movement upon Washington created an important diversion in favor of General Lee's army, and had re-entered Virginia with a loss of about three thousand men."

**Operations in the Valley.**—Early hearing that a large force under General Averill was advancing from Martinsburg to Winchester, sent General Ramseur with a division and two batteries of artillery to hold him in check, while he withdrew to a more favorable point to withstand an attack, near Strasburg. A bloody engagement took place, in which Ramseur was defeated with a heavy loss in men and guns, and was obliged to retreat to Early at Newtown. Averill pursued Ramseur to Newtown, eight miles from Winchester, but finding that he had joined Early, he fell back to Kernstown, where he was joined by Crook with a considerable reinforcement. Early retreated to Strasburg, but determined to make a rapid advance upon Crook and Averill at Kernstown. Securing the safety of his trains, on the morning of the 24th of July he put his army in motion. They chose for the attack the point at which Stonewall Jackson had attacked Shields in 1862, and the troops had the inspiration of that battle to help them in this. Breckenridge and Rhodes made the attack on the right and Ramseur and Gordon on the left, while the cavalry were to close in behind the enemy as soon as defeated. The result was a great victory for the Confederates, whose loss was very small while the Federal loss was considerable.\*

**The Defeat at Winchester.**—Early, finding his enemy had retreated, advanced again into Maryland, but only for a short time, as Grant became so alarmed at the reports of Early's successes that he increased the Army of the Shenandoah Valley and sent Sheridan to drive Early out of the Valley. Early retreated slowly before Sheridan to Fisher's

---

\* "Memoirs of Robert E. Lee," by General A. L. Long.

Hill, where he offered battle, which Sheridan refused. Then followed a series of brilliant manœuvres between the two generals, lasting through the month of August and until the 19th of September, when the battle of Winchester took place, where Sheridan threw his whole force of forty thousand men against Early's little army and defeated him badly. Early retreated to Fisher's Hill, and Sheridan was too badly hurt to be able immediately to follow up the success he had gained.

**Fisher's Hill.**—Early had now only seven thousand men, and Sheridan attacking him at Fisher's Hill on the 22d, forced him to retreat to Harrisonburg. Here the two



THE BATTLE OF WINCHESTER.

armies remained fronting each other until the 1st of October, when Sheridan retired to Middletown, between Strasburg and Winchester. Early followed him, and finding that his enemy had taken up a position which gave him an advantage, he sent General Gordon to execute a plan which was most skilfully carried out. The Federals were

awakened out of sleep by the noise of Confederate guns and fled to Winchester, leaving everything behind them. If the Confederates had followed up their advantage the success would have been a glorious one; but thinking their enemy had fled not to return, and seeing the rich camp with its treasures of food and luxuries, the poor, hungry, war-worn boys in gray dispersed to rifle the camp. Sheridan had been absent at the time of the engagement, but meeting his flying men at Newtown he turned them back, and the victory was soon converted to a sad defeat. Early retired to Staunton.

**The Valley devastated.**—Sheridan then proceeded to lay waste the beautiful Valley of Virginia. He says in his report, "I have destroyed a thousand barns filled with wheat and hay and farming implements, over seventy mills filled with flour and wheat, have driven in front of the army over four thousand head of stock, and have killed not less than three thousand sheep. So entire has been the destruction that a crow flying across the Valley must carry its own rations." There was perhaps some vain boasting in this report. The two armies had too long been in occupation of the Valley to have left so much to be destroyed, but all that could be destroyed was, and the fires which followed his track carried despair to the hearts of the suffering people.

**Butler "bottled up."**—Let us now return to the army before Petersburg. Butler had moved up from Gloucester Point and had taken possession with thirty thousand men, on the 6th of May, 1864, of Bermuda Hundred, a small tongue of land in shape not unlike a bottle, made by the winding of the James River. Here he established his base of supplies, which were brought up the river. He fortified the neck of the bottle and congratulated himself that he was entirely safe. As I before said, the only defenders of the city of Richmond were the men

who were either too old or too young to go to the field; but it was not intended by the vigilant commander-in-chief that it should be thus left. Beauregard had been ordered from the south to undertake the work, and on the 10th that general took command of the troops at Petersburg. On the 16th of May a battle ensued with the forces under Butler, in which Butler was defeated and was forced to retire within *his bottle*, which General Beauregard effectually corked and sealed by building a line of fortifications in front of those made by Butler, making it impossible for him to get out by land. General Grant said, "General Butler had allowed himself to be bottled up."

**Grant's Advance** — Having thus briefly disposed of the two assisting columns of the Federal army, we will return to the main body, which on the 3d of May camped on the Rapidan River at Germanna and Ely's Fords, intending to march direct to Gordonsville and to get between Lee's army, at Orange Court-House, and Richmond. It is difficult to understand how he could think that Lee would permit this without opposition; but I suppose he imagined the movement was a surprise, and that Lee's army was too small to prevent his purpose. Certainly, Grant regarded the passage of the river as a great triumph, and declared that the Confederate army was completely flanked. Hooker might have whispered of the dangers of that dark spot, the Wilderness, which had been as the shadow of death to his army just one year before. But Grant seems not to have had any fears, as with his whole immense army he camped in this dreary spot where the brave Jackson had met his death, and where so many souls on both sides had rendered up their lives. But the fact was that Lee had his foe just where he wanted him, as he had purposely allowed him to cross that he might shut him up in the dark forests of the Wilderness, every turn of which he knew and could use to advantage.

**The Wilderness Struggle.**—It was, therefore, somewhat of a surprise to the Federal army, when on the morning of the 5th of May it began its march in the direction of Gordonsville, to find the Confederates directly in its path. At first the generals thought it was only a small force; but they soon found themselves mistaken, and then followed three days of terrible fighting, in which the dark hollows of the Wilderness were lighted up with the flames of death, while thousands of soldiers in blue and gray lay dead or dying in the woods.

**Spottsylvania.**—On the 7th, Grant decided that any further effort to reach Gordonsville was useless, and he determined to change his base to Spottsylvania Court-House, which is fifteen miles away. The arrangements for this move were made with the utmost secrecy; but when the Federal army arrived it was to find the Confederates in occupation before them. Then followed twelve days of desperate and bloody struggle, at the horrible details of which the heart grows sick. That ended, Grant once more decided that it was useless to continue a struggle which was hopeless of success, since the Confederates had achieved a series of victories which, considering the disparity of forces, seems too wonderful to be believed. The historian\* of these events says, "Above forty thousand men had fallen in the battles of the Wilderness and Spottsylvania, and the exhausted army began to lose spirit. It was with joy, therefore, that they turned their backs upon the lines of Spottsylvania."

**Sheridan's Raid.**—While the struggle at Spottsylvania had been going on Sheridan had made a raid around the armies in the direction of Richmond, with the view of cutting Lee's communications with that city. Stuart soon discovered what he was about and set off with his cavalry

---

\* Swinton.

to get between him and Richmond. He massed his forces at the Yellow Tavern, a few miles from the city, where there was fought an obstinate battle in which the gallant cavalier, Stuart, was killed. You have known him through all of these pages of war history, and it is useless to pronounce his eulogy; but on the spot where he fell his State has honored his memory with a monument, and his dashing exploits fill a page in history which will never be forgotten. Sheridan succeeded in taking the outer line of intrenchments at Richmond, but finding further effort hopeless, he continued his raid as far as the White House and then returned to the Army of the Potomac.

---

#### QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. What was the condition of the Confederates at the end of 1863?
2. What was the policy of the United States government?
3. Who was placed at the head of their armies?
4. What was his plan for conquering the South?
5. What was the effect of the new draft?
6. What was Grant's plan for the taking of Richmond?
7. What army had Lee to oppose him?
8. Give an account of the battle between Breckenridge and Sigel.
9. Who superseded Sigel?
10. What did Crook, Averill, and Hunter accomplish?
11. Describe Early's advance.
12. Describe the battles of Monocacy. Winchester, Fisher's Hill, etc.
13. Describe Butler's achievements.
14. Describe the situation of Grant's and Lee's armies.
15. Describe the battle of the Wilderness.
16. Describe the battle of Spottsylvania Court-House.
17. Where and how did Stuart die?

## CHAPTER XL.

1864-1865.

BATTLE OF NORTH ANNA—SIEGE OF RICHMOND—EARLY'S EXPEDITION—ARMIES AT PETERSBURG—RETREAT OF CONFEDERATES—THE SURRENDER—DIVISION OF THE STATE—EMANCIPATION.

**Defence of the North Anna.**—The next halting-place of the two armies was on the North Anna River. The Federal army reached their chosen position, and lo! posted on the opposite banks were the Confederates ready for them. Here for four days did they battle over the crossing of the river, which the Federals succeeded in accomplishing, and after all—but I will let a historian friendly to their side tell the conclusion of the matter. He says,\* “The game of war seldom presents a more effectual checkmate than was here given by Lee; for after Grant had made the brilliantly successful passage of the river, the Confederate commander, thrusting his centre between the two wings of the Army of the Potomac, put his antagonist at enormous disadvantage, and compelled him for the reinforcement of one or the other wing to make a double crossing of the river. The more his position was examined the more unpromising an attack seemed to be, and General Grant determined to withdraw and take up a new line of advance.” Thus for a third time in a series of desperately fought battles were the diminished forces of the Confederacy victorious over the enemy. Each move of the armies brought them nearer to Richmond, Lee always keeping on the inner line between the Federal army and that city.

**Cold Harbor.**—The next great battle was at Cold Harbor, on the Chickahominy, where McClellan's army had

---

\* Swinton.

met with a signal defeat two years before. Grant was determined to cross the Chickahominy at this point, and here on the 30th of May was the battle fought. The line of battle was six miles long. In the gray light of dawn there was a great rush of the Federal forces against the Confederate works,—a bloody loss and a falling back. In a brief space the victory was again decided for the Confederate side. So sanguinary was the repulse that when the Federal commanders ordered their men to another attempt they refused to stir; “the verdict was emphatic against further slaughter.” The loss on the Union side was thirteen thousand, while the Confederates lost scarce as many hundreds.\* General Grant now determined to change his base to the south side of the James River. His losses in the battles from the Wilderness to this point amounted to sixty thousand men, more than the whole number of Lee’s army, while Lee had lost less than twenty thousand. But the Federal losses could be afforded, while, alas! for the Confederate cause, they had no source from which to draw. Grant by “hammering continuously” was accomplishing the result at which he aimed, even through defeat.

**The Siege of Petersburg.**—General Lee knew that General Grant was moving on the 13th of June to the south bank of the James; but he had not men enough to follow and strike day after day, as he had done in the retreat of McClellan; so he retired within the lines at Richmond. And now begins the siege of Richmond, which lasted for ten months. It is generally acknowledged that it was very poor generalship in Grant not to seize Petersburg before Lee had time to transport his army to that place. Petersburg, being the centre of several railroads from which Richmond drew supplies, was

---

\* Swinton.

really the key to the city. Petersburg taken, Richmond must be abandoned. It was only garrisoned by old men and boys, and could have been taken with little difficulty. But the opportunity was neglected, and by the time Grant was ready to act, Lee was there with his army, and every effort to dislodge him was an utter failure. All during the hot days of that sad summer the little army of the Confederacy kept at bay the hordes of the enemy, and was in almost every battle victorious; but every man that fell, even though he brought down with him a score of his foes, only hastened the end, for there was no one to take his place, while the Federals filled up their ranks without difficulty. Swinton, the historian from whom I have already drawn so largely, who, though all of his sympathies are with the North, yet as an authentic historian tells the facts, says, "The success of the Confederate tactics was wonderful: each movement, except one on the Weldon Railroad, was a victory accompanied by one or more thousand prisoners. The number of captures made by Lee in these successive swoops was wonderful."

**Mining the Confederate Works.**—General Grant having so often failed to force the Confederate line was the more ready to lend an ear to a proposal to blow up the works. This proposal came from General Burnside, who, not having been a success as a commander-in-chief, now sought fame as an engineer. His plan, to which General Grant gave his consent, was to dig a mine under a part of the fortifications, which when exploded would make a breach through which the Federal army could rush before the Confederates had recovered from their surprise. So expeditious were the workmen, that the mine was completed by June 23 and charged with eight thousand pounds of powder, and the 30th was the day fixed upon for the explosion. In order to create a diversion, General Grant sent a portion of his army to the north side of the James

River, where they were instructed to make a demonstration and give the impression that the attack was to be at that point. On the morning fixed upon all of the columns of the Federal army were in position, ready as soon as the great explosion took place to rush through the breach and seize upon Cemetery Hill, which commanded the Confederate fortifications.

**The Explosion and its Result.**—The hour arrived but the mine did not explode. An examination showed that the fuse had gone out before reaching the powder. It was relighted, and at half-past four the sleeping Confederates were awakened by a terrific explosion and the hurling into the air of an immense body of earth, which burst above them "and scattered timber, gun-carriages, stone, muskets, and mutilated corpses, which quickly returned in a heavy shower upon the earth." Two hundred men were killed by the explosion, and a rent was torn in the Confederate lines one hundred and thirty-five feet long, ninety feet wide, and thirty feet deep.

**A Dreadful Slaughter.**—The Confederate army was at first so stunned that a panic was imminent, but Colonel John Haskell, of South Carolina, who commanded the artillery at that point, quickly guessed the truth, and in a few minutes turned his guns upon the breach, and when the Federals entered the crater they were met by a storm of shot and shell which completely demoralized them. In the confusion the Federal soldiers piled themselves one upon another, and the mine presented the fearful picture of a struggling mass of human beings, upon whom the cannon poured its merciless death-dealing missiles. As soon as General Lee, who was at head-quarters, heard of the catastrophe, he sent Colonel Venable of his staff to hurry forward the troops. General Mahone was first found with his division already under arms, and these rapidly advanced and with their bayonets expelled the Federal troops, who

were effecting a lodgement over the bodies of their own dead. General Mahone was reinforced by other troops and the Federals were driven back. The mine, instead of leading to victory, proved the grave of five thousand of the Union soldiers. General Mahone, Colonel Wiesiger, Colonel Haskell, General Pegram, and many others obtained promotion and honor for their gallantry on this occasion.\*

**The Opening of the New Year.**—After this tragic event, the tide continued to ebb and flow till cold weather compelled the armies to go into winter-quarters and take the rest they so much needed. But the opening year brought no life to brighten the prospects of the suffering South. The army in Georgia had been defeated by Sherman. The little army in Virginia was almost surrounded, their supplies cut off in every direction, the Weldon Railroad, so important to them, had been lost, and General Lee came to the sad conclusion that the only hope for the cause he had so bravely sustained was to abandon Richmond and make a junction with Johnston's army in the south. They might fortify some interior line and still achieve victory.

**The Retreat from Richmond.**—This conclusion was hastened by the events of the engagement of Five Forks, which was a point where a number of roads met. The brave fragments of the gallant army never fought with more desperate valor than at this engagement. When the great masses of the enemy folded around them they presented two fronts, and back to back fought on. But it was of no use; they were all killed or captured except a few who escaped and scattered to the mountains. Then Lee saw that the time had arrived to give up the line of defence at Petersburg and strive as a last hope to form a junction with Johnston. By the loss of Five Forks he was obliged to change the line of retreat which was the shortest.

---

\* "Memoirs of Robert E. Lee," by General A. L. Long.

to that by the south bank of the Appomattox. So with his little army, in the dead of night, on the 2d day of April, he filed silently through the streets of Petersburg. On their sad retreat they had one ration only, as supplies were ordered to meet them at Amelia Court-House. Imagine their anguish when on arriving there, faint and starving, it was discovered that by some misunderstanding the trains had taken the supplies into Richmond, where they were burned with the city. After that the story is too harrowing to relate. Men too weak to carry the musket dropped at the roadside and died, or were taken prisoners and succored by the pursuing enemy.

**The Surrender.**—Ewell, who, you remember, succeeded to Jackson's old command, had been left in the rear of the army to destroy the government stores and ironclads at Richmond. In attempting to rejoin the army he was surrounded, and after fighting as long as there was any use, he surrendered with the remainder of his force. Still Lee hoped against hope until the 9th of the month, when finding himself, at Appomattox Court-House, completely surrounded, he surrendered, bearing himself to the last worthy of his heroic record, and history will always accord him his well-won place as the foremost commander of modern times. It is narrated by an eye-witness that, after the papers were all signed, he rode through the ranks of the men whom he had led to so many victories, and these veterans, losing consciousness of their own bitter anguish in what they knew his must be, rushed up to their old chief and, choking with emotion, vied with each other for the honor of touching his hand. With tears streaming down his cheeks he said, "My men, we have fought through the war together; I have done the best I could for you."

This picture represents the meeting between Generals Lee and Grant in the parlor of Mr. McLean at Appomattox



1. Col. Charles Marshall.  
 2. Gen. R. E. Lee.  
 3. Maj.-Gen. Seth Williams.  
 4. Maj.-Gen. F. O. C. Ord.

5. Brig.-Gen. J. A. Rawlins.  
 6. Col. Ely S. Parker.  
 7. Maj.-Gen. R. Ingalls.  
 8. Col. H. Porter.

9. Col. Fred. T. Dent.  
 10. Gen. U. S. Grant.  
 11. Col. Orville E. Babcock.  
 12. Col. Adam Badeau.

13. Gen. Geo. A. Custer.  
 14. Maj.-Gen. J. G. Barnard.  
 15. Maj.-Gen. P. H. Sheridan.  
 16. Col. T. S. Bowers.

Court-House, to arrange for the surrender of the Army of Northern Virginia. General Lee was accompanied only by Colonel Charles Marshall, a distinguished officer and member of his staff. General Grant and fourteen Federal officers make up the group.

**An Enemy's Testimony.**—In closing the account I cannot do better than let their enemy bear his testimony to the gallantry of the Army of Northern Virginia. "If they drank the bitter draught of defeat, it was mollified by the consciousness of many triumphs. If the victors could recall a Malvern Hill, an Antietam, a Gettysburg, a Five Forks, the vanquished could recall a Manassas, a Fredericksburg, a Chancellorsville, a Cold Harbor. If at length the Army of Northern Virginia fell before the massive power of the North, yet what vitality it had shown! How terrible had been the struggle! How many hundreds of brave men fell before that result could be achieved!" But, in justice to the other side, we too must make our acknowledgment of the magnanimity of the victorious general. He not only gave a security of life and liberty to the soldiers who surrendered to him, but when afterwards the authorities at Washington wished to take back this promise and bring Lee and the other leaders to trial as traitors against the government, General Grant, to his honor be it spoken, is said to have threatened to give up his sword and resign his commission if the government refused to fulfil the promises he had made.

**Two Important Events.**—Before closing this record it is proper to mention two events which form a portion of the history of the State. The first is the proclamation of President Lincoln, September 2, 1862, emancipating all the slaves in the United States, which took effect January 1, 1863, and the other is the division of the State into Virginia and West Virginia.

Prior to the war there had been a great deal of dissatisfaction in that part of the State lying west of the Alleghany Mountains because of the unequal distribution of the public money. It was charged that all of the public improvements were lavished upon East Virginia, while West Virginia was entirely undeveloped. The class of population in the two sections also contrasted strongly. Those in Eastern Virginia were, for the most part, the descendants of the early English settlers, proud of their birth and of their ancestral homes, living in ease and comfort with their negroes about them; while the population of West Virginia were, for the most part, hardy mountaineers, who had come in from the Western and Northern States and naturally had none of that inherited State pride which is a marked feature with Virginians. Their slave property was very inconsiderable, and they looked with jealousy on their neighbors, who lived in elegance, and, as they asserted, spent the money drawn from their hard earnings in building up their own section, while the western portion of the State was suffering from such injustice.

**West Virginia established.**—Whether this was the true view of the question or not it is not for us to decide. I tell it to explain why it was that when, after many delays, Virginia passed the ordinance of secession, and so many ardent sons of West Virginia, and among them some of the most gallant soldiers and able officers in the Confederate army, obeyed the call of their State and hastened to her defence, that a meeting was held at Clarksburg denouncing the action of the Richmond Convention, and calling a convention at Wheeling, which met June 11, 1861. This Convention elected Francis H. Pierpoint governor of “the reorganized State of Virginia.” They then appointed such officers as were necessary to properly conduct the government, and in July elected two United States Senators. In the following October an election

was held, which by a very large majority declared in favor of the formation of a new State, which they first named Kanawha, but afterwards changed to West Virginia. In November another convention met at Wheeling and framed a constitution for the new State, which was ratified by a vote of the people (May 3, 1862).

**The Debate in Congress.**—This was carrying matters with a high hand, as they found when the question was brought into Congress. Mr. Conway, of Kansas, said, "The Constitution of the United States requires that no State shall be divided without the consent of its Legislature. I do not regard this division as having received this assent unless this State of Virginia of which a Mr. Pierpoint is governor is the State. I do not believe that it is. This 'Pierpoint State' started into existence about two years ago. A number of individuals met at Wheeling and without any legal authority arranged a plan for a government. They argue that Virginia has fallen into treason and has become null and void. Now, this is unsatisfactory to me. First, a State is a sovereign and cannot fall into treason, and, second, where is the law which warrants Mr. Pierpoint to assume the office of governor? Who made the laws? Who could give the sanction but the Legislature of Virginia." Mr. Segar, of Virginia, said, "It is claimed that forty-eight counties voted for this division. I can prove that fourteen of them had no part or lot in it; their population, amounting to seventy-five thousand people, were not represented either in Convention or Legislature." Mr. Thaddeus Stevens, who was very bitter against the South, said, "I shall vote for this, not because we have any constitutional right, but because we have the power." And so it passed. Mr. Pierpoint transferred the seat of government from Wheeling to Alexandria, and when the war ended in 1865, he removed it to Charleston as the capital of the State.

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. Describe the battle of the North Anna.
2. Describe the battle of Cold Harbor.
3. Where did Grant next go?
4. What mistake did Grant make?
5. What was the importance of Petersburg?
6. Describe the siege of Richmond.
7. What diversion did Lee make?
8. Describe Early's expedition into Maryland.
9. What caused the disaster at Cedar Creek?
10. Describe Sheridan's course in the Valley.
11. What plan did Burnside form for the fall of Petersburg?
12. What was its success?
13. Give the condition of the armies before Petersburg.
14. Describe the battle of Five Forks.
15. Describe the retreat of the Confederates.
16. Give an account of the surrender.
17. What should be the feeling of victor and vanquished?
18. What two events are mentioned as bearing upon this history?
19. What led to the division of Virginia?
20. Why was it easy to accomplish?
21. What steps were taken?
22. Who was appointed governor?
23. What happened in the closing months of the year 1861?
24. Was there opposition to this division in Congress?
25. What did Mr. Conway say?
26. What did Mr. Segar say?
27. What ground did the other side take?
28. Did the bill pass?
29. To what place did they transfer the State government?

## CHAPTER XLI.

1865-1890.

THE RECONSTRUCTION PERIOD—MILITARY GOVERNMENT—VIRGINIA  
DELEGATES ADMITTED TO CONGRESS—DISASTERS IN THE STATE  
—DEATH OF LEE—THE STATE DEBT—WEST VIRGINIA.

**All lost but Honor.**—We have faithfully tried to follow the history of the old Commonwealth of Virginia from the moment of her birth in 1606 to the close of the war in 1865, a period of nearly two hundred and sixty years,—years crowned with such honor as make Virginians proud to call her mother,—until we find her dismembered and bleeding, an uncrowned queen sitting amid the ruins of her homes weeping the loss of her children, held down under the military rule of the Union she had helped to make; but still, unstained with dishonor, she bears her sorrows with an uncomplaining dignity which challenges the admiration of the world.

**The period which this chapter embraces** may be divided into two sections: first, from 1865 to 1870, during which the reconstruction of the State engaged the attention of the people, and, second, from 1870 to 1890, when the State debt was the absorbing object of interest. The first period commences with the surrender of Lee's army at Appomattox, when every branch of business was utterly prostrate, the State had a debt of over forty millions, the farms were fenceless, the stock and farming utensils all gone, there was no money in the treasury and none in private pockets, and the government was in the hands of her enemies, who held her in subjection with a rod of iron.

**The Murder of President Lincoln.**—Had Mr. Lincoln lived there is no doubt that the reconstruction of the South-

ern States would have been rapidly accomplished. He had given such ample pledges to the States as encouraged them to hope for a speedy end of their troubles; but hardly had the thunders of war ceased before the weapon of the assassin took away the life so important to the suffering country, and although no portion of the South could in any aspect be held responsible for what was so dire a misfortune to them, yet were they made to bear the burden and suffer for the guilt as if it was theirs. Many at the North, who although they hated the South yet were willing to accept Mr. Lincoln's arguments, now raised an outcry for her utter ruin.

Congress passed three amendments to the Constitution, —the thirteenth, emancipating the slaves; the fourteenth, giving them all equal rights with the white man, including the right of suffrage; and the fifteenth, binding the States to observe these laws perpetually. As the Constitution of the United States provided that each State government should decide the slavery question and the question of who should or should not vote within her limits without interference of Congress, it was necessary, in order to accomplish the desired end, to force the States to adopt the new amendments. This was done by declaring that their people should not have the privileges of citizens until the States adopted these amendments. To further enforce this the Southern States were divided into military districts and military governors appointed over them. These, in their turn, appointed provisional governors, and to make the matter more sure, the citizens who had taken part in the war were deprived of the right to vote by an oath which was administered to all voters and office-holders, and by which they swore they had never taken arms against the Union, had never given aid and comfort to the Confederacy, and so on. In Virginia, where the war raged for so many years, there were few white men, women, or

children who had not either fought against the Union or fed the poor soldiers, soothed and comforted the wounded, suffering, and dying, and done willingly all they could for the cause they loved. So there were but few white voters or office-holders, and the military governors complained that they could not make any progress in reconstructing the State when there were not enough men who were capable of filling the State offices to put into them.

**Under Military Government.**—Virginia was under two governors at this time, and it requires close attention to keep the record straight. General Schofield was appointed first military governor of District No. 1 (Virginia) in 1867. Governor Pierpoint had been re-elected Governor of Virginia in 1864, so his term did not expire until 1868. Schofield was succeeded by General Stoneman, and Henry H. Wells was appointed to succeed Pierpoint. General Canby succeeded General Stoneman, and in 1869 Virginia adopted her new constitution with the three clauses which were made the condition of her restoration. That accomplished, Gilbert C. Walker was elected governor by the people. He was a Northern man and a Republican, but was elected by the Democrats, Wells being the Republican candidate. General Grant, then the President, insisted that the vote of the people should be untrammelled. The new governor proved very acceptable in his office. State officers and members of the Legislature were elected, and in 1870 delegates to the Congress of the United States were admitted from Virginia. The noble old Commonwealth was restored to her place in the family of States. Before going further I will tell you a little incident which will impress some facts of this period upon you and serve to make you understand how the proud Virginians suffered under these humiliations.

**An Interesting Event.**—In the Capitol Square at Richmond is a monument by Crawford, erected to the memory

of the great men of the Revolutionary period. A bronze equestrian statue of Washington rises from a pedestal of granite, and around him, each on a separate pedestal, are placed magnificent bronze statues of these Virginians of



MONUMENT AT CAPITOL SQUARE, RICHMOND, VIRGINIA.

the past. Among them is Jefferson, with the Declaration of Independence in his hand; Mason, with the Bill of Rights; Chief-Justice Marshall, with a book of law; and Patrick Henry, the soldier orator, with his sword

extended. The statue of John Marshall, Virginia's most celebrated jurist, arrived in Richmond just at the opening of the war, too late to be placed upon its pedestal. It remained unpacked in the basement of the Capitol until the war closed, and while Virginia was Military District No. 1 it was placed in position. The next day this poem appeared in the morning papers from the pen of Innis Randolph, a gifted son of the State:

“We are glad to see you, John Marshall, my boy,  
So fresh from the chisel of Rogers.  
Go take your stand on the monument there  
Along with the other old *codgers*.  
With Washington, Jefferson, Henry, and such  
Who sinned in the great transgression,  
In their old-fashioned notions of justice and right  
And their hatred of wrong and oppression.  
You come rather late to your pedestal, John,  
For sooner you ought to have been there.  
The volume you hold is no longer the law,  
And this is no longer Virginia.  
The old *Marshall* law you expounded of yore  
Is now not at all to the purpose,  
For the *martial* law of the new Brigadier  
Is stronger than *habeas corpus*.  
Then keep you the volume shut with care,  
For the days of the law are over,  
And it takes all your brass to be holding it there,  
With justice inscribed on the cover.  
Could life awaken those limbs of bronze,  
And blaze in the burnished eye,  
What would ye do with your moment of life,  
Ye men of the days gone by?  
Would ye chide us, pity us, blame or weep,  
Ye men of the days gone by?  
Would Jefferson throw down the scroll he holds,  
Which time has proven a lie;  
And Marshall shut up the volume of law  
And lay it in silence by;

And Mason tear up the Bill of Rights  
From a nation unworthy to scan it ;  
And Henry dash down his eloquent sword,  
And clang it against the granite ;  
And Washington, riding in massy state  
On the charger which paws the air,  
Could he see his sons in their deep disgrace,  
Would he ride so proudly there ?  
He would get him down from his big brass horse,  
And cover his face at our shame,  
For the land that he loved is now District 1 ;  
*Virginia* was once its name !”

**A Dreadful Disaster.**—The year 1870, which saw Virginia restored to her rights under the Constitution, was a year of disaster and sorrow. A controversy was in progress in the city of Richmond between Chahoon and Ellyson, the first having been appointed mayor of the city by the military governor, while the latter was elected by the people. Each held the office in different parts of the city, appointed his officers, and discharged his duties, causing, of course, great confusion in business. The decision of the courts proving unsatisfactory, at length they agreed together to submit the matter to the Court of Appeals, which met in the second story of the Capitol. A great crowd of people assembled to hear the verdict, which was in favor of the election by the people. This crowd included many ladies. Suddenly the crowded gallery gave way, and with its human freight fell to the floor, which also gave way beneath it, and all were dashed with the mass of *débris* into the legislative hall, in which the Legislature would have assembled in a few moments. Sixty were killed and one hundred and twenty wounded, among them some of the most valuable citizens of the State. This sad accident, which plunged the State into the deepest sorrow, occurred April 27, 1870.

**Death of General Lee.**—The following September a freshet occurred in the James and Shenandoah Rivers, which swept away from the impoverished people five million dollars' worth of property. On October the 10th of this year died General Robert E. Lee, the Christian soldier and gentleman.

**A tribute to his memory** in a history of Virginia is surely most fit. After the surrender he returned to Richmond, where his family awaited him, and casting aside his



GENERAL R. E. LEE.

military life like a garment, in calm resignation he took up the every-day life left to him. This must have been a sore trial to the brave soldier, not only for the ordinary reasons which will readily occur to you, but because he had been in the army since his boyhood, and it is hard when a man has lived over half a century to change the habits formed in youth. But no one ever heard a murmur from him.

The writer of these pages well remembers what a blessing his counsel was to the young men returning from the army. Disappointed and reckless, they imagined all was lost with the Confederacy, and were ready to desert home and friends rather than live under the government against which they had fought for four years. Many of them did leave,—some for South America. Some prominent officers became dis-

tinguished in the Egyptian army, and more than one has made a name in the army of France. Mr. Benjamin, a member of President Davis's cabinet, escaped, when he was made a prisoner, and gained both honors and wealth in the service of the Queen of England. Few of these returned heroes failed to go and see "Old Mars Robert," as they affectionately called him, and to each he said, "Stick to your State. Accept the situation. You have fought for her like a brave man, now work for her like a brave man."

**He was an object of great curiosity** to the soldiers of the Federal army who were in Richmond. Every Sunday when he went to St. Paul's Church, the crowd of boys in blue would part to let him pass, and I have often thought what a trial this must have been to a proud, sensitive nature like his; but no one ever heard him say so. He accepted this as he did all the rest, with calm dignity. Many lucrative and responsible positions were offered him, but he refused them all to accept the presidency of Washington College at Lexington, where he lived and died beloved and honored by all.

**An Impressive Ceremony.**—The name of the college was changed from "Washington" to "Washington and Lee" in his honor, and the noted Virginia sculptor, Edward Valentine, of Richmond, was employed by the Lee Memorial Association to prepare a monument to mark his grave. How nobly he has fulfilled the trust committed to him all can testify who have seen the magnificent recumbent statue of the hero, which rests above the grave where he lies with his noble wife beside him. He is represented as lying on his soldier's camp-bed with his blanket draping his form. The likeness is perfect. The day the monument was unveiled, as General A. L. Long in his charming life of Lee relates, "the whole immense procession went to the cemetery and placed immortelles on the

graves of the soldiers, and at the head of Stonewall Jackson's grave placed a bronze memorial tablet. The Virginia orator, John W. Daniel, delivered an oration which elicited praise from the press of the whole country. Father Ryan recited his famous poem, 'The Sword of Lee.' Then the multitude repaired to the mausoleum, where Miss Julia Jackson, the daughter of Stonewall Jackson, drew back the curtain from the exquisite marble figure."

**The period from 1870 to 1890** has been barren of interesting events. The Legislature has been principally engaged in devising means to pay the public debt, which have not yet met with success. The subject is too unfinished for us to enter upon it at any length, and we can only hope that the record of the old State in the past will not be blotted by any unworthy action in the present crisis.

**The State** is steadily growing in prosperity, its wonderful resources are being rapidly developed, and many who are seeking wealth in the far West may well look to the field afforded in their own State, where the mountains teem with coal and iron and other minerals, and the soil yields ready crops to the laborer. It is well to call to mind General Lee's advice, and work to advance your own State. Strive for the payment of her honest debt, and let this generation leave this trust of our forefathers without a stain upon her noble crest.

**The cause of education** is making rapid advance, the common-school system has become very efficient, the negroes are having every advantage of the system, the colleges and schools are not surpassed by those of any other State, and many new colleges have sprung into existence.

**Literary Progress.**—For some time after the war it was feared that in the struggle for daily bread Virginia would lose her prestige in the field of literature, but each

year some new writer from Virginia is springing into notice, until she bids fair to more than redeem the past.

**Political Affairs.**—In 1873, General Kemper, a former officer in the Confederate army, was elected governor. He was succeeded in 1878 by Colonel Frederick W. M. Holliday, who had given an arm to the Confederate service. In 1882, Colonel William E. Cameron, also an ex-Confederate, became governor. In 1886 he was succeeded by General Fitzhugh Lee, a nephew of General R. E. Lee, and whom you have known in these pages as one of the distinguished cavalry officers in the Confederate service. In 1890, Captain Philip W. McKinney, who had served through the war under General J. E. B. Stuart and General Fitzhugh Lee, entered upon the duties of the office. From these facts it may be gathered that Virginia delights to honor the sons who fought for her, and that she has succeeded in grasping the reins of government with her own hands, where we trust they may always rest.

**West Virginia.**—Meanwhile, the young State of West Virginia grows and prospers, having none of the difficulties to contend against which have retarded the parent State. When the war was over Virginia raised a protest against her dismemberment, but it was of no avail. She then tried to regain the two magnificent counties, Berkeley and Jefferson, but in this also she failed. The only contest remaining between the mother and daughter is about the division of the tremendous debt. This is as yet unsettled. In the mean time West Virginia is growing, cities are springing up, her resources are rapidly developing and railroads being built, and she bids fair in the future to strive side by side with Virginia. May they reach the goal shoulder to shoulder, one in honor, one in interest, one in affection, though two in name.

## QUESTIONS FOR EXAMINATION.

1. What of Virginia of the past?
2. What was her condition in 1865?
3. Into what two sections may this period be divided?
4. What were the difficulties in her reconstruction?
5. What was the effect of Mr. Lincoln's assassination?
6. What three amendments were made to the Constitution?
7. How were the States forced to adopt them?
8. How were Virginians prevented from voting?
9. Who were the governors of Virginia during this period?
10. When did Virginia adopt her new Constitution?
11. Who was the first governor elected by the people?
12. When were delegates from Virginia admitted to Congress?
13. Tell the incident of John Marshall's statue.
14. What disaster occurred in April, 1870?
15. What in September?
16. Tell of Lee's life.
17. Of the honors paid him.
18. What has engrossed the interest of the State since 1870?
19. Has any means been devised to relieve the State from debt?
20. Is the State prospering?
21. In what directions?
22. Who have been her governors since 1874?
23. What may be gathered from the facts narrated?

## CHAPTER XLII.

1890 - 1904.

THE BOOM PERIOD—INDUSTRIAL DEVELOPMENT—THE UNIVERSITY BURNED—CONSTITUTIONAL CONVENTION—EDUCATIONAL AND LITERARY PROGRESS—MONUMENTS AND MEMORIALS—MINERALS, STAPLES, FRUITS, ETC.

**The Boom Period.**—In 1890 there occurred a remarkable era of speculative adventure in laying off and promoting new towns, which came to be known as “booming.” Not since “the Mississippi Bubble” of John Law, in 1718-1720, has speculation run so riot in any part of this country. Old fields contiguous to small villages were laid off and platted into imaginary cities, with streets, avenues and boulevards of great dimensions; and such was the greed to make money quickly that town lots, where there were no towns except on paper, were sold, and several times resold on the same day, at fabulous prices. Large improvements were projected in the way of manufactories, electric plants, parks, and all the adornments and conveniences of rich and populous cities. Of course the bubble soon burst, and much loss followed; yet not without some compensation in a few localities favored by nature. The rich mineral wealth of Southwest Virginia and the James River Valley was developed as one result of the boom, and railroad and telephone lines—both considered important factors in modern civilization—were extended. In many places where there had been only straggling villages, thriving towns sprung up, many of which became and have remained important centers of industrial and commercial enterprise, while all the larger cities felt to a greater or less extent the stimulus of the speculative movement.

Norfolk and Newport News on the seaboard, where great railroad systems center, became important export towns for the products of the West and the South, and especially of the teeming coal mines of Virginia and West Virginia. Coke ovens, whose fires are never permitted to go out, extend for miles along the lines of two of the trunk railroads that reach deep water at these ports, where the ships of the world come for fuel, and where the navies of all the nations can ride safely at anchor in any storm.

**The State Debt.**—The settlement of the debt, which had been such a burden upon the Commonwealth, was practically accomplished during the administration of Governor McKinney (1890-1893); except that the portion of it due by West Virginia has not yet been judicially determined. In the settlement reached with the bondholders one-third of the debt was agreed upon as the fair proportion of that State.

**Burning of the University.**—The worst calamity that befell the State during this period was the destruction of a part of the buildings of the University of Virginia, the foster-child of Thomas Jefferson. On the 27th of October, 1895, the great Public Hall, containing among many other things of inestimable value the famous painting known as "The School of Athens" copied from Raphael's great fresco in the Vatican, was wholly destroyed by fire, and the interior of the beautiful Rotunda, with a large portion of the invaluable library, was also consumed by the flames. The injuries to the buildings were promptly repaired, and in the restoration, Jefferson's architectural plans were more closely followed. The restored Rotunda and the three new buildings at the southern end of the quadrangle form what is generally acknowledged to be the most beautiful and artistic group of university buildings in the world.

"The School of Athens" has been restored as a fresco, in place of the canvas; special permission to copy the original having been graciously granted by Pope Leo. The Library has also been re-established, and is now embellished with a bust of Edgar Allan Poe, who was educated at the University, and with busts and portraits of some of its most eminent professors and students.

**War with Spain.**—On the night of February 15th, 1898, the United States battleship, the "Maine," while lying at anchor in the harbor of Havana in Cuba, was blown up, and two of her officers and two hundred and fifty-eight of her crew were killed in the explosion. At that time Cuba belonged to Spain, and had for some years been in a state of revolution. The cruelty of the Spanish soldiers to the Cubans had already caused a protest from the United States government, and our relations with Spain were strained. The destruction of the "Maine," though never proven to have been caused by the Spanish government or its officials, so inflamed the public mind as to be the cause of war, which was formally declared by Spain, April 24th, 1898.

Fitzhugh Lee, of Virginia, who had been a distinguished Confederate general of cavalry, was the American consul-general at Havana at that time. When war was declared he was appointed a major-general of volunteers in the United States army, and Virginia promptly furnished her quota of troops called for by the national government. They, however, participated in no battle, the little fighting that ensued being mostly done by the navy with brilliant success.

The chief result of the war was the liberation of Cuba and the acquisition by the United States of Porto Rico in the West Indies and of the Philippine Islands in the

Orient. Perhaps the most gratifying effect of it was the actual restoration of mutual confidence and good feeling between the sections that had been arrayed against each other in the War of Secession. At the close of the war General Lee, of Virginia, and General Wheeler, of Alabama, both of whom had been general officers in the Confederate army, were placed on the retired list of the regular army, with the rank of brigadier-general, and many of the participants in this war who had enlisted from the Southern States received commissions in the army and navy of the United States.

**Assassination of the President.**—On the 6th of September, 1901, while receiving the ovations of the people at the great Pan-American Fair at Buffalo, New York, William McKinley, President of the United States, was shot by an anarchist, and after lingering for a few days died universally lamented. He had but recently entered upon his second term, and his administration had been so patriotic and unsectional that it had begun to be known as the Second Era of Good Feeling, as that of the Virginian, James Monroe, is known as the first

**Constitutional Convention.**—The State Constitution framed by aliens in 1867 and ratified under threats in 1869, was from the first odious to the great body of the intelligent people of Virginia. Several of its worst features had been changed by the method of amendment provided by its terms; but it remained a burden to the people who had had no share in framing it. In 1901 the question of a convention to reform and amend the constitution was submitted to the people by the General Assembly. The convention was called, and after deliberating for many months, framed a new constitution and proclaimed it as the organic law of the State. Every department of the government,

legislative, executive, and judicial, promptly acknowledged the constitution by taking an oath to support it.

The changes made by it are many and important, the most important of all bearing on the suffrage—the right to vote in elections. After 1904 no one can become a voter without an educational qualification and the payment of a small head tax, and consequently the ignorant will no longer be able to vote. In all former constitutions, if there was any qualification required of voters, it was one not of intelligence but of property.

Other changes to be noted are the abolition of the time-honored county courts, the election of all the senators every fourth year instead of one half of them every second year; the establishment of a Corporation Commission, whose chief function is to supervise all corporations other than municipal doing business in the State; and the election of certain executive officers by the vote of the people instead of by the General Assembly.

**Educational and Literary Progress.**—Since 1890 great progress has been made in general educational opportunities. The public school system, first formulated by Jefferson in 1779, but not fully and permanently established in Virginia till 1870, has grown in popularity and efficiency. School houses have been multiplied until free education is offered to the children in almost every hamlet in the State, and in the more populous communities graded and high schools are provided for those who wish to acquire a broader and more thorough education.

The acquisition of the Philippine Islands has given color to the demand for a larger standing army, which the fathers of the Republic deemed a menace to free institutions. This has added impetus to military education, and in consequence the two public military schools of the State,

the Virginia Military Institute at Lexington and the Virginia Polytechnic Institute at Blacksburg, have had large accessions of cadets. Manual and industrial training is steadily becoming a part of the educational system. The University of Virginia, as the capstone of the public school system, affords free tuition to Virginia students in the several schools of the academic department, and the number of students has greatly increased, as it has also at the State Female Normal School at Farmville. The venerable College of William and Mary, at Williamsburg, founded in 1693, is now part and parcel of the public school system of Virginia, being the State Normal School for the education of male teachers for the public schools.

The many excellent private academies, seminaries and colleges, are doing great service in the cause of higher education; nor has there been any abatement in effort or expense for the education of the colored people.

So, too, Virginia has made distinct progress in the field of literature. Virginians of to-day can read in a new and sumptuous edition the "Westover Manuscripts" of Colonel William Byrd—a classic of the colonial period. It is to be regretted that the only edition of the writings of Dr. George W. Bagby, the first and the foremost interpreter of Virginian character and customs, has been exhausted.

Passing by the writings of John Taylor, of Caroline, of George Fitzhugh, of Albert Taylor Bledsoe, of John R. Thompson, of John Esten Cooke, and of many others worthy to be named, as belonging to a past era, it remains a matter of pride to mention the following Virginian authors: Dr. Alexander Brown, historian; William Wirt Henry, biographer of his grandfather, Patrick Henry; Philip A. Bruce, historian; Father Tabb, poet; Armistead C. Gordon, poet and short story writer; the distinguished

novelists Thomas Nelson Page, Mary Johnston, Ellen Glasgow, Amelie Rives, Mollie Elliott Seawell, and many others. Nor ought the writings of John Randolph Tucker, on the Constitution, and the standard law text-books of John B. Minor, John W. Daniel, and of Robt. T. Barton, to be omitted in any mention of Virginian authors. The writings of Washington, Jefferson, Madison and Monroe, have been compiled, edited, and published by capable scholars, and are still accepted as leading texts on the science of government and statecraft.

**Monuments and Memorials.**—On the 29th day of May, 1890, a splendid equestrian statue of General Robert E. Lee—the work of the eminent French artist Mercier—was unveiled at Richmond in the presence of the largest body of ex-Confederates that has assembled since the close of the Civil War. Capable critics pronounce the statue a fine work of art.

A handsome shaft, designed after Pompey's Pillar, and known as the Soldiers' and Sailors' Monument, was dedicated with imposing ceremonies in 1894 in Richmond, where are also to be seen statues of "Stonewall" Jackson, A. P. Hill, and others. On May 31st and June 1st, 1907, statues of J. E. B. Stuart and Jefferson Davis were unveiled at Richmond in the presence of an immense crowd. Many cities and counties have also erected monuments, more or less imposing, to their Confederate dead. The memorials are to be regarded as tributes of affection and tokens of loyalty to the past: in no sense as an expression of disloyalty to the existing order.

**The Jamestown Exposition.**—The progressive condition of the State made it possible for her to celebrate the three-hundredth anniversary of the foundation of Virginia in fitting style. General Fitzhugh Lee was the first president

of the Jamestown Exposition, but he died in 1905, after doing valuable work. The Exposition was opened on April 26th, 1907, by President Roosevelt in the presence of a notable assemblage and with a great military and naval display. The Jamestown Exposition was one of the most beautiful ever held; its unsurpassed site on Hampton Roads, its tasteful and handsome buildings, and its magnificent electrical display will make it notable among great shows.

**Material Progress.**—Virginia is once more in the van of progressive States. Her mineral wealth is believed to be practically inexhaustible. Her mineral springs continue to be the beneficent fountains of health. Her fruits, notably the far-famed Albemarle pippins, are regularly exported for the tables of royalty. Her wines are in active competition with the imported clarets. Her beef cattle, fattened on the green pastures of the Great Valley and the Southwest, are exported by the shipload. Her oyster bottoms cover thousands of acres, and are susceptible of development. Manufactures, already flourishing, are being extended year after year: the largest dry dock and one of the largest shipyards on the continent are located at Newport News, a mammoth locomotive-works plant at Richmond and the most extensive zinc works in the world at Pulaski City. And what at one time constituted her currency and almost her only export—the celebrated Virginia Leaf Tobacco—continues without a peer in all the markets of the world.

**Recent Political Events.**—The era since the adoption of the new Constitution has been marked by some political changes. The restrictive suffrage clauses of the Constitution have considerably reduced the number of voters and thus accentuated the Democratic control of the State. In

1905 the primary election system of nomination was introduced in the State for nominations for United States Senator, Governor and other officers. Governor A. J. Montague opposed Senator Martin for the Senatorship, but the latter was confirmed at the primary. Claude A. Swanson was nominated for Governor. The election of Martin and Swanson followed as a matter of course.

The Legislature of 1908 expressed its appreciation of the public school system by providing old-age pensions for public school teachers. For the purpose of furthering the better education of teachers, the Legislature appropriated funds for the creation of Normal Schools at Harrisonburg and Fredericksburg.

**The West Virginia Debt.**—Virginia was never satisfied with West Virginia's refusal to pay her share of the debt of the old State after acknowledging her indebtedness and promising to pay. Suit was brought against West Virginia for recovery and the case was argued in the United States Supreme Court in 1908.

[THE END.]



# Virginia Historic *and* Scenic Views



We publish a series of Post Cards of Historic and Scenic Virginia Views. The full series should be in the home of every Virginian. No State so abounds in historic scenes as does the old Mother State. These views are very helpful in teaching children about the wonderful places in the Old Dominion.

See following for titles of complete series.

J. P. BELL CO., INC.,

Lynchburg, Va.



1. "Pine Knot"—President Roosevelt's Cottage, Albemarle Co., Va.
2. Natural Bridge, Virginia.
3. Point of Rocks, McAfee's Knob, Virginia.
4. The Cyclopean Towers.
5. Roanoke Valley.
6. The Old Packet Boat (as it looks to-day), on which the remains of "Stonewall" Jackson were carried from Lynchburg, Va., to Lexington, Va.
8. The Old Wythe Shot Tower in Virginia—dating back to Revolutionary times.
9. Great Falls of the Potomac, Virginia.
10. Natural Tunnel, Scott County, Va.
12. Monticello, Home of Thomas Jefferson.
13. Apple-Orchard Falls.
14. Big Springs, Elliston, Va.
15. "Darkies in de Goober Patch," harvesting peanuts in Virginia.
16. Sharp Top, Peaks of Otter, Virginia.
17. Falling Springs, near Hot Springs, Va.
19. In the Tobacco Fields of Old Virginia.
20. Spot where Lee made Farewell Address to his Soldiers—Appomattox, Va.
21. Mountain Lake, Giles County, Va.
22. Yorktown, Looking Oceanward.
26. Peaks of Otter, Virginia.
54. State Female Normal School.
60. William and Mary College, Williamsburg, Va.
61. Washington and Lee University, Lexington, Va.
104. A Virginia Mountain View.
105. The Famous Six-Mile Bridge.
106. Scene on the James River, Virginia.

107. In the Shenandoah Valley, Virginia.
117. Meadow Creek Falls, Virginia.
123. Virginia Wheat Field.
127. Green Fields of Virginia.
130. Virginia Ox Team.
201. A Virginia Trout Stream.
203. Scene on Fishing Creek, Virginia.
208. Narrows of New River, Virginia.
209. Curl Neck Farm Mansion, Virginia.
210. McLean House, where General Lee Surrendered.
213. Spot where Generals Lee and Grant Met.
214. View of the Potomac from Mt. Vernon Porch.
215. State Library Building, Richmond, Va.
220. Goshen Pass, Virginia.
222. James River Scenery near Natural Bridge, Va.
223. Scene at the Wharves, Richmond, Va.
224. The Site of General Lee's Farewell Address to his Soldiers.
225. Libby Prison, Richmond, Va.
227. State Capitol and Washington Monument, Richmond, Va.
228. Manassas Battlefield Scene, Virginia.
229. Lace Water Falls, Natural Bridge, Va.
230. Arbor Vitæ Walk, Natural Bridge, Va.
301. The Center of Combat, Manassas Battlefield, Virginia.
302. Blanton Church, Petersburg, Va.
306. "Middle Falls," at Great Falls of the Potomac.
308. Ruins of Jail used in George Washington's Time, at Great Falls, Va.
318. Massive Masonry Lock of Canal Built by George Washington at Great Falls, Va.
322. A Negro Baptizing in Dixie Land.
323. Tomb of the Washingtons, Mt. Vernon, Va.
324. James River and Blue Ridge Mountain Scenery, Virginia.
326. Home of George Washington, Mt. Vernon, Va.
327. The Famous Stone Bridge Across Bull Run at Manassas Battlefield, Virginia.
401. State Capitol, Richmond, Va. (front view).
402. Henry House, Manassas Battlefield, Virginia.
403. Christ Church, Alexandria, Va.
407. Virginia Polytechnic Institute, Blacksburg, Va.
410. Dickie House, Great Falls of the Potomac, Virginia, in which every President of the United States has dined.
412. St. John's Church, Richmond, Va.
415. Red Spruce Forest, Virginia.
416. Home and Grave of Patrick Henry, "Red Hill," Charlotte Co. Va.
425. Captain John Smith's Fort and Carlisle House, Alexandria, Va.
426. Lock Hewn in Solid Rock by George Washington, at Great Falls, Va.
503. The Rotunda, University of Virginia.
513. Serpentine Wall, University of Virginia.



DEC 8 1913



LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 014 366 413 2



THE PEOPLE OF THE UNITED STATES do hereby certify that  
the following is a true and correct copy of the  
original as the same is on file in the  
Department of State.